HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 3008

PEUGEOT



On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook on the PEUGEOT website, under "MyPEUGEOT".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



If the "MyPEUGEOT" function is not available on the PEUGEOT public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.



Welcome

This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Thank you for choosing a 3008.

This handbook has been designed to help you make the most of using your vehicle in all circumstances.

Key

! safety warning

i additional information

contributes to the protection of the environment

Overview

Eco-driving

1 Instruments

Digital instrument panel 12
Indicator and warning lamps 16
Indicators 32
Manual test 40
Distance recorders 41
Lighting dimmer 42
Trip computer 43
Monochrome screen C 45
Touch screen 48

2 Access

Remote control 54
Keyless Entry and Starting 58
Back-up procedures 64
Central locking 68
Alarm 70
Doors 74
Boot 75
Hands-free tailgate 76
Electric windows 82
Panoramic opening sunroof 84

3 Ease of use and comfort

Driving position 88
Front seats 90
Steering wheel adjustment 99
Mirrors 99
i-Cockpit Amplify function 102
Heating and Ventilation 104
Manual air conditioning 106
Semi-automatic mono-zone air conditioning 108
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 111
Front demist - defrost 116
Heated windscreen 117
Rear screen demist - defrost 118
Front fittings 119
Courtesy lamps 128
Interior mood lighting 129
Rear seats 130
Rear fittings 133
Boot fittings 135
Boot lamp 140

4 Lighting and visibility

Exterior lighting control stalk 141
Direction indicators 144
Headlamp beam height adjustment 145
Automatic illumination of headlamps 146
Automatic headlamp dipping 149
Cornering lighting 151
Wiper control stalk 152
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 155

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 156
Hazard warning lamps 157
Horn 157
Emergency or assistance 158
Electronic stability programme (ESC) 160
Advanced Grip Control 164
Hill Assist Descent Control 166
Seat belts 168
Airbags 172
Child seats 177
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 179
ISOFIX child seats 186
i-Size child seats 190
Child lock 193

Driving 6

Driving recommendations 195
Starting / Switching off the engine with the key 197
Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting 200
Electric parking brake 203
Manual gearbox 210
Automatic gearbox 211
Hill start assist 216
Dynamic Pack 217
Gear shift indicator 218
Stop & Start 219
Under-inflation detection 223
Memorising speeds 226
Speed limit recognition 227
Speed limiter 231
Cruise control 234
Dynamic cruise control with Stop function 238
Distance alertandActive Safety Brake 247
Fatigue detection system 252
Lane Departure Warning System 254
Assisted Lane Departure Warning System 255
Blind Spot Monitoring System 260
Parking sensors 263
Panoramic vision 265
Park Assist 272

Practical information 7

Fuel tank 281
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 282
Towing a trailer 284
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 285
Energy economy mode 290
Very cold climate screens 291
Snow chains 292
Fitting roof bars 293
Bonnet 294
Petrol underbonnet layout 295
Diesel underbonnet layout 296
Checking levels 297
Checks 301
AdBlue® and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel) 303

In the event of a breakdown 8

Warning triangle 307
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 308
Tool kit 309
Temporary puncture repair kit 312
Spare wheel 317
Changing a bulb 323
Changing a fuse 331
12 V battery 332
Towing the vehicle 336

Technical data 9

Petrol engines 338
Petrol weights 339
Diesel engines 340
Diesel weights 342
Dimensions 344
Identification markings 345

Alphabetical index

For the audio and telematic systems, refer to the supplement to the handbook or go to the following internet address: http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

Exterior



Remote control key 54, 63-67
Locking / Unlocking 55-57
Starting the engine 197-199

Heated windscreen 117
Demisting the windscreen 116
Windscreen wiper 152-154

Visiopark 2 265-266, 269-271

Towing 336-337

Very cold climate screens 291
Dynamic cruise control with Stop function 238-246
Front parking sensors 263-264
Park Assist 272-279

Front foglamps 142
Cornering lighting 151

Main lighting 141, 143-144
Adjusting the headlamp beam height 145
Changing front bulbs 323-327

Electronic key 54, 63-67
Hands-free access 58-62
Keyless starting 197, 200-202

Automatic illumination of headlamps 146-147
Automatic headlamp dipping 149-150
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 155
Fatigue detection system 252-253
Lane Departure Warning System 254
Assisted Lane Departure Warning System 255-259
Speed limit recognition 227-230
Distance alert / Active Safety Brake 247-251

Electric windows 82-83

Doors 74
Central locking 68-69
Alarm 70-73

Electronic stability programme (ESC) 160-163
Advanced Grip Control 164-165
Hill Assist Descent Control 166-167

Exterieur

Defrosting the rear screen 118
Rear wiper 153-154

Changing rear bulbs 328-330

Boot 57, 59, 75
Hands-free tailgate access 76-81
Tools 309-311
Temporary puncture repair kit 312-316
Spare wheel 317-322

Visiopark 1 & 2 265-271
Rear parking sensors 263-264

Roof bars 293
Panoramic opening sunroof 84-87

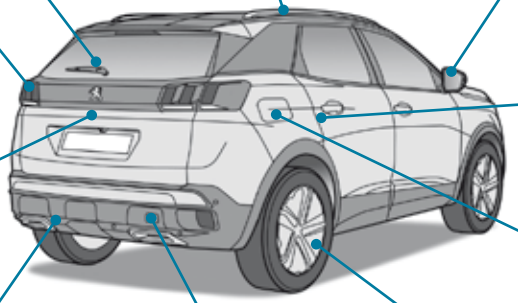
Towing 336-337
Towbar 196, 284
Quickly detachable towball 285-289
Trailer stability assist 163

Door mirrors 99-100
Guide-me-home / welcome lighting 146-148
Blind Spot Monitoring System 260-262

Child lock 193-194

Fuel tank 281-283
Misfuel prevention 282
AdBlue tank 303-306

Under-inflation detection 223-225
Tyre pressures 223, 315, 345
Snow chains 292



Interior

Front seats 90-97
Multipoint massage 98
Seat belts 168-171

Boot fittings 135-140
- load space cover
- 12 V socket
- boot lamp
- adjustable boot floor
- lashing eyes
- high load retaining net

Warning triangle 307
Tools 309-311
Temporary puncture repair kit 312-316
Spare wheel 317-322

Airbags 172-176

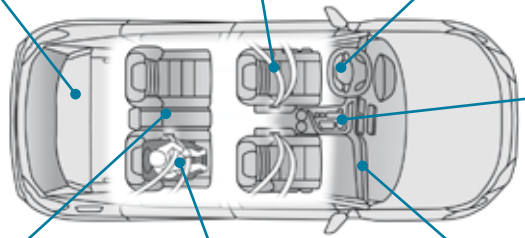
Front fittings 119-127
- USB port
- 12 V socket
- front armrest
- mats

Wireless charger 122-123
Scented air freshener 125-126

Rear seats 130-132
Rear fittings 133-134
- 12 V socket
- 230 V / 50 Hz socket
- rear armrest
- ski flap

Child seats 177-192
ISOFIX mountings 186-189
i-Size child seats 190-191

Glove box 120
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 174, 178-181



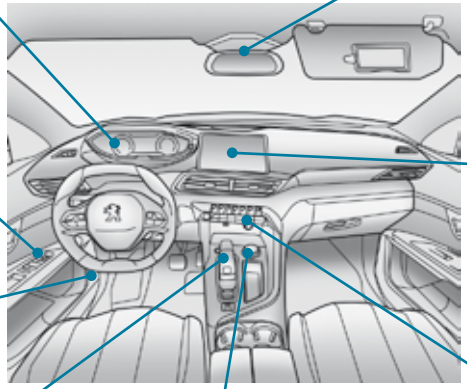
Instruments and controls

Digital instrument panel 12-15
Warning lamps 16-31
Indicators, gauges 32-40
Setting buttons 40-42
- CHECK / trip distance recorder
- dashboard lighting dimmer / mood lighting

Door mirrors 99-100
Electric windows 82-83

Changing a fuse 331
Opening the bonnet 294

Manual gearbox 210
Automatic gearbox 211-215
Electric parking brake 203-209



Anti-theft / Starting with the START/ STOP button 200-202
Advanced Grip Control 164-165
Hill Assist Descent Control 166-167

Blind / Panoramic opening sunroof 84-87
Courtesy lamps 128
Interior mood lighting 129
Emergency or assistance call 158-159
Seat belts / passenger's front airbag warning lamp display 169-170, 174
Rear view mirror 101

Monochrome screen C 45-47
Touch screen 48-53
i-Cockpit Amplify function 102-103
Hazard warning lamps 157

Heating / Ventilation 104-105
Manual air conditioning 106-107
Semi-automatic mono-zone air conditioning 108-110
Automatic dual-zone air conditioning 111-115
Demisting / Defrosting, front 116
Demisting / Defrosting, rear screen 118
Heated seats 97

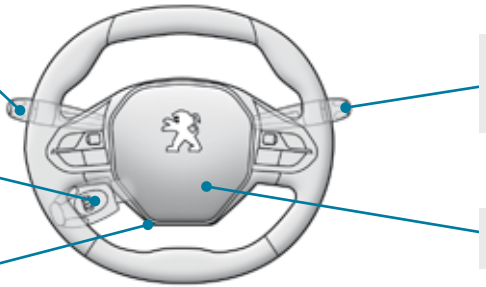
Instruments and controls

Multifunction steering wheel

Lighting controls	141-144, 146-150

Memorising speeds	226
Speed limit recognition	227-230
Speed limiter	231-233
Cruise control	234-237
Dynamic cruise control with Stop function	238-246

Adjusting the steering wheel	99



Wiper controls	152-155
Trip computer	43-44
Dynamic Pack	217

Horn	157

Side switch panel

Adjusting the headlamp beam height	145
Unlocking - Opening / Closing the hands-free tailgate	76-81
Stop & Start	219-222



Alarm volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring	70-73
Heated windscreen	117
Electric child lock	194

Technical data - Maintenance

Running out of Diesel fuel 308

AdBlue 37-40

Checking levels 297-300
- oil
- brake fluid
- coolant
- screenwash fluid
- additive (Diesel with particle filter)

Changing bulbs 323-330
- front
- rear

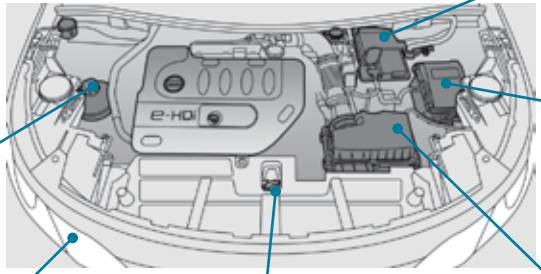
Petrol engines 338-339
Diesel engines 340-343
Dimensions 344
Identification markings 345

Battery 332-335
Energy economy mode 290

Changing a fuse 331

Checking components 301-302
- battery
- air filter / passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

Bonnet 294
Petrol underbonnet 295
Diesel underbonnet 296



Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

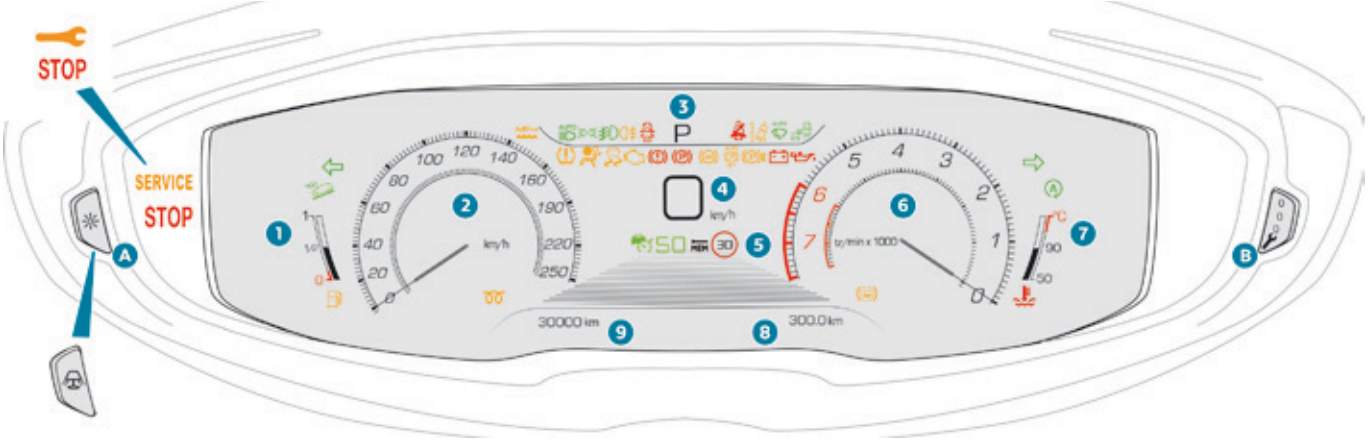
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrogen oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Head-up digital screen

Personalisable digital instrument panel
Depending on the display mode selected, some information can be hidden or represented differently.



Digital screen

The representation below shows the "DIALS" display mode.

1. Fuel gauge.
2. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
3. Gear shift indicator, selector mode and the gear with an automatic gearbox.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Cruise control or speed limiter setting, display of speed limit signs.
6. Rev counter (x 1000 rpm or tr/min).
7. Coolant temperature gauge (°Celsius).
8. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
9. Total distance recorder (miles or km).

Control buttons

A. Lighting dimmer for the instruments and controls* (available in night mode).
or
Instrument panel mood lighting**.

B. Short press: start a manual test.
Long press: reset the service indicator or trip recorder (depending on the context).

* Versions with monochrome screen.
** Versions with touch screen.

Displays

Most warning and indicator lamps do not have a fixed position.
The warning and indicator lamps in the second line are displayed from right to left in order of priority.
For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and for deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

Whatever the display mode selected, the instrument panel displays:
- in fixed locations:
  - gearbox and gear shift indicator information,
  - the fuel gauge,
  - the engine coolant temperature indicator,
  - the distance recorders.
- in variable locations:
  - the digital speedometer,
  - status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the display mode selected and the systems activated, the following information may appear:
- the rev counter,
- the trip computer,
- driving aids,
- the speed limiter or cruise control,
- the media currently playing,
- navigation instructions,
- engine information from the Dynamic Pack.

Personalisation of the instrument panel

You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel, by choosing:
- a display colour**,
- a display mode.

Display language
This depends on the language selected in the screen configuration menu.

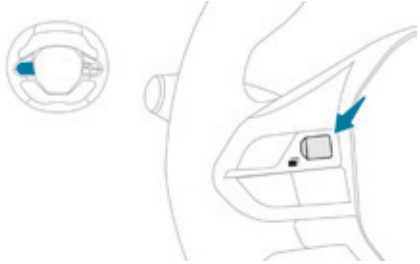
Choosing a display colour

This depends on the colour scheme activated by the i-Cockpit Amplify function:
☞ "**Relax**": grey,
☞ "**Boost**": red,
☞ "**Normal**" (no colour scheme activated): blue.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

** Versions with touch screen.

Choice of display mode



To modify the display mode of the instrument panel:

☞ turn the thumbwheel on the left of the steering wheel to display and run through the different modes in the right hand part of the instrument panel,

☞ once the desired display mode appears, press the thumbwheel to confirm.

The new display mode is applied immediately.

Each mode corresponds to the type of information displayed in the instrument panel.

- "DIALS": standard display of the analogue and digital speedometers, rev counter, fuel gauge, coolant temperature indicator and distance recorders.

- "NAVIGATION": standard display with in addition information related to the current route navigation (map and instructions).

- "DRIVING": standard display with in addition information related to the driving assistance system in use.

- "MINIMAL": reduced display with the digital speedometer and the distance recorders and, in the event of an alert only, fuel gauge and coolant temperature indicator.

- "TRIP COMPUTER"*: minimal display with in addition the rev counter, instantaneous information and the trip recorder selected (1 or 2).

or

- "PERSONAL"**: minimal display with in addition the selection made in the touch screen of the type of information displayed in the personalisable areas on the left and right.

* Versions with monochrome screen.

** Versions with touch screen.





To enter settings for the "PERSONAL" display mode and select the information to be displayed in the personalisable areas of the instrument panel:



☞ select the **Settings** menu in the upper bar of the touch screen,

☞ select "**Configuration**",



☞ press the "**Perso**" button,

☞ for each personalised area, left and right, select a type of information using the corresponding scroll arrows in the touch screen:

- "**Driving aids**",
- "**Default**" (empty),
- "**Engine info**" (Dynamic Pack),
- "**G-meters**" (Dynamic Pack),
- "**Temperatures**" (engine oil),
- "**Media**",
- "**Navigation**",
- "**Trip computer**",
- "**Rev counter**".

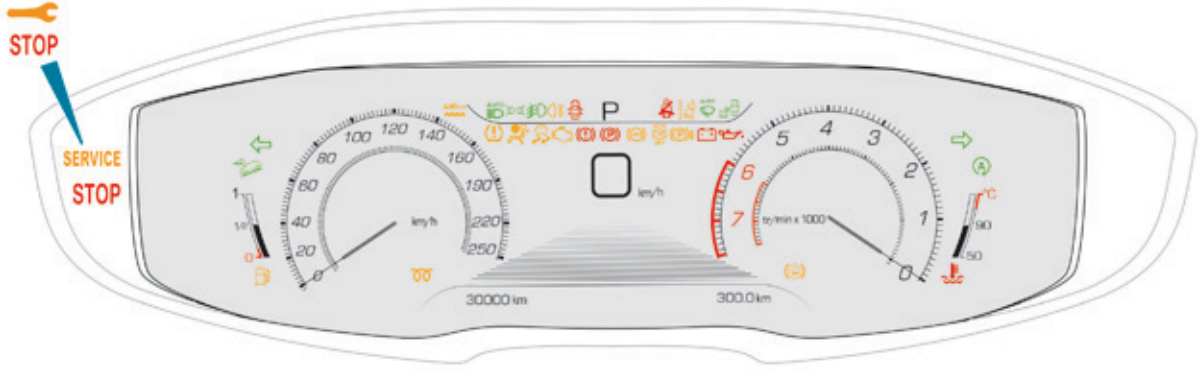
☞ a nominal preview appears alongside the corresponding arrows,

☞ confirm to save and quit.

If the current display mode is "PERSONAL", the new selection is displayed immediately.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments should be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Indicator and warning lamps



When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of most of these warning lamps is accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

! Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes: fixed (continuous) or flashing.
Only by relating the type of illumination to the operation of the vehicle can it be determined whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred.
For more information, refer to the corresponding tables of warning and indicator lamps.

Operation indicator lamps

If one or more of the following indicator lamps come on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched on.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed up.	
	**Hazard warning lamps**	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk has been pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Automatic headlamp dipping**	fixed.	The function has been activated via the **Driving** menu of the touch screen. The lighting stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	The camera, located at the top of the windscreen, manages the illumination of main or dipped beam, depending on the exterior lighting and the driving conditions. For more information on **Automatic headlamp dipping**, refer to the corresponding section.

For more information on the **Lighting control stalk**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	When the ignition is switched on with a key in the ignition switch or a starting instruction made using the "**START/STOP**" button, the engine temperature makes engine pre-heating necessary.	The period of illumination of the indicator lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). With an ignition switch and key, wait until the indicator lamp goes off before starting. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox, or the clutch pedal is pressed fully down with a manual gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable, or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, briefly push the parking brake control lever. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function again or contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop in the event of a fault. For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated.	In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat. Move the control switch to the **"OFF"** position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, you can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Hill Assist Descent Control**	fixed.	The system has been activated, but is paused because the speed is too high.	Between 18 and 30 mph (30 and 50 km/h), the system is paused. Reduce the speed of the vehicle.
		fixed.	The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, gear engaged).	
		flashing.	The system is regulating the speed of the vehicle.	The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent. For more information on the **Hill Assist Descent Control** system, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Blind Spot Monitoring System**	fixed.	The system has been activated.	For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Automatic wiping**	fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down. Automatic front wiping is activated.	To deactivate automatic wiping, push the wiper control stalk down again or put the wiper control stalk in another position.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This may be accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the instrument panel and/or seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated.	You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on). Set the control to the "**ON**" position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat.
	**Stop & Start**	fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The Stop & Start system is deactivated.	The engine will not cut out at the next stop in the traffic. Reactivate the system by pressing the button again. For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Distance alert / Active Safety Brake**	fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has been deactivated, via the vehicle configuration menu in the screen.	For more information on the **Distance alert / Active Safety Brake** system, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**	fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has been deactivated.	There will be no correction of the vehicle's trajectory should there be a change of direction. For more information on the **Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one or more of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated alert message.
If you encounter any problems, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault.	**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.** Park, switch off the ignition and call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
SERVICE or 	**Service**	temporarily, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off). For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel; you must then contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping-up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
Engine oil pressure	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Battery charge*	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Door(s) open	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	Speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.	Close the door or boot.
	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	Speed above 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.	

* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
Seat belts not fastened / unfastened	fixed.	The driver and/or the front/rear passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle. The illuminated dots represent the passengers that have not fastened / unfastened their seat belt. They come on: - fixed for 30 about seconds on starting the vehicle, - fixed from 0 to 12 mph (0 to 20 km/h) when driving, - flashing above 12 mph (20 km/h), accompanied by an audible signal for about 120 seconds.
Electric parking brake	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (select **P** mode for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Electric parking brake fault	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.
Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Brakes**	fixed.	A minor fault with the braking system.	Drive carefully. As soon as possible, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top-up with brake fluid listed by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Distance alert / Active Safety Brake**	flashing.	The system is operating.	The system brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Lane Departure Warning System**	flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.	A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.	Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory. For more information on the **Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding section.
		fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has a fault.	Be vigilant and drive carefully. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**	fixed.	The system is not available	The system has been deactivated or is on automatic standby. For more information on the **Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding section.
		flashing.	You are about to cross a solid lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
+ SERVICE		fixed, accompanied by the display of a message, an audible signal and the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault.	Be vigilant and drive carefully. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. For more information on the **Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Airbags**	on temporarily.	This warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Under-inflation**	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
+ SERVICE		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Low fuel level**	fixed with reserve level represented in red, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	When it first comes on there remains **approximately 6 litres of fuel** in the tank.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops and approaches "**0**". **Fuel tank capacity: approximately 53 litres.** Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop without delay.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
AdBlue	**AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® topped-up as soon as possible: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
		flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown** or go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
		flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up the** AdBlue® or go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. It is **essential** to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

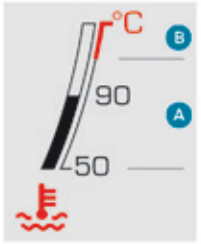
For topping-up or for more information on **AdBlue®** and the **SCR** system, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
AdBlue + SERVICE + 	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Indicators

Coolant temperature gauge





With the engine running:
- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; this warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After first switching off the ignition, open the bonnet cautiously and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.
The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last reset of the service indicator, according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, depending on the country of sale, the degree of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account.

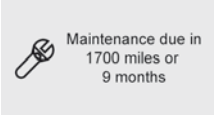


More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, the system issues an alert to indicate when the next service is due.
This alert comprises the temporary display of a message in the instrument panel, accompanied by the permanent display of the servicing spanner alongside the total distance recorder.
Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) or 9 months remain before the next service is due.

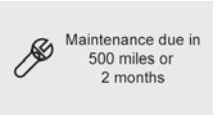


The servicing spanner remains on as a reminder that a service is required soon.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, the system issues an alert to indicate that the next service is due very soon.
This alert comprises the temporary display of a message in the instrument panel, accompanied by the flashing and then fixed display of the servicing spanner alongside the total mileage recorder.
Example: 560 miles (900 km) or 2 months remain before the next service is due.



The servicing spanner remains on as a reminder that a service is required very soon.



Service overdue

When the ignition is switched on, the system issues an alert to indicate that the next service is overdue.
This alert comprises the temporary display of a message in the instrument panel, accompanied by the flashing and then fixed display of the servicing spanner alongside the total mileage recorder.
Example: the service is overdue by 186 miles (300 km).

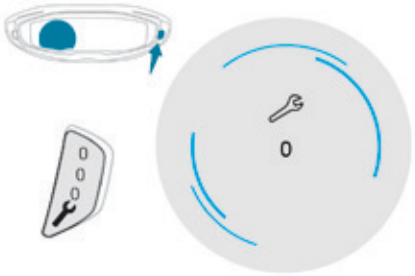


The servicing spanner remains on until the service has been carried out.



SERVICE With BlueHDi Diesel versions, when the ignition is switched on, this alert is completed by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp.

The alert may be triggered if you have exceeded the period since the last service, as indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the alert may also be triggered early, depending on the degree of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.



Resetting the service indicator

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.
If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.



Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.
  The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator*



On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.



Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect

This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.



Oil level indicator fault

This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

* Depending on version.

AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.
Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Remaining range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of range in the instrument panel.



Pressing this button will temporarily display the remaining range with the message "AdBlue: range greater than 1 500 miles" and, depending on the level in the AdBlue tank, followed by a message indicating that you can top-up with at least 10 litres.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, the AdBlue warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 190 miles (300 km) until the AdBlue tank has been topped-up.
The reserve level has been reached: it is recommended that you top-up as soon as possible.

These messages are completed by the recommendation to not top-up by more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue tank has been topped-up.
It is essential to top-up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and topping-up in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top-up AdBlue: Starting impossible".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, it is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault

AdBlue SERVICE

The AdBlue, SERVICE and self-diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



AdBlue SERVICE

If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented



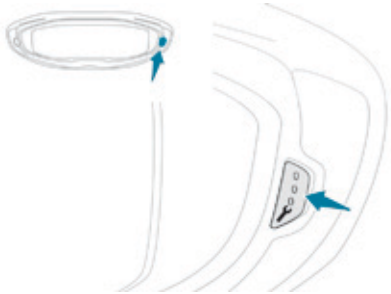


Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual test in the instrument panel



This function allows you, at any time, to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.

☞ With the engine running, briefly press this button.

The following information is displayed in the instrument panel:

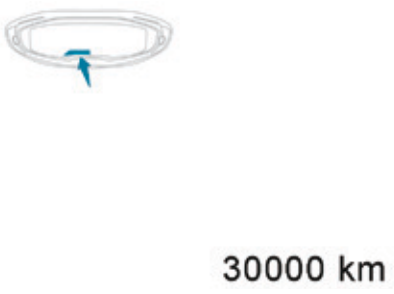
- the engine oil level,
- when the next service is due,
- the driving range for the AdBlue and the SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel versions,
- current alerts.

i This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Distance recorders

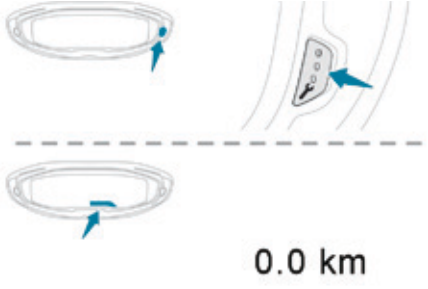
The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country.
The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.



Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



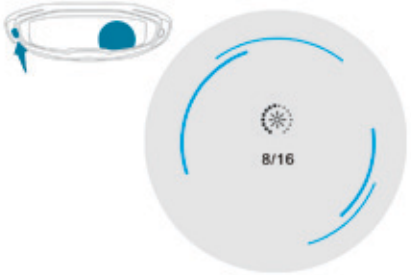
Trip distance recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder

☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Instrument panel lighting dimmer



Version with monochrome screen

Operates only when the vehicle's exterior lighting is on ("night" mode).
It allows adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and controls.



- Press this button to adjust the brightness.
- When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press it again to increase brightness.

or

- When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press it again to decrease brightness.
- Release the button once the desired level of brightness is reached.

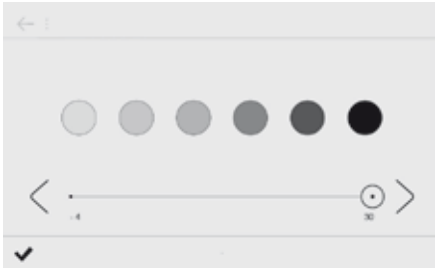
Instrument panel mood lighting

Version with touch screen

It allows the instrument panel mood lighting to be switched on or off.



- Press this button.



The brightness of the instrument panel mood lighting is adjusted in the touch screen.



- Select the **Settings** menu in the upper bar of the touch screen.



- Press the "**Brightness**" button.
- Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the cursor.
- Confirm to save and quit.

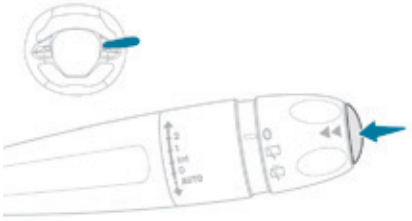
Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).

Information display in the instrument panel



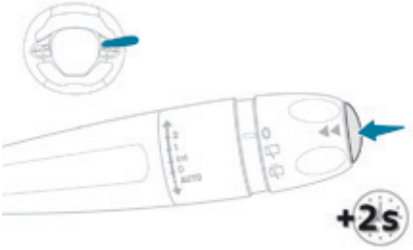
The display of trip computer information is permanent when you select the "TRIP COMPUTER" or "PERSONAL" display mode.
For all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper stalk displays this information in a new window.



☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display the various tabs in succession.

- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.
- Trip **"1"** with:
  - the average speed.
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled, for the first trip.
- Trip **"2"** with:
  - the average speed,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled, for the second trip.

Trip reset



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Monochrome screen C

Displays in the screen



Depending on the context, it displays:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- visual parking sensor information,
- current audio source,
- telephone or Bluetooth system information,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



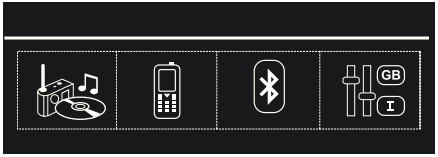
From the audio system control panel, press:

- the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items in the screen,
- the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or

- the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button:
  - "Multimedia",
  - "Telephone",
  - "Connections",
  - "Personalisation-configuration",
- Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Multimedia" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).
For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Telephone" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call, view the calls log or the various telephone directories.
For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Connections" menu

With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be paired and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).
For more information on the "Connections" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu

This menu gives access to the following functions:
- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Display configuration",

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows the activation or deactivation of the following equipment, depending on version:
- **"Lighting"**:
  - "Follow-me-home headlamps".
  - "Welcome lighting".

For more information on **Exterior lighting**, refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section.

- **"Access to the vehicle"**:
  - "Plip action".

For more information on the **Remote control** and selective door unlocking in particular, refer to the "Access" section.

- **"Comfort"**:
  - "Rear wipe in reverse gear".
    For more information on the **Wipers**, refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section.
  - "Parking assistance".
    For more information on **Parking assistance**, refer to the "Driving" section.
  - "Fatigue Detection System".
    For more information on the **Fatigue detection system**, refer to the "Driving" section.

- **"Driving assistance"**:
  - "Auto. emergency braking".
    For more information on the **Active Safety Brake**, refer to the "Driving" section.
  - "Speed recommendation".
    For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the "Driving" section.
  - "Tyre inflation".
    For more information on **Under-inflation detection** and reinitialisation in particular, refer to the "Driving" section.

Choice of language

This menu allows selection of the language used by the screen and the instrument" panel.

Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display parameters",
- "Brightness".

Adjusting the date and time

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing **"OK"**, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.

☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or the **"Back"** button to cancel.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention when stationary.

Touch screen

This system gives access to:
- the permanent display of the time and the ambient temperature (a blue symbol appears when there is a risk of ice),
- the heating/air conditioning controls,
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of visual parking aids (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, ...),
- Internet services, and the display of associated information.

and, depending on equipment, allows:
- access to the navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

i For the audio and telematic systems, refer to the supplement to the handbook or go to the following internet address: http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

General operation

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.
Use is possible in all temperatures.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

! **As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.**
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

Principles

Use the buttons below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Certain menus may be displayed over two pages. Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the second page.
To deactivate or activate a function, select "**OFF**" or "**ON**".
To modify a setting or access additional information, press the symbol for the function.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

✔ Use this button to confirm.

← Use this button to return to the previous page.

Menus



i-Cockpit Amplify function.
Allows a vehicle ambience to be personalised.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

Radio Media.
See more information in "Audio equipment and telematics".

Air conditioning.
Allows control of the settings for temperature, air flow...

For more information on **Semi-automatic mono-zone air conditioning** and **Automatic dual-zone air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Connected navigation or Mirror Screen*.
See more information in "Audio equipment and telematics".

Driving.
Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Settings**" and "**Driving assistance**".

Telephone.
See more in "Audio equipment and telematics".

Applications.
Allows direct access to certain **i-Cockpit Amplify** functions (scented air freshener...).

For more information on the **Scented air freshener**, refer to the corresponding section.
See more information in "Audio equipment and telematics".

Volume / mute.
See more in "Audio equipment and telematics".

Upper bar

Certain information is always displayed in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Repeat of information from the **Radio Media**, **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions*.
- Access to **Configuration** of the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

* Depending on equipment.

Driving menu

"Settings" tab

Button	Comments
"**Lighting**" 	- "Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of cornering lighting. - "LED daytime running lamps" (depending on the country of sale).
"**Vehicle access**" 	- "Driver plip action": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking at the tailgate. - "Motorized tailgate": activation/deactivation of motorized operation of the tailgate. - "Hands-Free Tailgate Access": activation/deactivation of the hands-free tailgate access system.
"**Comfort**" 	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper coupled with reverse gear. - "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting. - "Mood lighting": activation/deactivation of mood lighting and adjustment of brightness. - "Auto mirror dipping in reverse": activation/deactivation of automatic dipping of door mirrors in reverse gear.
"**Safety**" 	- "Collision risk alert and automatic braking": activation/deactivation of collision risk alert and automatic emergency braking. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit recognition. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

"Driving assistance" tab

Corresponding function	"Comments"
"Speed settings"	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter or cruise control.
"Under-inflation initialization"	Reinitialization of the under-inflation detection system.
"Lane departure detection assistance."	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Help staying in lane"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Parking sensors	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Park Assist"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Automatic headlamp dip"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Stop & Start"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"**Blind spot monitoring**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Panoramic visual aid"	Activation of the Visiopark 2 function.
"Wheel anti-slip regulation"	Activation/deactivation of the function

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Configuration

The functions available through this menu are detailed in the table below.

Button	Comments
	Turn off the screen (black screen). To return to the current screen, press the black screen or one of the menu buttons.
	Adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel mood lighting.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel...
	Activation and adjustment of Wi-Fi settings.

Settings

The settings possible for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel are presented in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	**Screen configuration**	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations...) and brightness.
	**Instrument panel perso**	Select the type of information displayed in the digital instrument panel.
	**System configuration**	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	**Languages**	Choice of language used for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
	**Time / Date**	Setting the time, date and format. Option of synchronisation with GPS.

Remote control

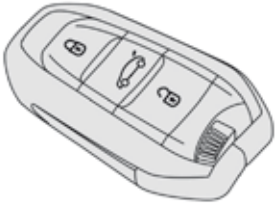
General points



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking / locking / deadlocking the vehicle,
- unlocking and opening the boot,
- switch on the lighting from a distance,
- folding / unfolding the door mirrors,
- activation / deactivation of the alarm,
- opening the windows,
- closing the windows and the opening roof,
- locating the vehicle,
- vehicle immobiliser.

In normal operating conditions, it is preferable to use the remote control.



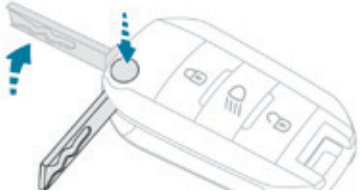
The key, integral with the remote control, can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking / locking / deadlocking the vehicle,
- turning the child lock on or off,
- activation / deactivation of the passenger's front airbag,
- back-up door locking,
- switching on the ignition and starting / stopping the engine.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked or unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery...

For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

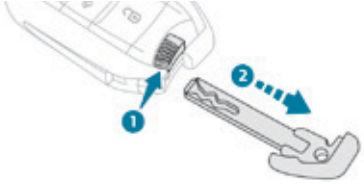
Ejecting the key



Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

☞ Press this button; the key is ejected from its housing.

To avoid damaging the mechanism, first press this button to fold it.



Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

☞ Pull on this button to remove the key from the housing.

To return it to the housing, first pull on this button.

Unlocking the vehicle

Total unlocking



☞ Press this button.

Selective unlocking of the driver's door

Setting is via the vehicle configuration menu in the screen.



☞ To unlock just the driver's door, make a first press on this button.

☞ To unlock the other doors and the boot, press this button again.

On the first press of the locking button, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- total or selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Opening the windows



Depending on version, pressing and holding the unlocking buttons opens the windows to the desired position.

The windows stop when you release the button.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



☞ Press this button.

On pressing the locking button, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- activation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place. However, if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be totally activated after about 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds.
If the alarm had been previously activated, it will be reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking



- ☞ Make a first press on this button.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by illumination of the direction indicators for few seconds on the second press of the locking button.

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Closing the windows and sunroof



Pressing and holding the locking button closes the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to the desired position.

This operation also starts closing of the blind.

! When closing the windows and sunroof you must ensure that nothing prevents their correct closing.
If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partly open, you must first deactivate the volumetric alarm protection.
For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



- ☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and door mirror spot lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Remote operation of exterior lighting

Availability of this function depends on version.



☞ Make a short press on this remote control button.

The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lighting immediately.

Unlocking and opening the boot

Selective unlocking of the boot



☞ Make a long press on this button to unlock the boot and start the motorised opening of the tailgate.

The doors and fuel filler flap remain locked.

The setting for selective unlocking of the boot is done in the vehicle configuration menu in the screen.
By default, selective unlocking of the boot is activated.



The setting for motorised operation of the tailgate is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

By default, motorised operation is deactivated.

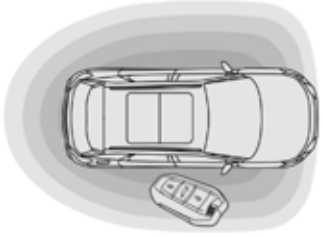
On pressing the boot unlocking button, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
- total or selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing the unlocking button unlocks the whole vehicle.

If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the unlocking button releases the tailgate.
To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate manually.

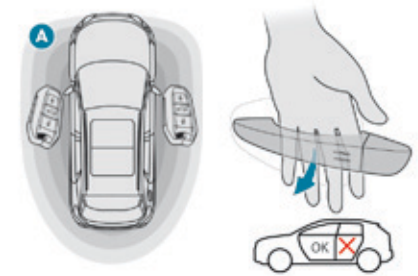
Keyless Entry and Starting

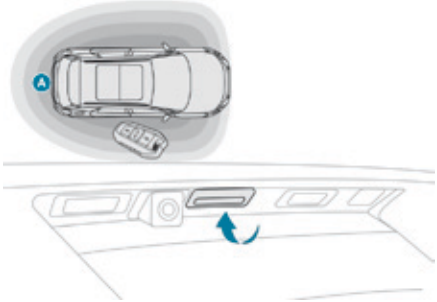


System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while keeping the electronic key on your person.

i The electronic key can also be used as a remote control.
For more information on the operation of the **Remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle





Complete unlocking

☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind one of the front door handles or press the tailgate opening control (located in the middle).

If motorised operation of the tailgate is activated, this action triggers its automatic opening.

Opening the windows

Depending on version, keeping your hand behind the door handle or pressing the tailgate control allows the windows to be opened to the desired position.

Flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking of the driver's door

☞ To unlock only the driver's door, with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.

☞ To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind the front passenger door handle with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control (located in the middle) with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.



Activation or deactivation of the selective unlocking of the driver's door is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

When unlocking the driver's door, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking of the boot

☞ Press the tailgate opening button to unlock just the boot.

The doors remain locked.

i If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing this control also unlocks the door.



Activation or deactivation of selective locking of the boot is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

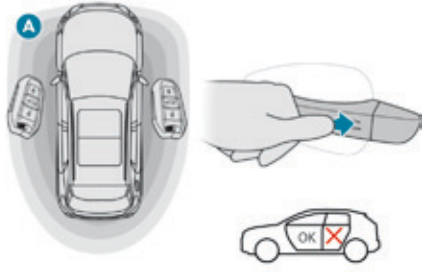
If the vehicle is unlocked by mistake and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock again automatically after about 30 seconds.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.
Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle



Normal locking

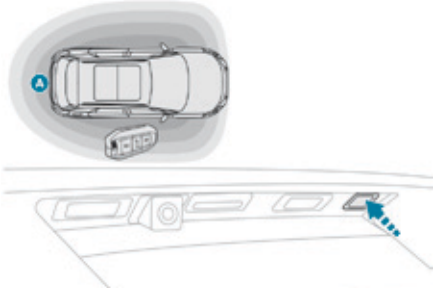
☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) or press the locking button on the tailgate (on the right).

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the electronic keys is left inside the vehicle.

Closing the windows and sunroof

Maintaining pressure on the door handle or the tailgate control allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.

This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

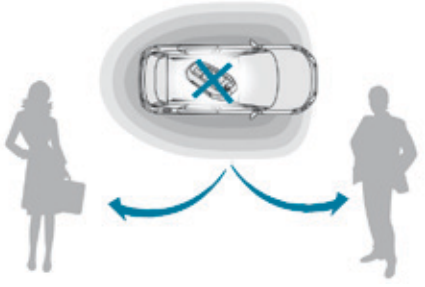


! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

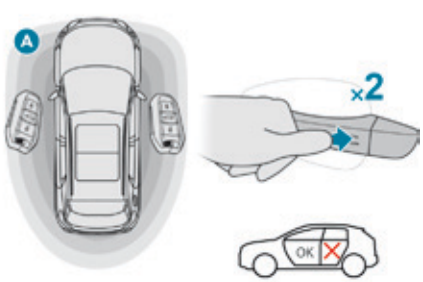
- locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- activation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.



! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.
It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

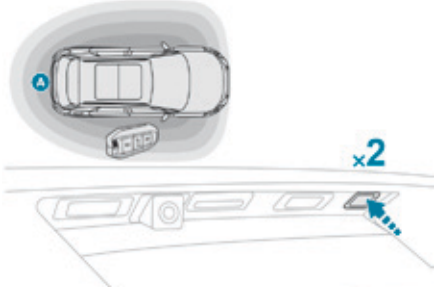
! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt...) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, …) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.



Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the interior central control button on the dashboard.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate (to the right).
☞ Within five seconds, press one of these locking controls again to deadlock the vehicle.



At the first press on one of the locking controls, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
- the locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the activation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.
At the second press, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals the deadlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.
Take them to an approved collection point.

Back-up procedures

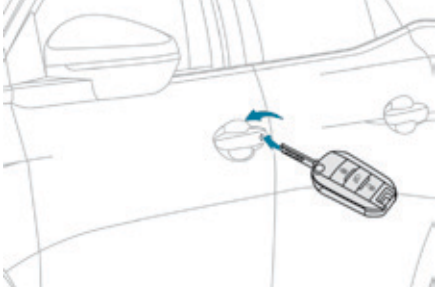
Total unlocking / locking of the vehicle with the key

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- remote control cell battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.
Refer to the corresponding section.
In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking

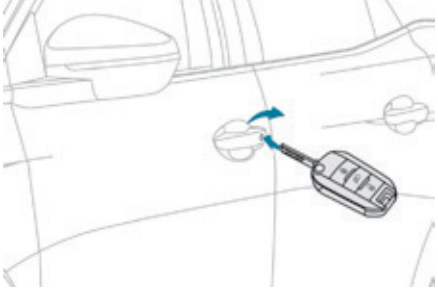


☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, the unlocking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Normal locking

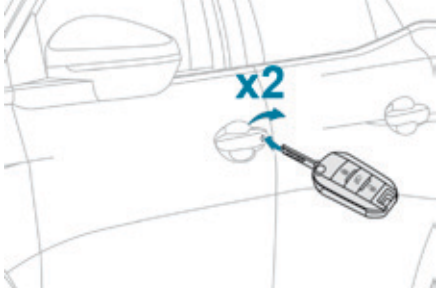


☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, the locking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.

Deadlocking



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it.
- ☞ Within five seconds, turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle again to deadlock it.

For versions without alarm, at the second manoeuvre the deadlocking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

Without central locking

These procedures should be used in the following cases:
- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

Driver's door

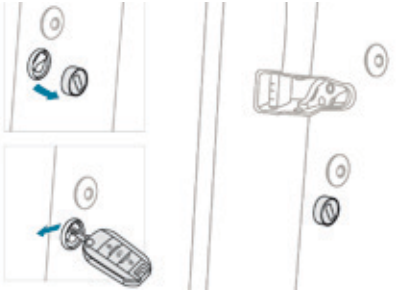
- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

Unlocking a door

- ☞ Pull the interior opening control for the door.

Locking



- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

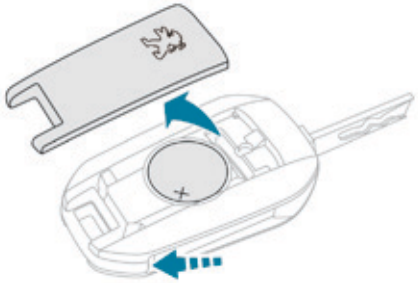
Refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Without forcing, insert the key into the aperture; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

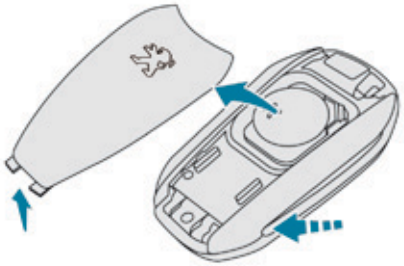
Changing the battery

A message appears in the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.

Version without Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery type: CR1620 / 3 volts.



Version with Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.



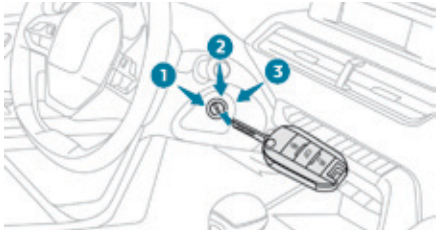
- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

The remote control must be reinitialised after replacing the battery.
For more information on reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

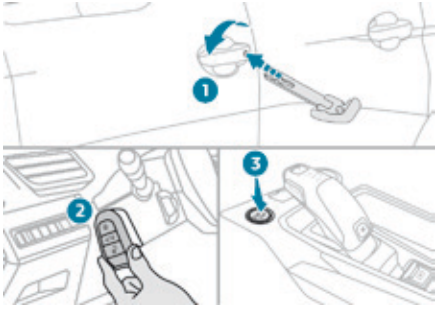
Version without Keyless Entry and Starting



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the key to position **2 (ignition on)**.
- Press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Version with Keyless Entry and Starting



- Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, select position **P** then press the brake pedal firmly.
- Switch on the ignition by pressing the **"START/STOP"** button.

The electronic key is now fully operational again.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Central locking

This function allows the doors and boot to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.

Manual mode



Locking



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking



☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

When locking / deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door levers to unlock the vehicle.

☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.

For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

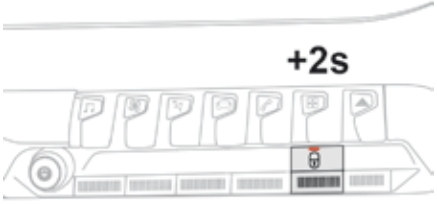
If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.
Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Activation / Deactivation



You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Driving with the doors locked may render access for the emergency services difficult in an emergency.

Alarm*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- anti-tilt**

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

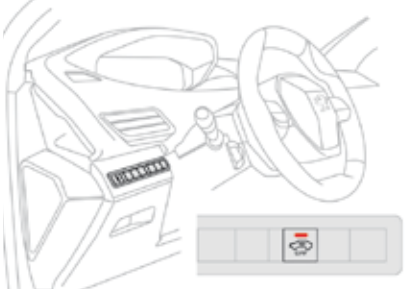
The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on version.

** Depending on engine.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.
If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not fully closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

or

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

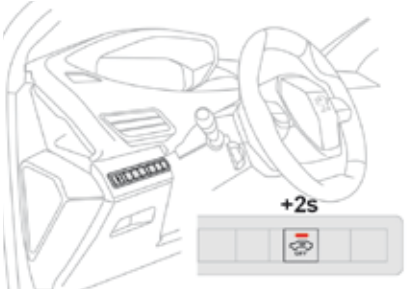
The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window or sunroof partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.



Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
☞ Get out of the vehicle.
☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

i To be effective, the deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and starting system.

The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

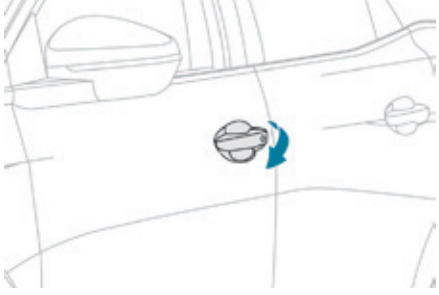
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Doors

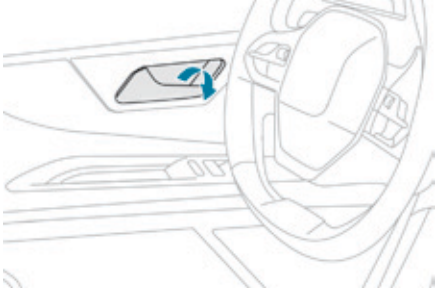
Opening



From outside

☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.



From inside

☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i With the selective unlocking activated:
- opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
- opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Closing

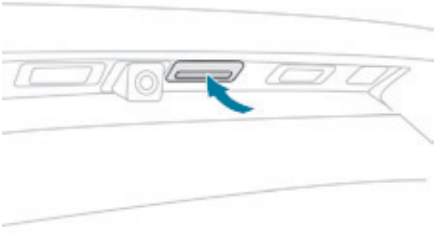
When a door is not closed correctly:

- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an audible signal for a few seconds.

Boot

Opening the tailgate

With the exterior tailgate control



☞ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
☞ Raise the tailgate.

When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

The tailgate is not designed to take a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
☞ Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

If the tailgate is not properly closed:

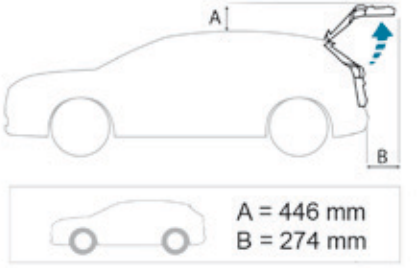


- **engine running**, this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel for a few seconds,
- **vehicle running** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

Hands-free tailgate

General points

The motorised operation of the tailgate can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle settings menu.
The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.

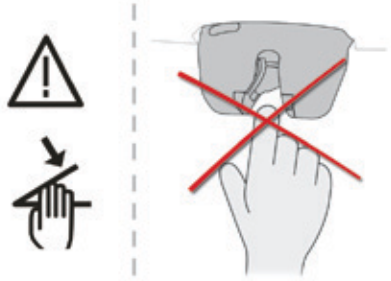


! Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.

Anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees to allow the obstacle to be cleared.
Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:
- ensure that there is no person close to the rear of the vehicle,
- watch the activity of your passengers, particularly any children.



! Never introduce a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate - Risk of a serious injury!

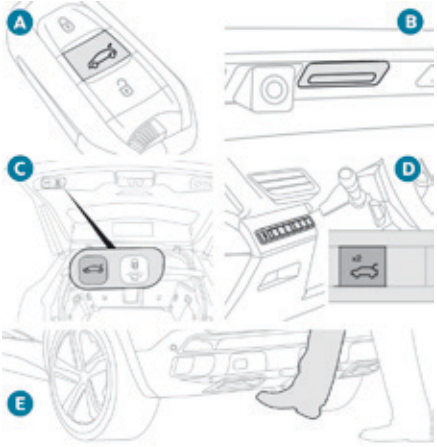
Bicycle carrier / Towbar

The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.
When installing a bicycle carrier on a towbar with connection of a cable to the towbar socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.
If using a towbar or bicycle carrier not recommended by PEUGEOT, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Operation

There are several ways of operating the motorised tailgate:

A. using the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system,
B. using the exterior control on the tailgate,
C. using the interior tailgate control,
D. using the control on the dashboard,
E. using the "hands-free access" procedure below the rear bumper.



Activation and deactivation of motorised operation of the tailgate is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.
This function is deactivated by default.

Motorised opening

There are several possibilities.

☞ Make a long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

☞ Press the exterior control **B** on the tailgate with the electronic key on your person.

or

☞ Press twice in succession on the dashboard control **D**.

The command is confirmed by an audible signal.
The tailgate opens, either completely as the default setting, or to the memorised position.

Motorised closing

There are several possibilities.

☞ Make a long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

☞ Press the exterior control **B** on the tailgate.

or

☞ Press the interior tailgate control **C**.

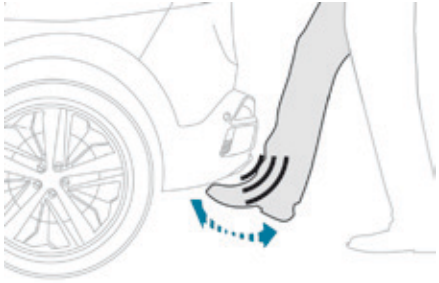
or

☞ Press twice in succession on the dashboard control **D**.

The command is confirmed by an audible signal.

i It is possible to stop the movement of the tailgate.
Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement.
Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again resumes the movement.

"Hands-free" motorised opening



☞ With the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system on your person,
☞ Use the "hands-free" access **E** by passing a foot rapidly below the rear bumper.

The command is confirmed by an audible signal.
The tailgate opens, either completely by default, or to the memorised position.

i This movement first unlocks just the boot, or the vehicle if the latter was locked.

i Passing your foot rapidly below the bumper again while the tailgate is opening interrupts the movement.
A third pass of your foot reverses the direction of movement.

! Ensure that you are steady on your feet before passing a foot rapidly below the rear bumper.
Take care not to touch the exhaust system, which may be hot - Risk of burns!

"Hands-free" motorised closing

☞ With the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system on your person,
☞ Use the "hands-free" access **E** by passing a foot rapidly below the rear bumper.

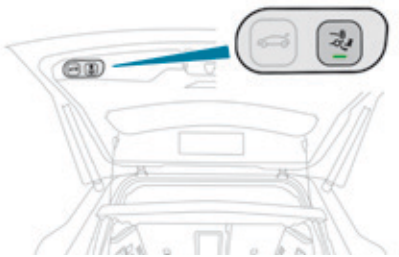
The command is confirmed by an audible signal.

i Passing your foot rapidly below the bumper again while the tailgate is closing interrupts the movement.
A third pass of your foot reverses the direction of movement.

Activation / deactivation of the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.

Automatic locking by the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function



It is possible to activate automatic locking of the vehicle on closing the tailgate, using the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function.



☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

Pressing this button again deactivates the function; its indicator lamp goes off.

Detection of obstacles

If an obstacle (person or object) is encountered, the anti-pinch system stops the closing movement and raises the tailgate by a few centimetres to clear the obstacle.

Memorising an opening position

Where height is restricted (garage with a low ceiling, ...) it is possible to limit and memorise the opening angle of the motorised tailgate.

This memorisation is done as follows:

☞ open the tailgate to the desired position,

☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Memorisation of the maximum opening position of the tailgate is confirmed by an audible signal.

To cancel the memorised position:

☞ stop the tailgate in an intermediate position,

☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Cancellation of the memorised position is confirmed by an audible signal.

Manual operation

The tailgate can be opened and closed manually, even if motorised operation is activated.
However, any manual operation must be done with the tailgate first stopped.

When opening and closing a motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas-filled struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

i Repeated opening and closing of the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.
Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Reinitialising the motorised tailgate

This operation is necessary where there is no movement - after detection of an obstacle, connecting or recharging the battery, ...

- ☞ Open the tailgate manually, if necessary.
- ☞ Fully close the tailgate manually.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Precautions in use

In wintry conditions

In the event of an accumulation of snow on the tailgate, clear the snow before commanding a motorised opening of the tailgate.
The formation of ice can block the tailgate and prevent its opening: wait until the ice melts with the heating of the passenger compartment.

When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

Recommendations related to the "Hands-free tailgate access" function

If several passes of your foot below the rear bumper fail to open the tailgate, wait a few seconds before starting again.

The function is automatically deactivated in the event of heavy rain or accumulation of snow.

If the function fails to operate, check that the electronic key is not exposed to strong electromagnetic interference (a smartphone, ...).

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

The function may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may only open or close, particularly if:

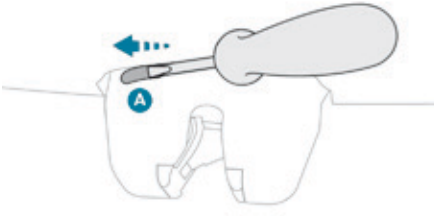
- your vehicle is fitted with a towbar,
- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,
- you are washing your vehicle,
- a service is being carried out on your vehicle,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate "Hands-free tailgate access".

! Ensure that no object or person might prevent the correct opening or closing of the tailgate.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the tailgate.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.



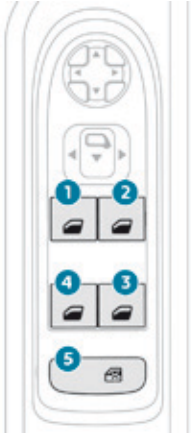
Unlocking

☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear.
4. Left-hand rear.
5. Deactivate the electric window switches located at the rear seats.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released.
Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.
Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.
In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.
The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear windows



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the rear windows irrespective of their positions.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. It remains on, as long as the child lock is off (deactivated).
Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

For each window:

- lower the window completely, then raise it, it will rise in steps of a few centimetres with each action. Repeat the operation until the window closes completely,
- continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching this position, window closed.

! In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Panoramic opening sunroof

The panoramic sunroof and its blind are opened and closed using the buttons in the roof console.

A. Blind control button.
B. Sunroof control button.



! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.

Principles

Complete opening of the sunroof involves partly raising the mobile glass, then sliding it over the fixed glass.
Any intermediate position is possible.
Opening the sunroof also opens its blind. However, the blind can be left open when the sunroof is closed.

The control buttons for the sunroof and blind can be used:

- with the ignition on, if the state of charge of the battery is adequate,
- with the engine running,
- in STOP mode of Stop & Start,
- during the 45 seconds after switching off the ignition,
- during the 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof.
Do not place heavy loads on the fixed or mobile glass of the sunroof.

Operating the sunroof

Opening



With the sunroof fully closed or partly raised:

☞ press and release the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to fully raise the sunroof.

With the sunroof open in the raised position:

☞ press and release the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to open the sunroof.

With the sunroof partly or fully closed:

☞ press and release the rear of button **B** going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the sunroof.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

☞ Press and hold the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance; the sunroof opens and stops when you release the button.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before opening.
Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - Risk of damage!
Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice.

! Do not extend your head or arms through the open sunroof when driving - Risk of serious injury!

Closing



With the sunroof partially or fully open:

☞ press and release the front of button **B** going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the sunroof.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

With the sunroof partly or fully open:

☞ press and release the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to close the sunroof to its raised position.

☞ press and release the front of button **B** again to fully close the sunroof.

With the sunroof fully or partly raised:

☞ press and release the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the sunroof.

☞ press and hold the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance; the sunroof closes and stops when you release the button.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.
The anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof, the opening sunroof must be reinitialised:

☞ press the rear of button **B** until the sunroof is fully open,

☞ press and hold the rear of button **B** again for at least 3 seconds.

! Check the condition of the sunroof seals regularly (presence of dust or deposits, dead leaves...).
Before using a car wash, first check that the sunroof is closed. If using a high pressure jet wash, keep the tip of the lance at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

Operating the sunroof blind

The closing movement of the blind is limited by the position of the opening sunroof: the blind cannot be further forward than the front of the mobile glass.

Opening



☞ Press the rear of button **A** going beyond the point of resistance to fully open the blind.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

☞ Press and hold the rear of button **A**, without going beyond the point of resistance; the blind opens and stops when you release the button.

Closing



☞ Press the front of button **A**, going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the blind.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

☞ Press and hold the front of button **A**, without going beyond the point of resistance; the blind closes and stops when you release the button.

Anti-pinch system

If the blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the blind, the blind must be reinitialised:

☞ press the rear of button **A** until the blind is fully open,

☞ press and hold the rear of button **A** again for at least 3 seconds.

During simultaneous closing of the sunroof and the blind, if the blind catches up with the sunroof, the blind then suspends its movement and automatically resumes when the sunroof stops.

When locking the vehicle, pressing and holding the locking button also closes the windows and the sunroof and then the blind. The movements are interrupted when you release the locking button.

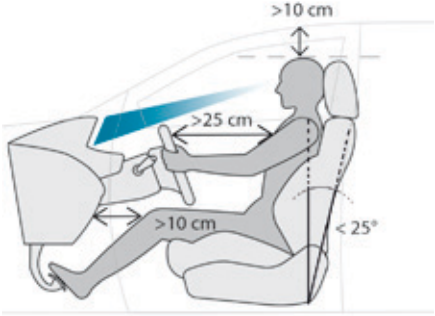
Never leave the electronic key inside the vehicle if you get out of the vehicle, even for a short time.
If something is trapped when closing the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind. To do this, press the control button in question.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind.

Driving position

Adopting a good driving position helps improve your comfort and protection.
It also optimises interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.

Sitting comfortably

The presence in the vehicle of certain seat adjustments described in this section depends on the trim level and country of sale.

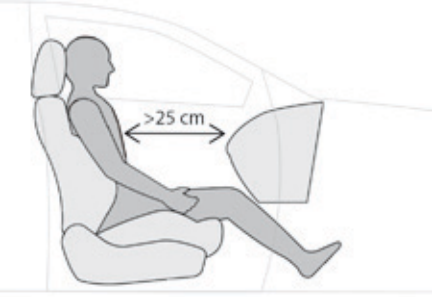


Driver

Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
Adjust the height of the seat so that your eyes are level with the middle of the windscreen.
Your head should be at a distance of at least 10 cm from the roof.
Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you can fully depress the pedals with your legs still slightly bent.

The distance between your knees and the dashboard should be at least 10 cm, for easy access to the controls in the dashboard.
Adjust the seat backrest angle to the most vertical position possible; the backrest must not be reclined more than 25° from vertical.
Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.
Adjust the length of the seat cushion to support your thighs.
Adjust the lumbar support to fit the shape of your spine.
Adjust the steering wheel so that it is at distance of at least 25 cm from your chest and you are able to hold it with your arms slightly bent.
The steering wheel must not obstruct your view of the instrument panel.

If your vehicle has electric seats, the ignition must be on to adjust them.

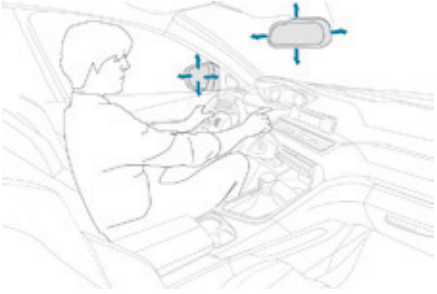


Passenger

Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you are at a distance of at least 25 cm from the dashboard.
Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.

As a safety measure, the seats and steering wheel must only be adjusted when stationary.

Before moving off



Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors so as to reduce blind spots.

If your vehicle has electric door mirrors, the ignition must be on to adjust them.



Fasten your seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of your shoulder and adjust the lap belt so that is tightened over your pelvis.
Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.

When driving



Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the quarter to three position, so that you can easily and quickly reach the controls behind and near the steering wheel.

Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving.
Always keep your feet on the floor.

Front seats

Manual seats

1. Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

- ☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- ☞ Release the bar to engage the seat in position in the runners.

2. Adjusting the seat height

- ☞ Raise or lower the control as many times as needed to obtain the desired seat height.

3. Adjusting the seat backrest angle

- ☞ Turn the knob forwards or backwards to recline the backrest to the desired angle.

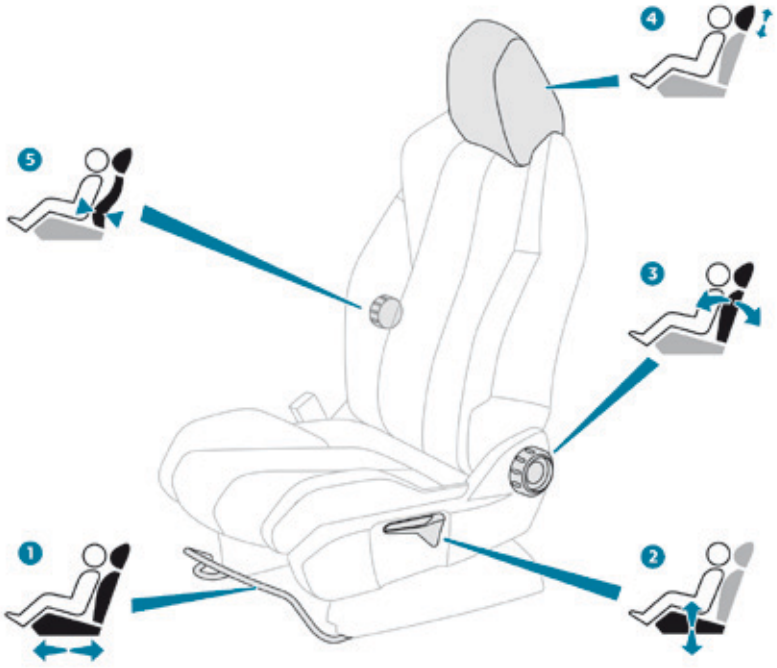
4. Adjusting the height of the head restraint

Refer to the corresponding section.

5. Adjusting the lumbar support

(only on the driver's seat)

- ☞ Turn the knob forwards or backwards to increase or decrease the level of lumbar support.



! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

"AGR" certified seats

Additional adjustments

1. Adjustment of the length of the seat cushion

☞ Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion, then move the front part of the seat cushion forwards or backwards.

2. Adjusting the seat cushion angle electrically

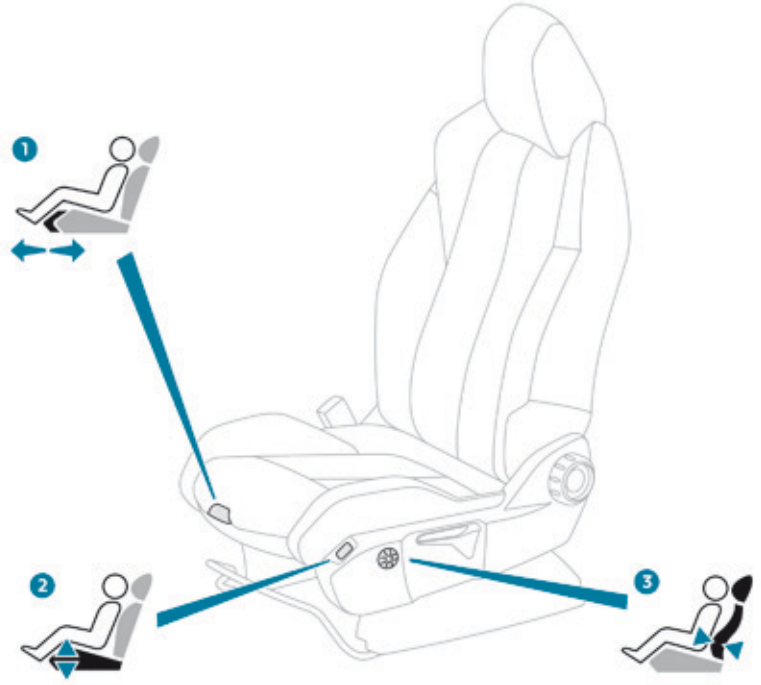
☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to raise or lower the front of the seat cushion.

3. Adjusting the lumbar support electrically

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.

☞ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

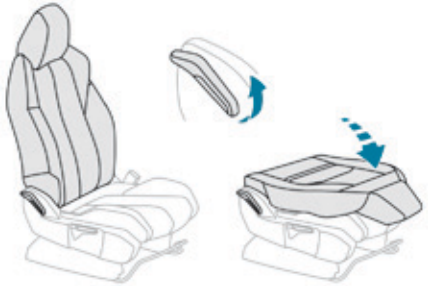


Placing the passenger seat in the table position

The backrest of the passenger seat can be fully folded forward and secured in this position. This function, when associated with folding of the backrest of the rear seats, helps in transporting long and voluminous objects.

First steps:

- ☞ lower the head restraint,
- ☞ move the seat fully back to allow space for the head restraint when folding,
- ☞ adjust the seat to the lowest position,
- ☞ check that there is nothing that might interfere with folding of the backrest (seat belt, child seat, items of clothing, bags...).



Folding the backrest

- ☞ Pull the control fully up to release the backrest.
- ☞ Tip the backrest fully forward.

! In this position, the backrest can support a maximum load of **30 kg**. When the front passenger seat is fully folded, only the outer rear seat behind the driver can be occupied by a passenger.

Returning the backrest to the normal position

- ☞ Pull the control fully up to release the backrest.
- ☞ Raise the backrest and guide it back until it latches into place.
- ☞ Check that the backrest has engaged correctly.

Front head restraints



Adjusting the height

Upward:

☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

Downward:

☞ press the lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

! The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.

Removing a head restraint

☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.

☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and then pull it fully out.

☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.

☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.

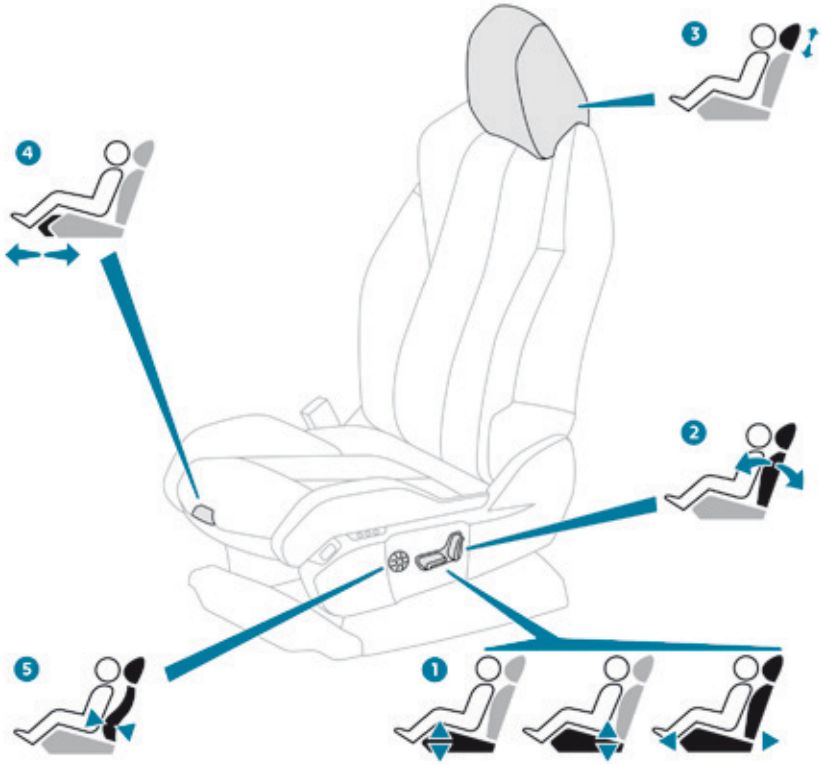
☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.

☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Electric driver's seat

To adjust the seat electrically, switch on the ignition, or start the engine if the vehicle has gone into energy economy mode.
These electric adjustments remain available for about a minute after opening the driver's door. They are deactivated about a minute after switching off the ignition.



Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

1. Adjusting the angle and height of the seat cushion / Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

- ☞ Raise or lower the front of the control to obtain the desired seat cushion angle.
- ☞ Raise or lower the rear of the control to raise or lower the seat.
- ☞ Slide the control forwards or backwards to move the seat forwards or backwards.

2. Adjusting the seat backrest angle

- ☞ Turn the control forwards or backwards to recline the backrest to the desired angle.

3. Adjusting the height of the head restraint

Refer to the corresponding section.

4. Adjusting the length of the seat cushion

- ☞ Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion, then move the front part of the seat cushion forwards or backwards.

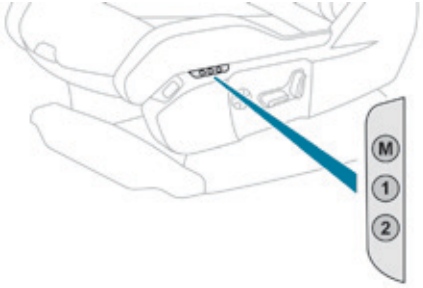
5. Adjusting the lumbar support

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

- ☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

Storing driving positions

Associated with the electric driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be stored to facilitate adjustment if there is a frequent change of driver.
It takes account of the electric adjustments of the seat and the door mirrors.



Storing a position

Using buttons M / 1 / 2

☞ Sit in the driver's seat.
☞ Switch on the ignition.
☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

ⓘ Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

ⓘ You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Heated seats



The function is active only with the engine running.

Switching on

☞ Press the button for your seat.
☞ Each press changes the level of heating; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on:
- 1 indicator lamp = low.
- 2 indicator lamps = medium.
- 3 indicator lamps = high.

Switching off

☞ Press the button again until all of the indicator lamps are off.

The state of the function is not held in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Do not use the function if the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the level of heating as soon as possible.
Once the temperatures of the seat and the passenger compartment are at adequate levels you can switch off the function; lower current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for those that do not have normal perception of heat (illness, taking medicines, ...).
There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.
Do not use the system:
- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

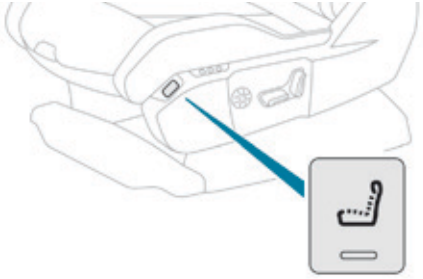
To avoid the risk of short-circuit:
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Multipoint massage

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.
This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

Activation / Settings

The massage settings are adjusted in the touch screen.
The system is switched on, either directly using the button on the front seat, or by activating a personalised ambience with the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function



Using the button on the front seat:



☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The system is activated immediately with the last settings used and the settings page is displayed in the touch screen.
If the settings suit you and you make no changes, the display returns to its previous state.



The multipoint massages are also manage by the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

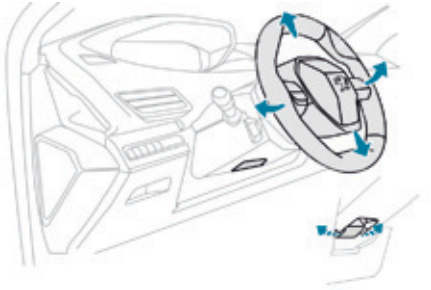
If you want to modify the settings:

☞ select another type of massage from the five offered,

☞ select a massage intensity from the 3 levels offered: "**1**" (Low), "**2**" (Medium) or "**3**" (High).

The modifications are taken into account immediately.
Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 3 minutes at rest.
The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Steering wheel adjustment

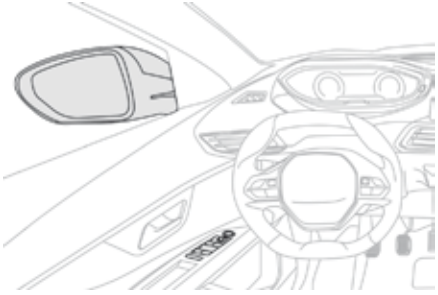


- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these operations should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

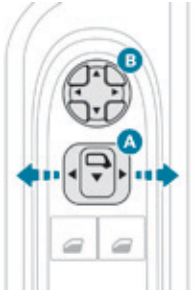


Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.
They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting / Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Demisting and defrosting the rear screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

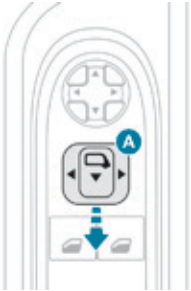


Adjustment

- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.



Folding

☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If necessary the mirrors can be folded manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

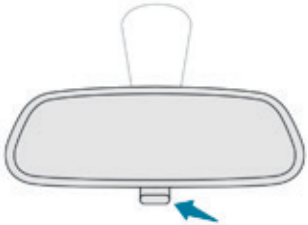
With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.
They return to their initial position:
- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear,
- once the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- on switching off the engine.

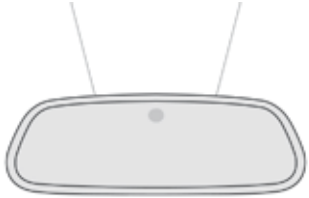
This function can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

☞ Select the"**Setting**" tab then "**Comfort**" and "**Auto mirror dipping in reverse**".

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...





Manual model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

i-Cockpit Amplify function

This function allows the driving ambiences to be managed.
Specific system settings are offered for each ambience.
These ambiences can be personalised in the touch screen.

Content of an ambience

An ambience is defined as the settings for each of the following systems:



- the passenger compartment mood lighting,

(activation / deactivation and adjustment of brightness)



- the audio ambience,

(choice of predetermined settings for the audio system equaliser)



- scented air freshener,

(activation / deactivation, selection of a fragrance and a setting for diffusion intensity)



- multipoint massage,

(selection of the seat, activation / deactivation, selection of a type of massage and a setting for intensity)



- Dynamic pack.

(activation / deactivation)

Access to the i-Cockpit Amplify home page



Direct access by this button



Access via the Applications menu



☞ Select "**i-Cockpit Amplify**".

Activating an ambience

From the home page:

☞ Select an ambience: **"Relax"** or **"Boost"**.

Depending on the settings made for the ambience, the systems are activated immediately.

Deactivating an ambience

From the home page:

☞ Press **"Deactivate the ambience"**.

or

☞ Select another ambience.

The ambience is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Personalising an ambience

From the home page:

- ☞ Select an ambience to activate it.
- ☞ Press **"Settings"** to display the settings page for the ambience.
- ☞ Select a system for which you wish to modify the settings.
- ☞ After making the modifications, press any area of the screen outside the system settings window to return to the ambience settings page.
- ☞ After making all of the desired modifications to settings, press **"Save settings"**.

The modifications are taken into account immediately.

It is possible to temporarily modify an ambience at any time, by modifying the settings for one or more of the systems managed in the ambience, without going via the i-Cockpit Amplify function. For example, you can deactivate or modify the intensity of the current massage by pressing the massage button on your seat, or activate or deactivate the passenger compartment mood lighting in the **Driving** menu.
In this case, the new settings will not be saved as part of the current ambience.

Heating and Ventilation

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

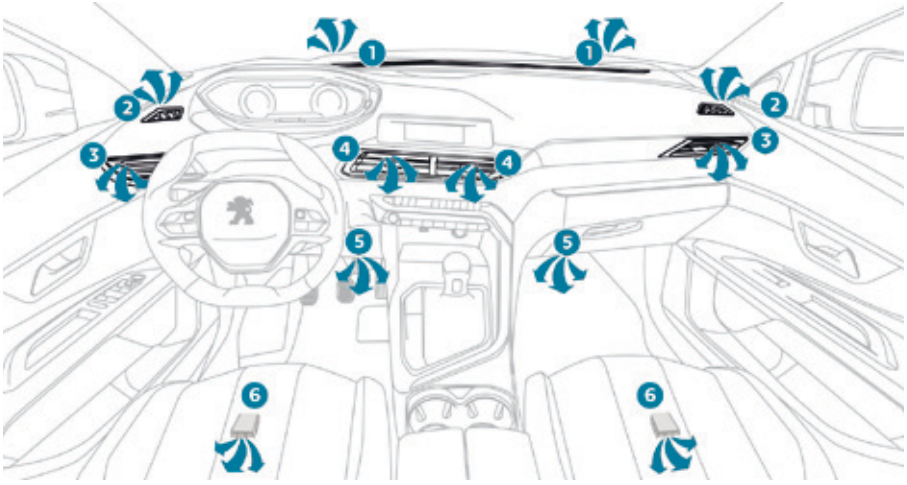
The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver, the front passenger and rear passengers, according to the level of equipment.

The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.

The air distribution control enables you to select the air vents used in the passenger compartment by the combined use of the associated buttons.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation fan.

Depending on your vehicle, the controls are accessible in the "**Air conditioning**" menu of the touch screen or are grouped together on control panel on the centre console.



Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

To close the air vents:

- ☞ side vents; place the cursor in the central position, then move it sideways towards the door.
- ☞ centre vents; place the cursor in the central position, then move it sideways towards the centre of the dashboard.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the warranty and maintenance record.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.
The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.



1. Temperature.
2. Air conditioning On / Off.
3. Air distribution.
4. Air flow.
5. Air recirculation.

Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn this knob from blue (cold) to red (hot).

Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

☞ Press this button as many times as necessary to obtain the desired air distribution.

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding indicator lamps.

Air flow adjustment





☞ Press the "**large fan**" or "**small fan**" button to increase or decrease the air flow.

The corresponding indicator lamps come on.

If you keep pressing the "**small fan**" until all of the indicator lamps go off (system off), the temperature is no longer controlled.
However, a slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air avoids misting of the windscreen and side windows.
Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.
This function also allows the desired temperature in the passenger compartment to be reached in the shortest time.



☞ Press this button to activate the function; its indicator lamp comes on.

☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function; its indicator lamp goes off.

! Avoid the prolonged use of air recirculation - Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on



☞ Press this button, its indicator lamp comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.
To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off



☞ Press this button again; its indicator lamp goes off.

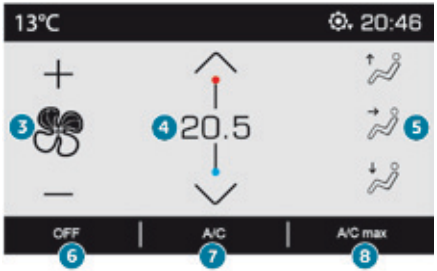
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Semi-automatic mono-zone air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.
The temperature at the nozzles and vents is regulated by the system according to the temperature in the passenger compartment and the temperature setting.

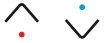
Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to display the system controls page.





1. Automatic visibility programme.
2. Air recirculation.
3. Air flow.
4. Temperature.
5. Air distribution.
6. System Off.
7. Air conditioning On / Off.
8. Maximum air conditioning.

Temperature adjustment



☞ Press one of these buttons to reduce (blue) or increase (red) the setting.

The setting corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit (depending on the unit selected).
A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

Air flow adjustment



Press one of these buttons to increase (+) or decrease (-) the speed of the booster fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow wanted.
By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

! Avoid driving too long without ventilation - Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

Air distribution adjustment

These buttons are used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by using several buttons: illumination of the indicator lamp confirms the presence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated, the indicator lamp off indicates the absence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated.
For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.
This function also allows the desired temperature in the passenger compartment to be reached in the shortest time.



☞ Press this button to activate the function; its indicator lamp comes on.

☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function; its indicator lamp goes off.

! Avoid the prolonged use of air recirculation - Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on

A/C

☞ Press this button, its indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.
To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off

A/C

☞ Press this button again, its indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Maximum air conditioning

This function allows rapid cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.
The system automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, air distribution towards the centre and outer vents, air flow to maximum and activates recirculation of interior air.

A/C MAX

☞ Press this button to activate the function; its indicator lamp comes on.

☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function and return to the previous settings; its indicator lamp goes off.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on **Front demisting - defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Switching off the system

OFF

☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps of the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.
Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

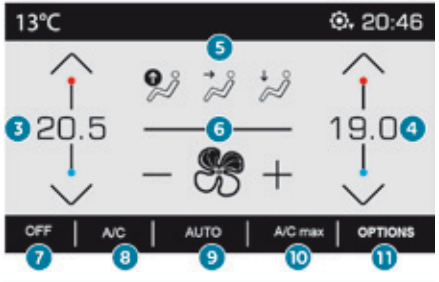
Avoid driving for too long with the system switched off - Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!
Pressing any button reactivates the system with the settings that were previously in use.

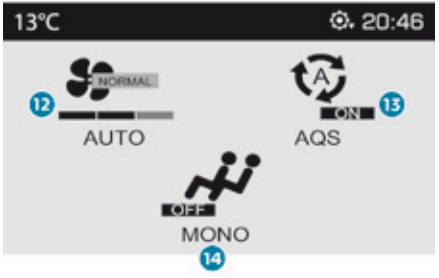
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

This air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with just the ignition on. Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.



Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to display the controls for the air conditioning.





1. Automatic visibility programme.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Temperature adjustment on driver's side.
4. Temperature adjustment on passenger's side.
5. Air distribution adjustment.
6. Air flow adjustment.
7. System off.
8. Air conditioning On/Off.
9. Automatic comfort programme on / off.
10. Maximum air conditioning.
11. Access to the secondary page.
12. Selection of settings for the automatic comfort programme.
13. Air Quality System (AQS).
14. Mono-zone / Dual-zone.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.
The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.



Press one of these buttons to increase the value.



Press one of these buttons to decrease the value.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3 in the settings for left and right.

Automatic comfort programme

AUTO ☞ Press this button to activate or deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

It is possible to modulate the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of three settings offered in the secondary page, accessible from the "**OPTIONS**" button.

To change the current setting, shown by illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp, press this button repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed:



"**Soft**": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.



"**Normal**": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).



"**Fast**": provides strong and effective air flow.

Use the "**Normal**" or "**Fast**" setting to assure the comfort of passengers in the rear seats. This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of **AUTO** mode, the indicator for the last setting remains on. Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if deactivated.

In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the system has warmed up, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on **Front demisting / defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

"Air Quality System" (AQS) function

Using a pollution sensor, this function automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once it detects a certain level of polluting substances in the exterior air.
When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.
This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.
The function is automatically activated when the screenwash is used or when in reverse gear.
The function does not operate if the ambient temperature is below 5°C, to avoid the risk of misting of the windscreen and side windows.

To activate or deactivate the function, go to the secondary page by pressing the "**OPTIONS**" button.

Manual control

You can manually adjust one or more settings, while retaining automatic control of the other functions:
- air flow,
- air distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the "**AUTO**" button goes off.

AUTO ☞ Press this button again to reactivate the automatic comfort programme.

Air flow adjustment



☞ Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the speed of the booster fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.
"**OFF**" is displayed alongside the fan.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off - Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

Air distribution adjustment

You can modulate the distribution of air in the passenger compartment using these three buttons.



Windscreen and side windows.



Centre and side vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution in the passenger compartment, all three buttons can be pressed simultaneously.

In **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamps in all three buttons are off.

Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate efficiently in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It allows you:
- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- in winter, above 3 °C, to improve demisting.

Switching on

A/C

☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow is set to off.

Switching off

A/C

☞ Press this button again; its indicator lamp goes off.

Switching the air conditioning off may cause some deterioration of the conditions in the passenger compartment (humidity, misting).

Maximum air conditioning

This function allows faster cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.
The system automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, air distribution towards the centre and outer vents, air flow to maximum and activates recirculation of interior air.

A/C MAX

☞ Press this button to activate the function; its indicator lamp comes on.

☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function and return to the previous settings; its indicator lamp goes off.

Recirculation of the interior air

The intake of exterior air avoids misting of the windscreen and side windows.

Recirculation of interior air prevents exterior odours and smoke from entering the passenger compartment.

This function also allows the desired temperature in the passenger compartment to be reached in the shortest time.



☞ Press this button to activate the function; its indicator lamp comes on.

☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function; its indicator lamp goes off.

Avoid prolonged operation of the air recirculation - Risk of misting and of deterioration of the air quality!

Mono-zone / Dual-zone

The passenger temperature setting can be indexed to the driver's setting (mono-zone function).
It is available in the secondary page by pressing the "**OPTIONS**" button.



☞ Press this button to activate the "**MONO**" function; its "**ON**" status is displayed.

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).

Ventilation with the ignition on

With the ignition on, you can use the ventilation system, controlling the air flow and distribution in the passenger compartment.
This function is also available for a few minutes after switching off the ignition, depending on the state of charge of the vehicle's battery.

You can also make use of the residual heat in the engine to warm the passenger compartment, using the temperature adjustment buttons.
This function does not activate operation of the air conditioning.

Switching off the system

OFF

☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.
Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid driving for long periods with the system off - Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!
Pressing any button reactivates the system with the settings that were previously in use.

Front demist - defrost

With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Adjust the temperature to maximum (red).
- ☞ Adjust the air flow to maximum; all the indicator lamps come on.
- ☞ Adjust the air distribution to the "Windscreen" position; its associated indicator lamp comes on.
- ☞ Check that recirculation of interior air is deactivated; its indicator lamp must be off.
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the "**A/C**" button; its indicator lamp comes on.

With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

With semi-automatic and automatic air conditioning

Automatic visibility programme



- ☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible; its indicator lamp comes on.

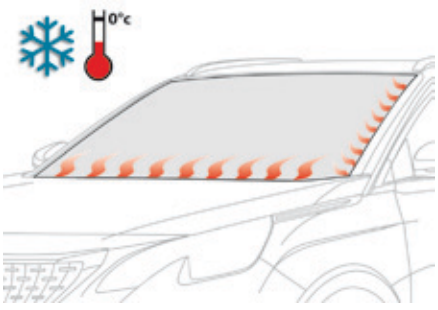
The system automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ To switch it off, press this button; its indicator lamp goes off.

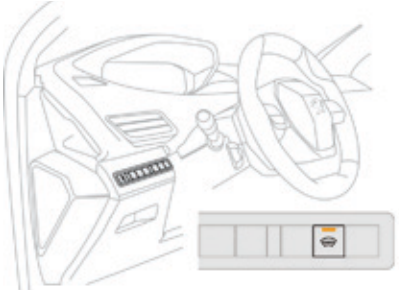
The system allows the manual modification of air flow without causing automatic deactivation of the automatic visibility programme.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the areas alongside the windscreen pillars.
Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and avoids the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.



Switching on

With the engine running, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The system is active if the ambient temperature is below 0°C.

Switching off

Pressing the button again switches off the system; its indicator lamp goes off.

The system is automatically deactivated every time the engine is switched off.

Rear screen demist - defrost





Switch off the heating of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as you judge it possible, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

Switching on



☞ Press this button to demist/ defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors.

The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

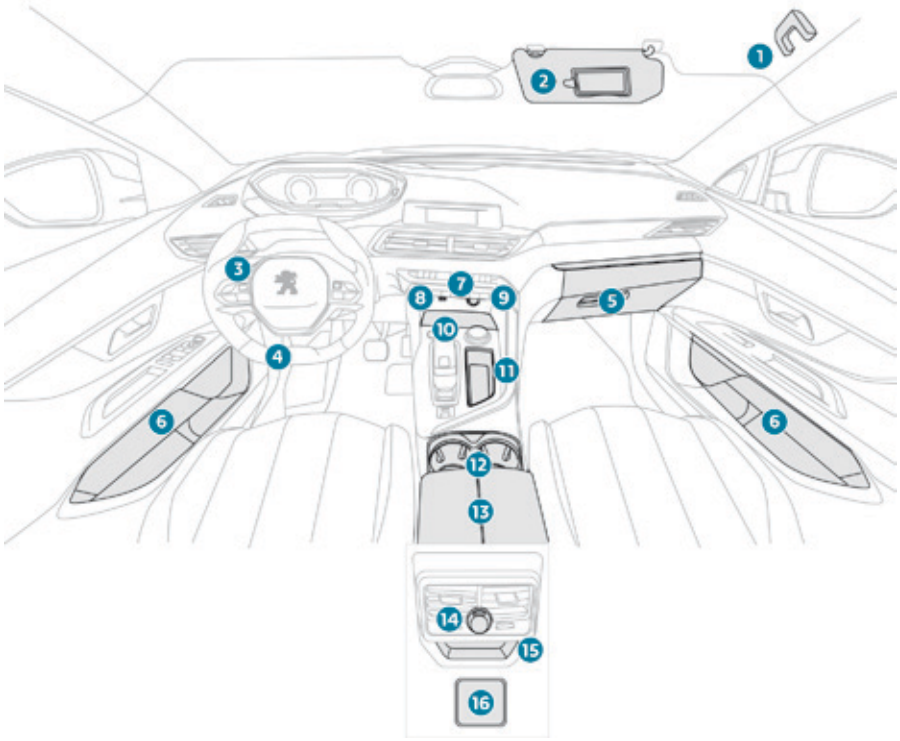


☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again.

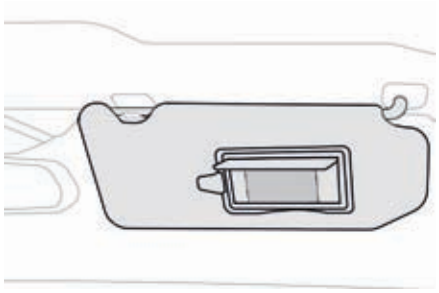
The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

Front fittings

1. **Grab handle**
2. **Sun visor**
3. **Card holder**
4. **Storage compartment below the steering wheel**
5. **Illuminated glove box**
6. **Door pockets**
7. **Scented air freshener**
8. **USB port**
9. **Front 12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
10. **Storage compartment**
    or
    CD player
    or
    Wireless charger
11. **Storage compartment**
12. **Cup holder**
13. **Front armrest with storage compartment**
14. **Rear 12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
15. **Storage compartment**
16. **230 V socket**



Sun visor

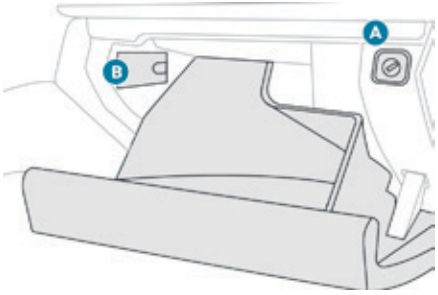


Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated vanity mirror.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Illuminated glove box



It can be used for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack...

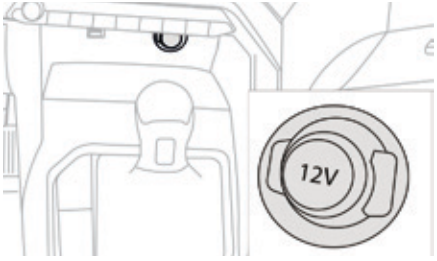
☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

The glove box is illuminated when the lid is opened.

It gives access to the passenger's front airbag deactivation switch **A**.

It also gives access to the housing for scented air freshener **B** cartridges.

Cigarette lighter / 12 V accessory socket



☞ To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.

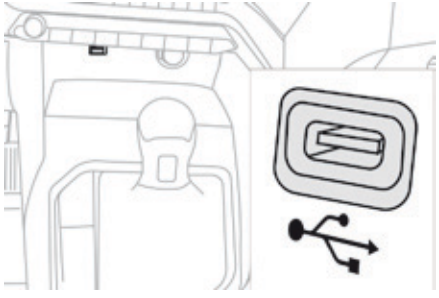
☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.

You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer...

After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB port



The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.
The USB player reads your audio files, which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
The management of these files is from the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

When connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the current delivered by the vehicle.

The USB port also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®, so that certain applications on the smartphone can be used in the touch screen.

For more information on Audio and telematics and the USB port in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

FOCAL® premium Hi-Fi system



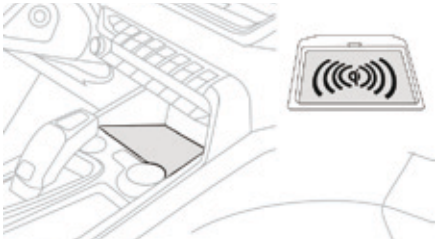
Your vehicle is equipped with a high-fidelity acoustic system designed by the French brand FOCAL®, a specialist in acoustics for more than 35 years and recognised throughout the world for its patented innovations and its unique audio signature.

10 speakers incorporating exclusive FOCAL® technologies offer the pleasure of pure and detailed sound inside the vehicle:

- High fidelity woofer / mid-range speakers: Polyglass technology delivering balance and precise sound.
- TNF tweeters: Inverted dome aluminium technology giving optimum sound dispersion and very detailed treble.
- Sub-woofer: 200 mm triple coil Power Flower™ technology for defined and dynamic reproduction of low frequencies.
- 12-way active amplification - 515 Watts: Hybrid Class AB / Class D technology providing breadth and finesse in the high frequency signals, as well as real power in the bass.

Wireless charger

This system allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.



Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Charging

- First ensure that the charging zone is clear of other articles.
- Place a portable device in the middle of the charging zone.
- Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green.



- Charging of the portable device's battery then starts.
- Once the portable device's battery is fully charged, the charge indicator lamp goes off.

! The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.

Checking operation

The state of the charge indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Charge indicator lamp	Significance
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
On, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging...
Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
On orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.

If the indicator lamp is on in orange:



- remove the portable device, then return it to the middle of the charging zone.

or

- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

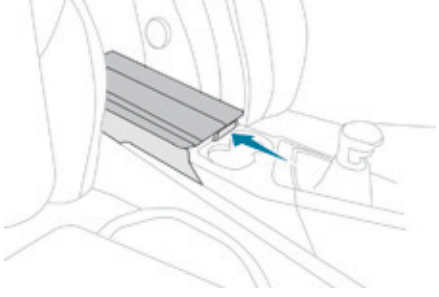
If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Do not leave metal objects (coins, keys, the vehicle's remote control...) in the charging zone while a portable device is charging - Risk of overheating or interruption of the charge!

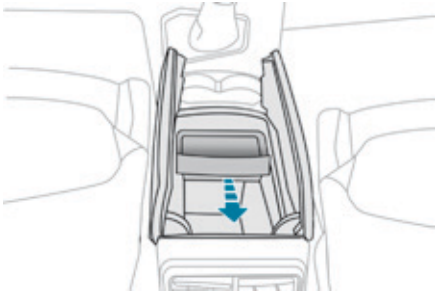
Front armrest

Comfort arrangement for the driver and front passenger.
It includes a cooled storage space.



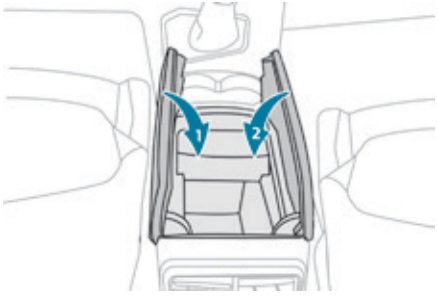
Opening

☞ Raise the latch below the lid.
The lid opens in two sections.



Storage

The small movable flat top can be fitted at the front or at the rear of the storage space.
A ventilation outlet delivers cooled air.



Closing

☞ Fold both parts of the lid.

Scented air freshener

A complete air freshener system for the passenger compartment. It is supplied by a three-fragrance cartridge.
This system operates only with the engine running.

Activation / Settings

Activation and adjustment of settings is done in the touch screen:

- either directly in the **Applications** menu,
- or by personalising an ambience for the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.

The scented air freshener is also managed by the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

In the **Applications** menu:

- ☞ select "**Scented air freshener**",
- ☞ select a fragrance from the three offered,
- ☞ select a delivery intensity to activate the system,

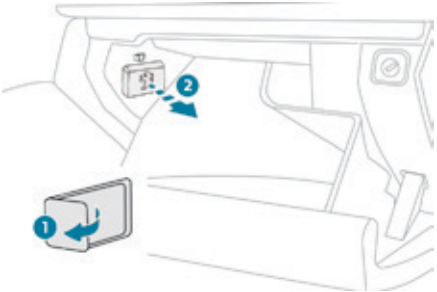
or

- ☞ select "**OFF**" to deactivate it.

Modifications are taken into account immediately.

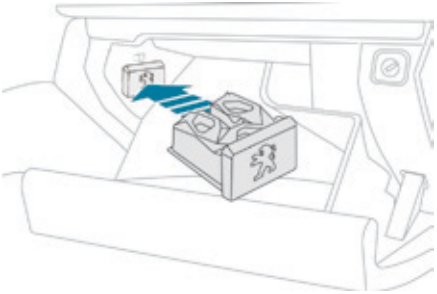
Changing the cartridge

Access to the cartridge is in the glove box.



- ☞ With the ignition on, pull the tongue to release the empty cartridge.
- ☞ Remove the empty cartridge from its housing.

The air freshener stops working with the cartridge removed.



☞ Remove the two seals from the new cartridge.
☞ Insert the new cartridge into its housing observing the direction of fitment.

The air freshener is ready to operate again.

Recommendations

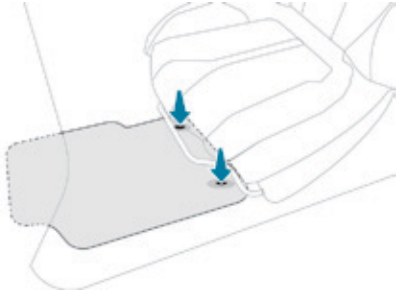
Do not discard the original cartridge, which serves as a blanking plug if the air freshener is not used.
Retain the cartridge sealing caps which serve as packaging if the cartridge is not used.
Replacement cartridges are available from PEUGEOT dealers or from the brand's internet website.

As a safety measure:
- use only the cartridges designed for the system,
- do not try to fit or remove a cartridge when driving,
- do not try to refill or dismantle the cartridges.

Keep cartridges out of the reach of children or pets.
Avoid contact between the fluid in the cartridge and the skin or eyes.
In the event of ingestion of the fluid in the cartridge, consult a doctor, showing them the product packaging or label.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

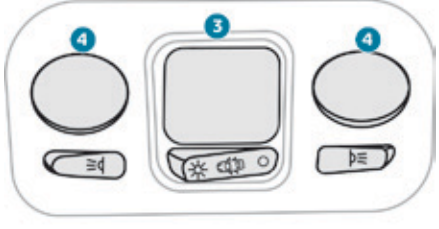
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

Courtesy lamps



1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Front map reading lamps**



3. **Rear courtesy lamp**
4. **Rear map reading lamps**

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is used to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position. To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

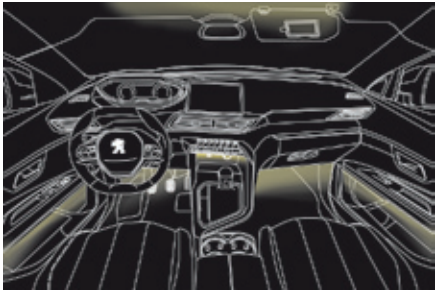
Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



At night, the interior mood lighting comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.



Depending on version, the interior mood lighting includes:

- two LEDs located in the front courtesy lamp,
- a light source in the storage compartment at the front of the centre console,
- a light source for each of the front footwells,
- light guides on the front door panels and the sides of the centre console,
- illuminated bezels for the front cup holders,
- a light source for each of the front door pockets,
- illuminated rails for the panoramic sunroof blind.

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

The interior mood lighting can be activated or deactivated and its brightness adjusted in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

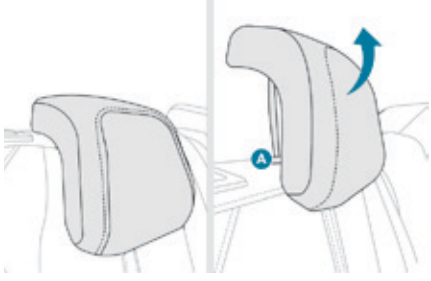
The interior mood lighting is also managed by the i-Cockpit Amplify function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear seats

Bench seat with a fixed cushion and split folding backrests (2/3-1/3) to adapt the boot load space.

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  ☞ pull the head restraint fully up.
- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

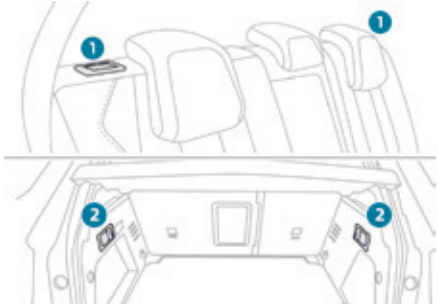
☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
☞ stow the head restraint.

To refit a head restraint:

☞ introduce the rods of the head restraint into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest,
☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
☞ press the lug **A** and then push the head restraint fully down.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for outer seats are not interchangeable.

Folding the backrests



Each section of the backrest has two release controls:

- a grip **1** on the outer edge of the backrest,
- a lever **2** on the boot side trim.

! Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

First:

- ☞ lower the head restraints,
- ☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
- ☞ fold away the rear armrest,
- ☞ check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, ...),
- ☞ check that the outer seat belts are lying correctly on the backrests.

i The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding cushion.
To obtain a flat surface, it is necessary to place the adjustable boot floor in the high position.
When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grip.

Folding from the passenger compartment

☞ Press the backrest release grip **1**.



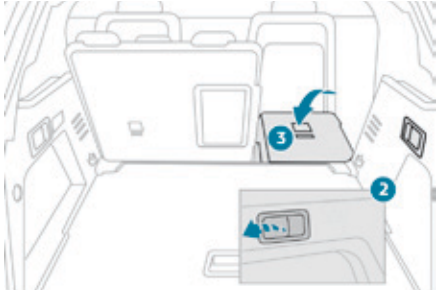
☞ Guide the backrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

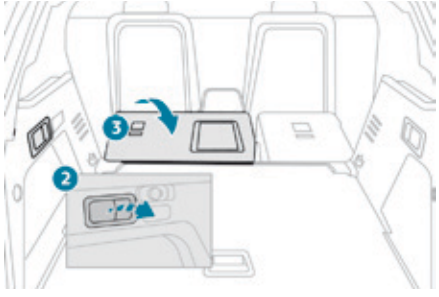


Folding from the boot

☞ Pull the backrest release lever **2** towards you.

The backrest **3** folds fully onto the cushion.





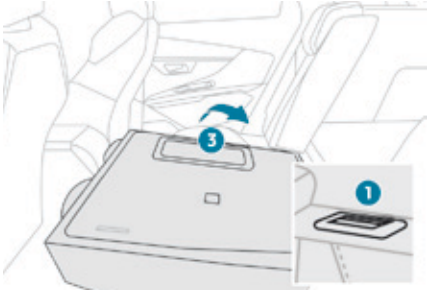
Returning the backrests to their original position

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically alongside the backrest latching rings.

☞ Put the backrest **3** in the upright position and push on it to latch it home.

☞ Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release grip **1**.

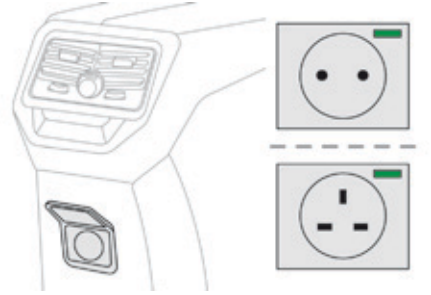
☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.



! Caution, a backrest that has not latched correctly compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward - Risk of serious injury!

Rear fittings

230 V / 50 Hz power socket



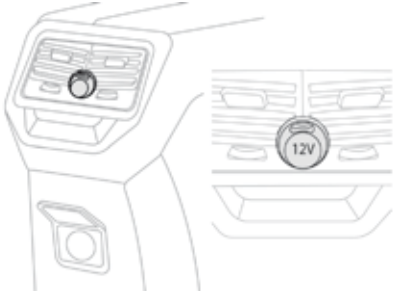
A 230 V / 50 Hz socket (maximum power: 150 W) is located on the back of the centre console under a protective cover.
This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode with Stop & Start.

- ☞ Raise the protective cover.
- ☞ Check that the green indicator lamp is on.
- ☞ Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer...).

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
Do not use a device with a metal case (electric shaver, ...).
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload...), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green indicator lamp goes off.

12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Rear armrest

Comfort and storage arrangement for rear passengers.



☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

The armrest incorporates two cup holders.

Ski flap

Arrangement for storing and transporting long objects.

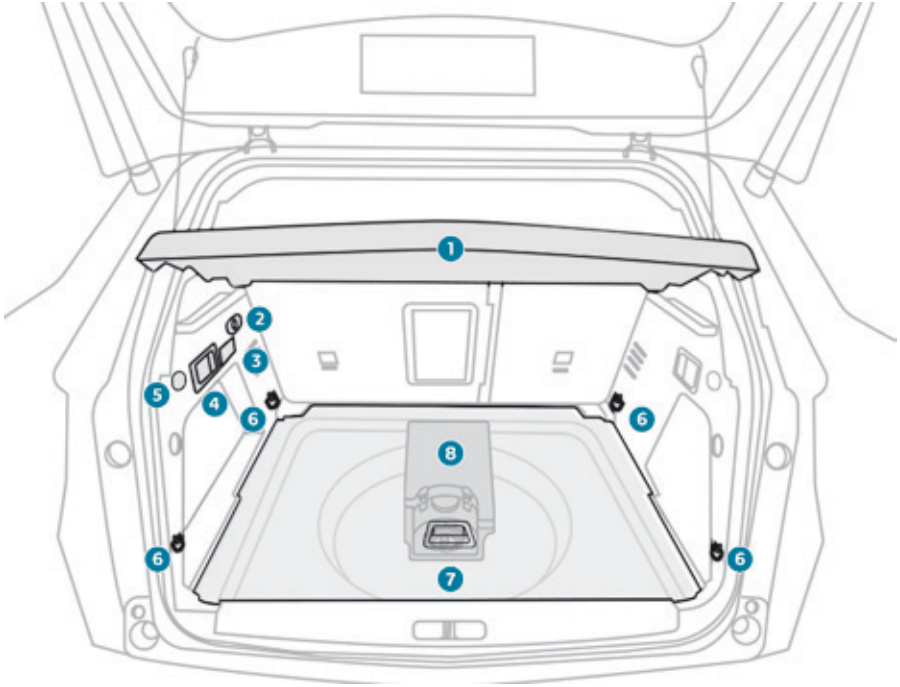


Opening

☞ Lower the rear armrest.
☞ Pull the flap handle downwards.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Boot fittings

1. **Load space cover**
2. **12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
3. **Boot lamp**
4. **Rear seat folding controls**
5. **Hooks**
6. **Stowing rings**
7. **Adjustable boot floor (2 positions)**
8. **Storage well / Tool box under the floor**



The stowing rings are designed for securing luggage by attaching a retaining net to the rings.
Such nets are available as an option or as an accessory.
For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
For the installation of a high load retaining net, refer to the corresponding section.

Luggage cover



It is in two parts:
- a fixed part with an open storage space,
- a mobile part which rises as the tailgate opens, with an open storage space.

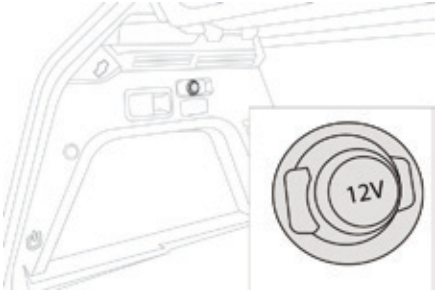


To remove the luggage cover:
- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ raise the moving part slightly, then unclip it on each side,
- ☞ unclip the fixed part on each side, then remove the luggage cover.

The luggage cover can be stowed under the boot floor.

! Under sudden deceleration, objects placed on the luggage cover may be turned into projectiles.

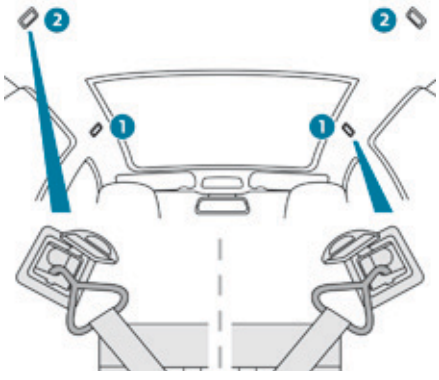
12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

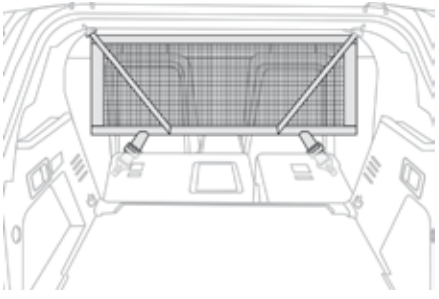
High load retaining net



This removable net allows the use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

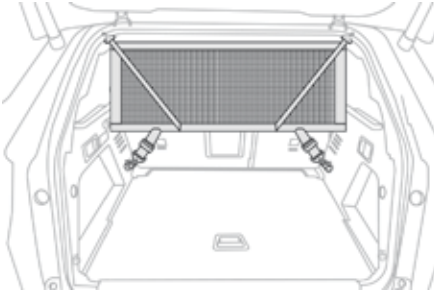
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded,
- behind the rear seats (row 2) when the luggage cover is removed.

It provides protection for the occupants of the vehicle in the event of sudden braking.



Behind the front seats

- ☞ Fold the rear seats.
- ☞ Remove the cover trims located on each side of the roof.
- ☞ Position the net's upper hooks in the roof, on each side in turn.
- ☞ Attach the net straps to the lower anchorages, located on the front seat outer runners.
- ☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.



Behind the rear seats

- ☞ Remove the luggage cover.
- ☞ Remove the cover trims on each side, located high up in the roof.
- ☞ Position the net's upper hooks in the roof, on each side in turn
- ☞ Attach the net straps to the lower rings, located on each of the boot side trims.
- ☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

i Once fitted, the net does not prevent folding of the rear seat backrests.

Adjustable boot floor

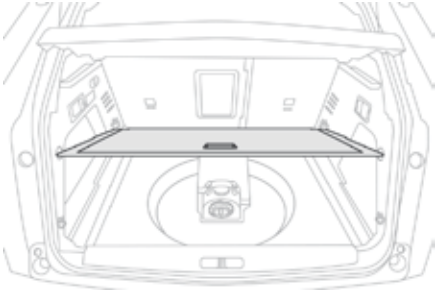
This two-position floor allows you to optimise the volume of the boot by means of the outer stops placed on the sides:

- High position (**100 kg max**): you obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded.
- Low position (**150 kg max**): maximum boot volume.

On certain versions, the adjustable boot floor cannot be fitted in the low position.

To change the height of the floor:

☞ Push the floor fully forwards then use the side stops to move the floor to the desired position.



To support the floor in the raised position:

☞ From the high position, raise the floor towards the load space cover.

☞ Take it past the retractable stops, then rest the floor on these stops.

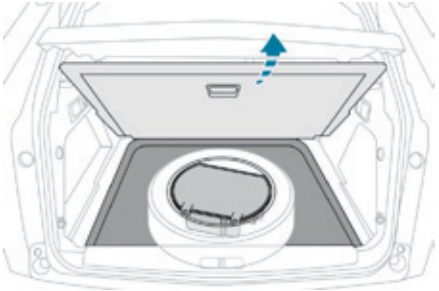
Sliding boot floor

☞ From the high position, press the handle and pull the boot floor towards you, as far as it will go.

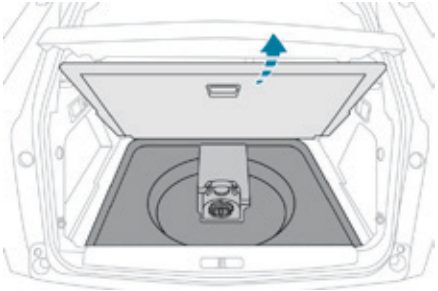
This position facilitates loading and unloading of the boot.

Maximum load: **100 kg**.

Storage well



☞ Raise the boot floor fully for access to the storage well.



Depending on version, this houses:

- a temporary puncture repair kit with the vehicle's tools,
- a spare wheel with the vehicle's tools.

It also allows storage of the luggage cover.

Boot lamp

This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.



The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

Exterior lighting control stalk

Main lighting

Selection of main lighting mode

☞ Turn the ring **A** to place the desired symbol against the mark.

O — Lighting off (ignition off) / Daytime running lamps (engine running).

AUTO — Automatic illumination of headlamps. Daytime running lamps / Dipped beam / Main beam.

Sidelamps only.

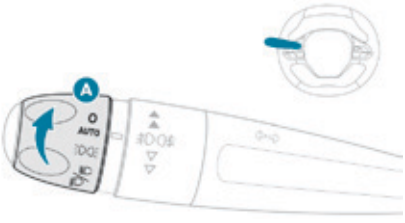
Dipped or main beam headlamps.

i **"Highway" function**
On versions fitted with "Full LED" technology headlamps, the range of the dipped beam headlamps is automatically increased once the speed of the vehicle is above 68 mph (110 km/h).

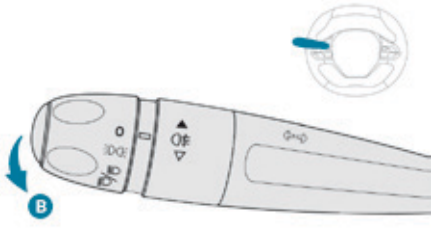
Without AUTO lighting



With AUTO lighting



Headlamp dipping



☞ Pull the stalk **B** toward you to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

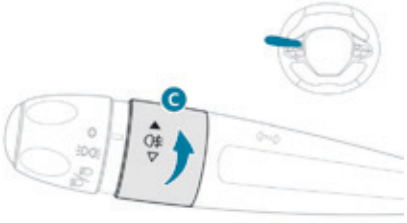
In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

SERVICE — A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Foglamps

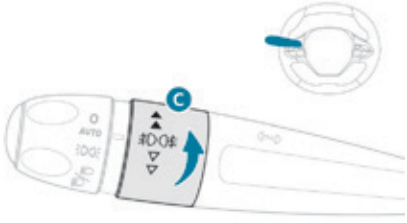


Rear foglamps

The main or dipped beam headlamps must be on.

Rotate and release ring **C**:

- forward to switch on the rear foglamps.
- backward to switch them off.



Front and rear foglamps

The sidelamps or dipped or main beam headlamps must be on.

Rotate and release ring **C**:

- forward a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- forward a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- backward a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,
- backward a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, use of the front and rear foglamps is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting after switching off the ignition

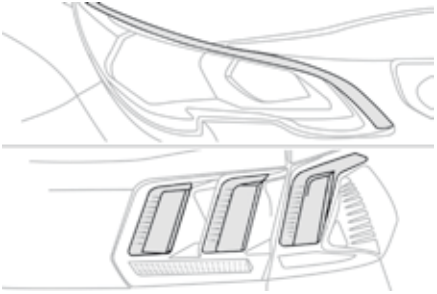
To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position **"0"** - lighting off, then to the position of your choice.
When the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns you that the vehicle's lighting is on.
They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

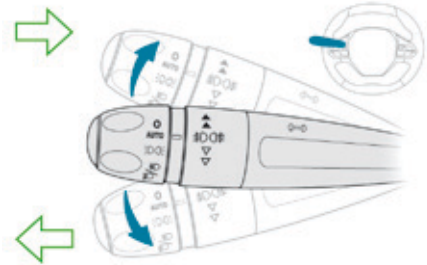
Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps



The light-emitting diodes (LEDs) in these lamps, front and rear, come on automatically when the engine is started.
They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "**0**" or "**AUTO**" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with a low ambient light level or "Sidelamps only" or "Main or dipped beam headlamps").

Direction indicators



- Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes of the direction indicators

- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

On versions fitted with LED direction indicators, the line of LEDs is illuminated sequentially. The brightness of the daytime runnning lamps is reduced during sequential operation of the direction indicators.

Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



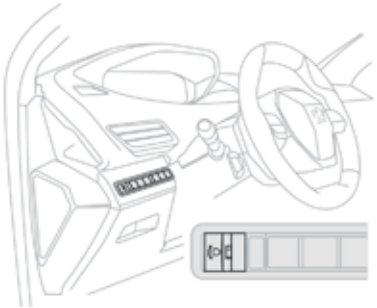


- Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps

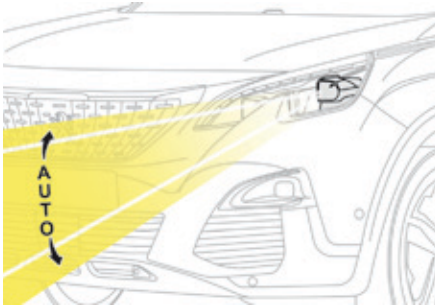


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the beams of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 Driver or driver + front passenger.
- Driver + front passenger + rear passengers.
1 5 people.
- 5 people + a load in the boot.
2 Driver + a load in the boot.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Automatic adjustment of "Full LED" technology headlamps



This system automatically adjusts the height of the beams from this type of headlamp, according to the load in the vehicle, to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users.

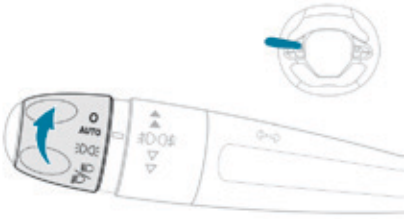
SERVICE If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.

Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps. Risk of electrocution! Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position.
Activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position.
Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

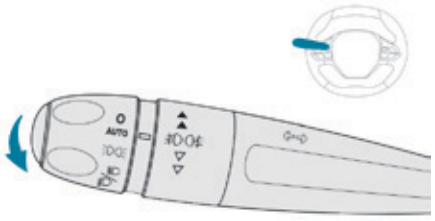
Automatic guide-me-home lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle parameters menu in the screen.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

For versions without "Automatic illumination of headlamps", the manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after 30 seconds.
For versions with "Automatic illumination of headlamps", the period of operation of the manual guide-me-home lighting is the same as that set for the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle parameters menu in the screen.

Remote operation of exterior lighting

Availability of this function depends on version.



☞ Make a short press on this remote control button.

The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lighting immediately.

Door mirror spotlamps

To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.



Switching on



When the front courtesy lamp switch is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control to locate the vehicle.

Whatever the position of the front courtesy lamp switch, they also come on with the exterior welcome lighting and the guide-me-home lighting.

Switching off

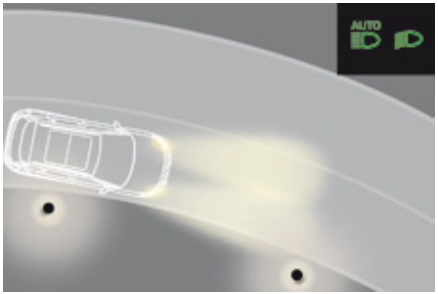
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

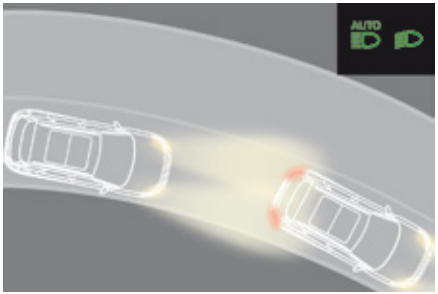
Automatic headlamp dipping

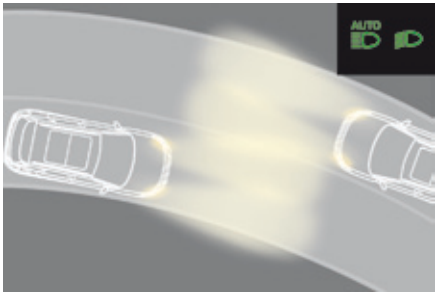
System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the ambient light level and the driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

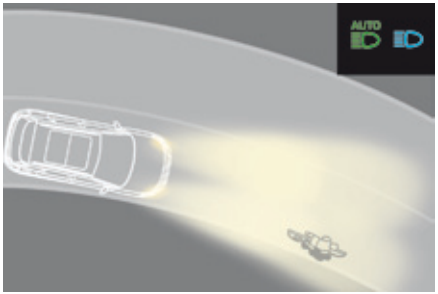
! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 15 mph (25 km/h).
If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.









Activation

☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "**AUTO**" position.



☞ In the **Driving** menu, select "**Driving assistance**", then "**Automatic headlamp dip**".

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Once the function is activated, the system operates as follows:
If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is maintained, this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:
- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to main beam,
- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

Deactivation

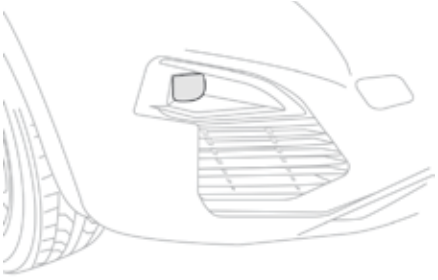


☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving assistance**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dip**"; the system changes to "automatic illumination headlamps" mode.

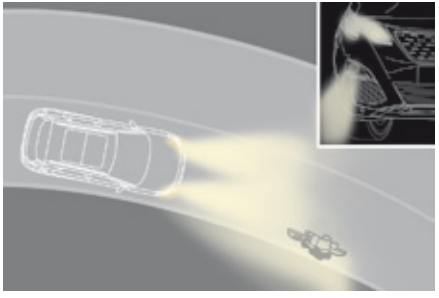
The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
- under conditions of poor visibility (falling snow, heavy rain or thick fog, ...),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, ...) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

The system is not able to detect:
- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on twisty roads, on crossroads.

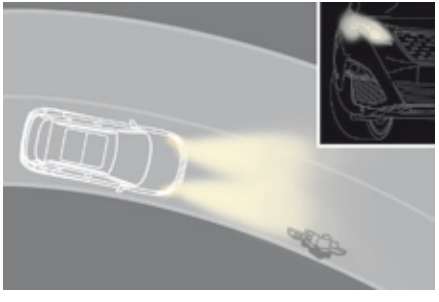
Cornering lighting



Present on vehicles fitted with "Full LED" technology headlamps, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres...).



With cornering lighting



Without cornering lighting

Activation / Deactivation

The cornering lighting can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Wiper control stalk

Programming

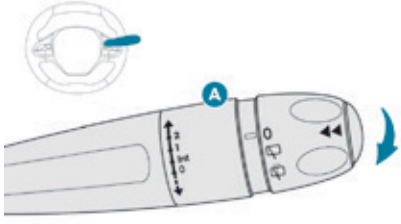
Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

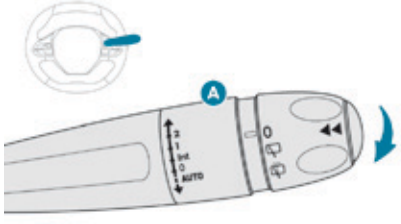
! In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wiper

A. Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2 Fast wiping (heavy rain).

1 Normal wiping (moderate rain).

Int Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0 Park.

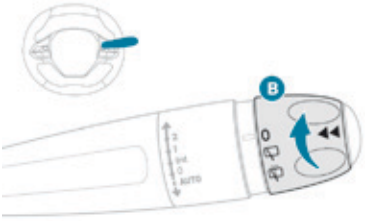
↓ Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

AUTO ↓ Automatic wiping (press down, then release).

Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Rear wiper



B. Rear wiper selection ring: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.

Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe.

Turn the ring fully; the rear screen wash, then the rear wiper automatically operate for a set duration.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle settings menu in the screen.

This function is activated by default.

! In the event of snow or hard frost, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle settings menu in the screen.

Windscreen wash



☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you.
The screenwash and then the wiper operate for a fixed time.

i The screenwash includes a wiper blade system with integral washer jets called "Magic Wash".
The screenwash fluid is sprayed from all along the length of the wiper blade; this improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid.

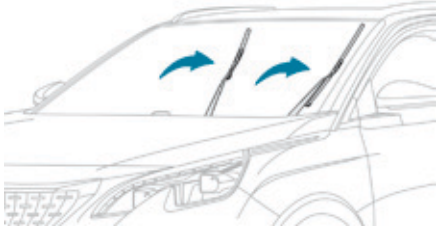
Screenwash fluid low level

SERVICE When the low fluid level is reached in the reservoir, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The warning lamp come son when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Next time you stop, refill the screenwash fluid reservoir.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades or the pump, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.
Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility.
Always use screenwash fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



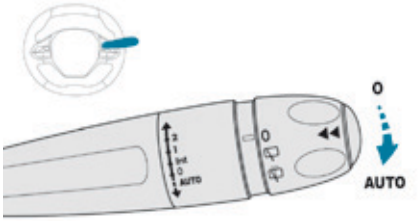
This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

☞ Any action on the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition places the wiper blades vertically on the screen.
☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall without any action on the part of the driver.
Detection of rainfall is by means of a sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

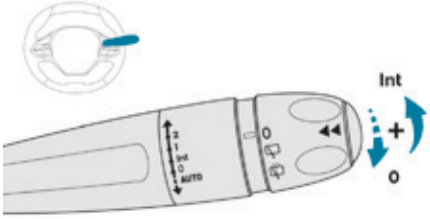


Switching on

☞ Briefly push the control stalk down.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

AUTO This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.



Switching off

☞ Briefly push the control stalk down again, or place the control stalk in another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).

AUTO This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have them checked by PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the top centre of the windscreen.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

General safety recommendations

Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle...

Hazard warning lamps



Visual warning with all of the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.

☞ Press this button, all of the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the force of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

It is also possible to switch them off by pressing the switch on the dashboard.

Horn



Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.

☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call





PEUGEOT Connect SOS

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyPEUGEOT personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "PEUGEOT CONNECT services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

Electronic stability programme (ESC)

A set of the following Electronic Stability systems:
- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance,
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).
- trailer stability assist (TSA).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

This system allows control of the vehicle to be retained when towing a trailer, so as to avoid the risk of snaking.
It is available on vehicles with factory-fitted trailer wiring (preparation for towbar option or the towbar with quickly-detachable towball pack).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



Illumination of this warning lamp, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

In emergency braking, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Intelligent traction control system

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control.**
This system detects situations of difficult surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a problem of grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.



Deactivation is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

It is confirmed by the display of a message.
The ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivation

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).
Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:



Reactivation is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.
It is confirmed by the display of a message.

Operating fault



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! ASR / DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, black ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.
To benefit in full from the effectiveness of these systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

Trailer stability assist

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.
It is available on vehicles with factory-fitted trailer wiring (preparation for towbar option or the towbar with quickly-detachable towball pack).

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability programme (ESC) must not have any faults.
Between 36 and 100 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detect oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer, it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and illumination of the brake lamps.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle.
For advice on driving safely when **Towing a trailer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It should not encourage the driver to take risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, ….) or drive at too high a speed.
In certain certain cases, oscillation of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden snaking of the trailer.

Advanced Grip Control

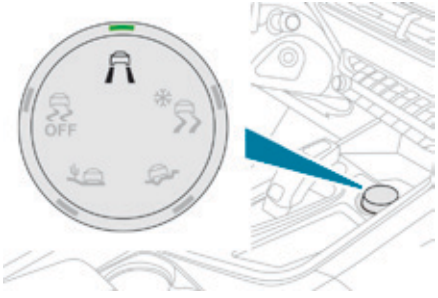
Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand. This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during touring use).

Associated with all-season M+S (Mud and Snow) tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, adhesion and traction.

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.
An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes



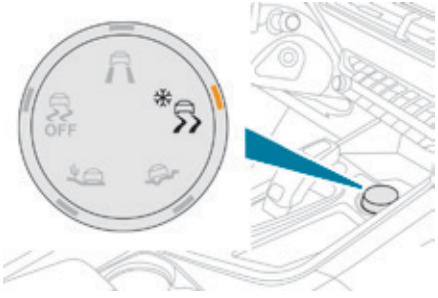
Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.



☞ Place the knob in this position.

i Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

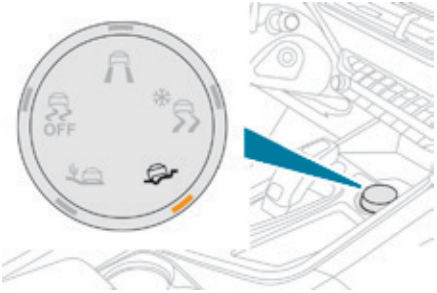


Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 30 mph (50 km/h))



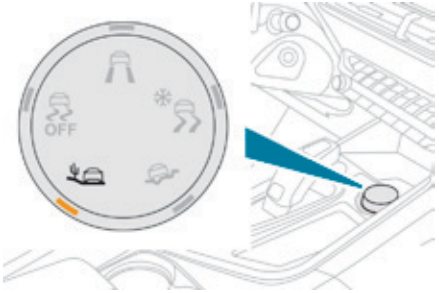
☞ Place the knob in this position.



All terrain (mud, damp grass, ...)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

☞ Place the knob in this position.



Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

☞ Place the knob in this position.

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

i OFF

You can deactivate certain ESC systems (ASR and DSC) by turning the knob to the "**OFF**" position.

These systems are reactivated automatically from 30 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

i

Driving advice

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to drive on other less passable terrain occasionally.
However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler...) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

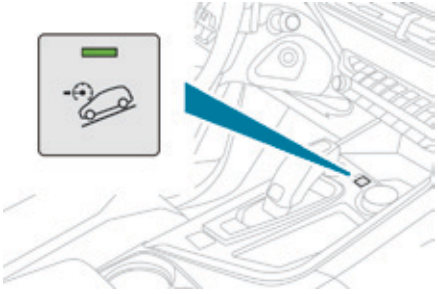
Hill Assist Descent Control

System that provides assistance when descending on loose or soft surfaces (gravel, mud...) or a steep gradient.
This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.
During a descent, it assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

Operation

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.
The state of the system does not stay in memory when the ignition is switched off.
The driver can select the system with the engine running and the vehicle stationary or at speeds of up to about 30 mph (50 km/h).





☞ With the speed below 30 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its indicator lamp comes on to select the system; this indicator appears in grey in the instrument panel.



☞ With the speed below 18 mph (30 km/h), the system becomes active; this indicator comes on in green in the instrument panel.

☞ Once the vehicle starts its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals, speed is regulated by the system:



- if the gearbox is in first or second gear, speed is reduced and the indicator flashes rapidly,
- if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, speed is reduced and the indicator flashes slowly; in this case, the speed maintained during the descent is lower.

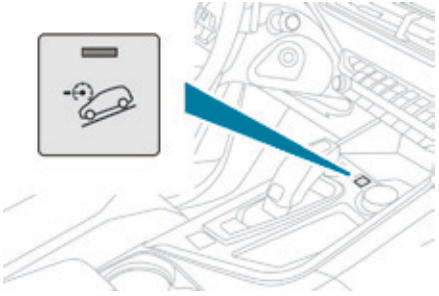
If you release the accelerator and brake pedals while the vehicle is stationary on a gradient, the system will release the brakes for progressive movement of the vehicle.
The brake lamps come on automatically when the system is regulating the speed of the vehicle.

If the speed of the vehicle exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h), regulation is automatically paused and the indicator in the instrument panel changes back to grey, but the indicator lamp in the button still stays on.
Regulation resumes automatically as soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 18 mph (30 km/h), provided that the conditions of gradient and release of the pedals are met.
You can press the accelerator or brake pedal at any time.

For the system to operate, the slope must be steeper than 5%.
The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.
Otherwise, engage a gear appropriate for the speed of the vehicle, to avoid the engine stalling.
With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

Switching off



☞ Press this button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator goes off in the instrument panel.

Above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

The system is not available:
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h),
- if the speed of the vehicle is being controlled by the Dynamic cruise control with Stop function, depending on the type of gearbox.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the system, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.

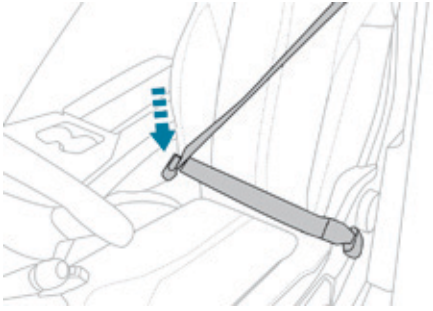
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

Fastening

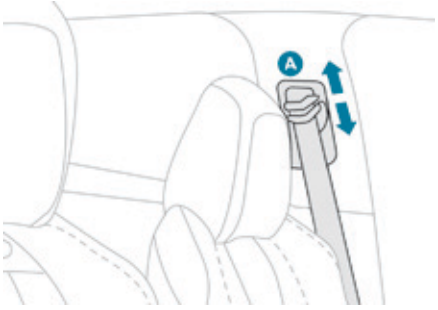


- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



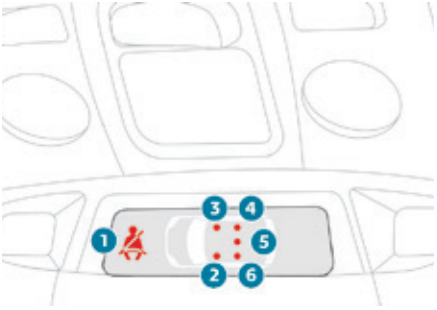
- ☞ To adjust the anchorage point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it to one of the notches.

Front seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **2** or **3** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt.
The outer rear seats are fitted with pyrotechnic pretensioners and force limiters.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

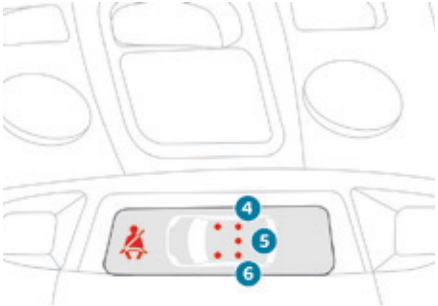
Seat belt unfastened warning lamp



This warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once the two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display



When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **4**, **5** and **6** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.
When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamp **4**, **5** or **6** comes on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

! Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfill their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

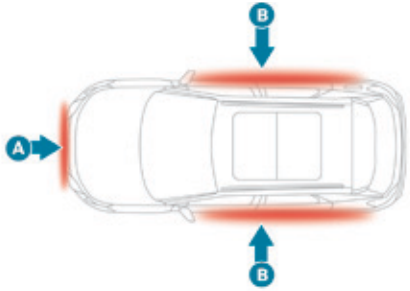
General information

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

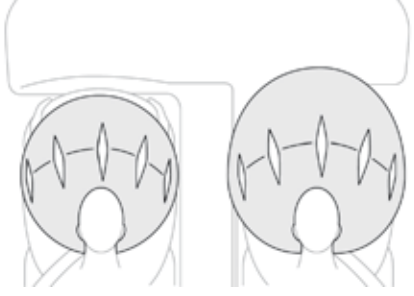


Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of detonation associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

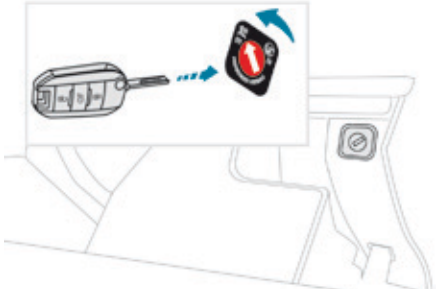


System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag



- **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes in the seat belt warning display screen. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivating the passenger's front airbag

When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the front airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning display screen for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags is deployed.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - Risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of PEUGEOT's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat at the front*

Rearward facing

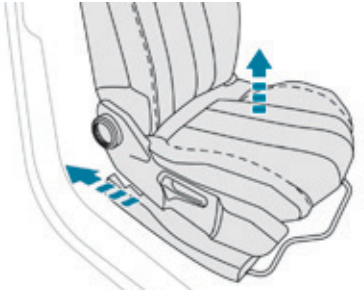


When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened. Leave the passenger's airbag active.



Passenger seat in the fully back and highest position.

! Ensure that the seat belt is properly tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger's seat.

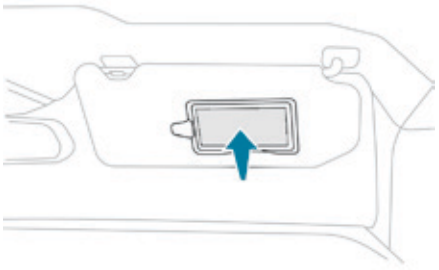
* Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child seat on this seating position.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

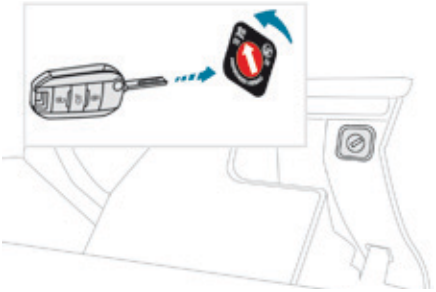
The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.







Passenger airbag OFF



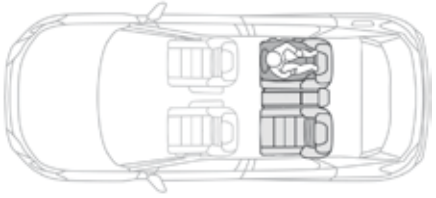
i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ.
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla.
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN.
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ.
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

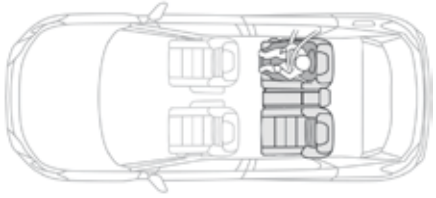
Child seat at the rear

Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg	
		
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.	**L5** "RÖMER KIDFIX XP" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.	**L6** "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat			**Passenger's front airbag**	**Weight of the child** / indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to about 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to about 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to about 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to about 10 years
Row 1 **(c)**	Passenger seat with height adjustment*		Deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
	Passenger seat without height adjustment**		Deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 **(d)**	Seat behind the driver's seat			U	U	U	U
	Seat behind the passenger's seat			U	U	U	U
	Centre rear seat **(e)**			U	U	U	U

* Fully high position.
** Backrest straightened.

U: seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and approved for universal use rearward facing and/or forward facing.

UF: seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and approved for universal use forward facing.

X: seating position not suitable for installing a child seat for the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(d) To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

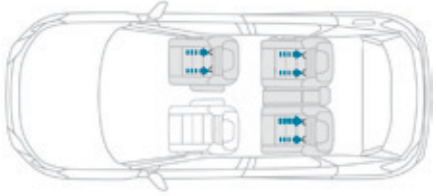
(e) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed at this seating position.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

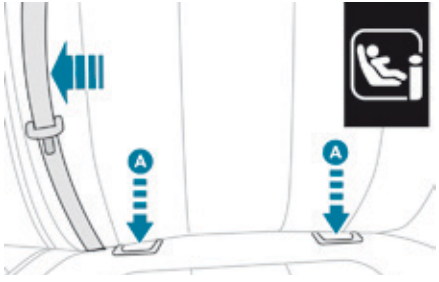
"ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulation**.

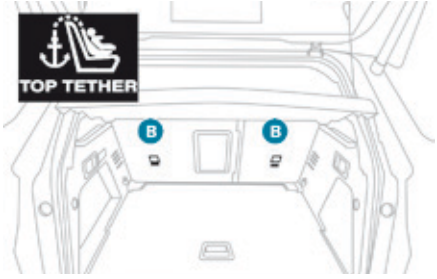
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B** behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **Top Tether** for fixing the upper strap.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap**, known as the Top Tether, which is attached to ring **B**.

For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

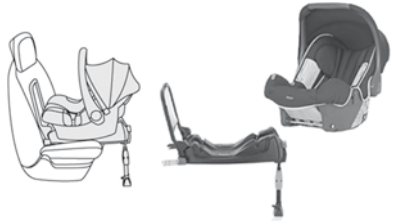
To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:
- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left hand rear seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Follow strictly the fitting instructions provided by with the child seat.

ISOFIX child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" and its ISOFIX base (size category: **E**)	**"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"** (size category: **B1**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**
	
Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.	Is installed only in the forward facing position. Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's fitting instructions for information on installing and removing the seat.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

			Weight of the child / indicative age										
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			**Cot**		**Rearward facing**			**Rearward facing**		**Forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category			**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Seat		**Passenger's front airbag**										
Row 1 **(a)**	Passenger's seat with height adjustment	Deactivated "OFF"	X		IL			IL		IUF / IL		
		Activated "ON"	X		X			X		IUF / IL		
	Passenger's seat without height adjustment	Deactivated "OFF"	X		IL			IL		IUF / IL		
		Activated "ON"	X		X			X		IUF / IL		
Row 2	Seat behind driver's seat		IL **(b)**		IL			IL		IUF / IL		
	Seat behind passenger's seat		IL **(b)**		IL			IL		IUF / IL		
	Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX									

IUF: seating position suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing secured using the upper strap.

IL: seating position suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a cot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

X: seating position not suitable for the installation for an ISOFIX seat or cot of the weight group indicated.

(a) Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child at this seating position.

(b) The installation of a cot at this seating position may prevent the use of one or both other seats in this row.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Locations for i-Size child seats

The i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.
The i-Size child seats also have:
- either an upper strap which is attached to the ring **B**
- or a support leg which sits on the vehicle's floor, compatible with the seat approved for i-Size

the role of which is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seating position			**Passenger's front airbag**	**i-Size restraint system**
Row 1 **(a)**	Passenger seat		Deactivated, "OFF"	i-U
			Activated, "ON"	i-UF
Row 2	Seat behind the driver's seat			i-U
	Seat behind the front passenger's seat			i-U
	Centre rear seat			Not i-Size

i-U: suitable for i-Size restraints of the "universal" category, forward facing or rearward facing.

i-UF: only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing.

X: seating position not suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category.

(a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seating position.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible.
You must remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.
Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat

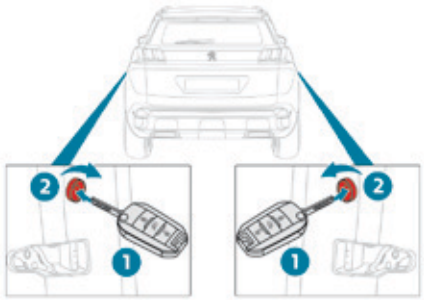
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.
The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.
It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.

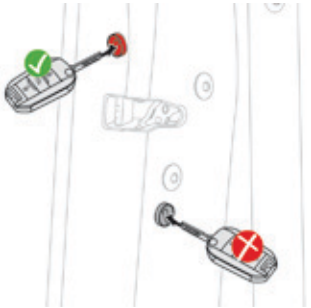


Turning the child lock on

☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Turning the child lock off

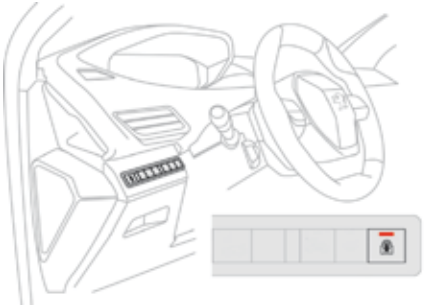
☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.



! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock

Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.
The control is located on the dashboard, driver's side.



Switching on

☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a confirmation message.
This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.

Switching off

☞ Press this button again.

The indicator lamp on button goes off, accompanied by a confirmation message.
This indicator lamp remains on while child lock is switched on.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Risk of fire!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, do not park or run the engine over areas where inflammable substances and materials are present: grass, leaves, etc.

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

When towing

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

For more information on **Weights**, refer to the corresponding section.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

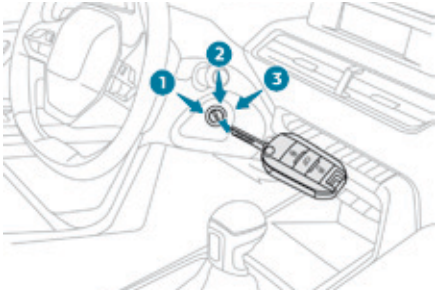
In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by a message in the instrument panel screen.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer if required.

! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.
It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

Starting / Switching off the engine with the key

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:
- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key, steering column locked,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction. It could adversely affect the deployment of the front airbag.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),
  or
- press the brake pedal firmly (automatic gearbox),
- insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death!
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

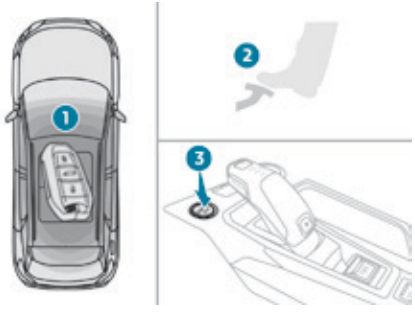
For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour. To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

Starting the engine



- With a **manual gearbox,** put the gear lever into neutral.
- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the clutch pedal.

or

- With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector at position **P** or **N**.
- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the brake pedal.

START STOP

- Briefly press the "**START/ STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

For **Diesel engines**, in temperatures below zero and/or with a cold engine, the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- With a **manual gearbox**, you should keep the clutch pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

or

- With an **automatic gearbox**, you should keep the brake pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key in the recognition zone is essential.
If the electronic key is not detected in this zone, a message is displayed.
Move the electronic key into this zone so that the engine can be started.
If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected - Back-up starting" section.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed in the instrument panel.
In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column; a message warns you when this is needed.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

Switching off the engine

☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.

or

☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector at position **P** or **N**.

START STOP

☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

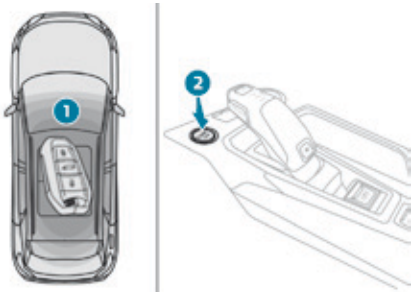
The engine stops and the steering column locks.

i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Ignition on (without starting)



With the Keyless Entry and Starting remote control inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.
This also allows the accessories to be used (for example: audio system, lighting...).

START STOP

☞ Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.

☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected



Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column to allow the engine to be started if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or when the battery in the electronic key is discharged.

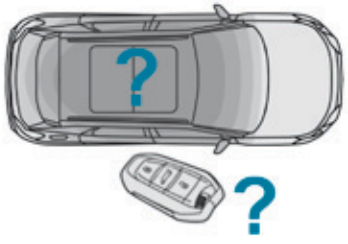
☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader.

☞ If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.

☞ If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, select position **P** then press the brake pedal firmly.

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine starts.



Back-up switch off

When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.



☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

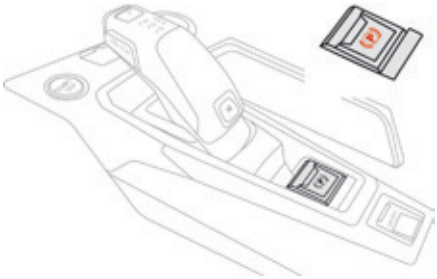


In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Electric parking brake



The system provides, in automatic operation, the application of the parking brake on switching off the engine and release as the vehicle moves off.
The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever:

- by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,
- by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the foot brake, to release it.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.
The indicator lamp in the control lever flashes during manual application or release.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works. As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear (with a manual gearbox) or placing the chocks supplied against one of the wheels. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Label on door panel

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed, not flashing.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear (with a manual gearbox) or place the gear selector at position **P** with an automatic gearbox.
For towing, you vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake:

☞ press the brake pedal,

☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary: briefly pull the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signaled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.
The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle is moving.**

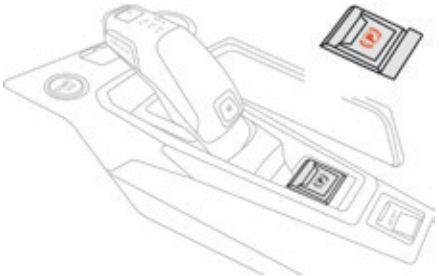
With a manual gearbox

- ☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse.
- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Select position **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.



The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off** by pressing the **START/STOP** button.

Application of of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.



Application of of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.
To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or fit the chocks supplied against one of the wheels.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released

- ☞ Switch off the engine.
  Illumination of the warning lamps in the instrument panel and control lever confirm application of the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
- ☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake.



The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

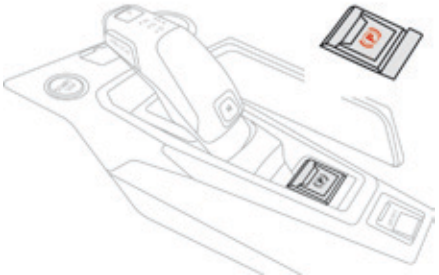
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

With an automatic gearbox, **P** mode is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, such as very cold weather or towing (caravan, recovery), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the apply direction for 2 seconds.



From this point, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.
Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

AUTO P OFF

Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

Emergency braking

! The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.
The ABS and DSC systems provide stability of the vehicle during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.

ABS

If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

Operating faults

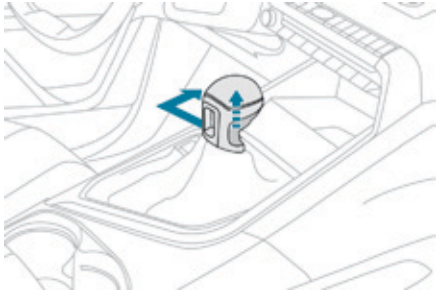
The various alert situations are described in this table.
In the event of a fault with the electric parking brake it is recommended that you contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and this warning lamp. SERVICE	- Automatic release is not available. - If you attempt an automatic release, a help message is displayed on acceleration when the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps. SERVICE 	- Secondary braking does not have full power. - If automatic release is not available, a help message is displayed on acceleration when the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps. SERVICE 	- Automatic application is not available: use the control lever. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually. - If automatic release is also not available, a help message is displayed on acceleration when the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps. SERVICE 	- If manual application and release do not work, the control lever is faulty. - The automatic functions must be used in all circumstances: they are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. - You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps. 	The parking brake is faulty, the manual and automatic functions may not operate. **When stationary**, to immobilise your vehicle: ☞ Pull and hold the control lever for about 7 to 15 seconds, until the warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, you should make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ Engage a gear with a manual gearbox or select position **P** with an automatic gearbox. ☞ If possible, place a chock against one of the wheels. Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps. 	- The parking brake does not have its full performance to securely hold the vehicle in all situations. You should make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ Engage a gear with a manual gearbox, or select position **P** with an automatic gearbox. ☞ If possible, place a chock against one of the wheels. Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. The flashing of the **P** warning lamps on starting the vehicle indicates that the parking brake is not correctly applied. As soon as possible, stop the vehicle and try to completely release the parking brake, using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal.
Display of the message "**Battery fault**" and this warning lamp. 	- The state of charge of the battery is very low and requires immobilisation of the vehicle in a safe place: engage a gear with a manual gearbox or place a chock against one of the wheels. - Once the battery is completely discharged, the controls do not operate: to release the parking brake, call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the trigger under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine, always select neutral and depress the clutch pedal.

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

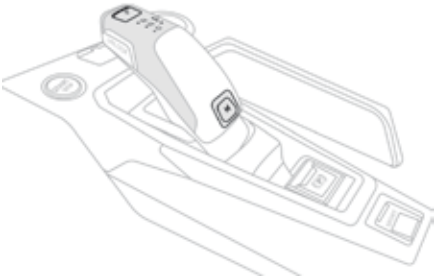
☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Failure to follow this advice could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

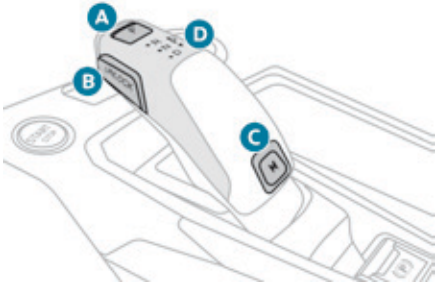
Six-speed automatic gearbox with push selector. It also offers a manual mode with steering mounted paddle gear changes.

Gearbox selector positions



P. Park.
For parking the vehicle: the wheels are blocked.
R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: for certain car washing machines, when towing the vehicle...
D. Automatic drive mode.
The gearbox manages the gear changes according to the driving style, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.
M. Manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steering mounted control paddles.

Push selector



A. Button **P**.
To put the gearbox into **P**.
B. **Unlock** button.
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or change to **R**.
This button should be pressed before pressing the selector.
C. Button **M**.
To change from **D** to permanent manual mode.
D. Display panel showing the operation of the gearbox **P, R, N, D**.

Move the selector by pressing it forward once or twice (**N** or **R**) or rearward (**N** or **D**), if necessary going beyond the point of resistance.
The selector returns to its initial position when released.

Steering mounted control paddles



In **M** or **D** mode, the steering mounted control paddles allow the driver to change gear manually.

- ☞ Pull the right-hand **"+"** paddle toward you and release to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the left-hand **"-"** paddle toward you and release to change down a gear.

The steering mounted control paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to select or come out of reverse.

"Sport" button

With the engine running, when the programme associated with the button is active, the gearbox delays changing up for a more dynamic driving style.
The programme is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Activating the **Sport** programme or the **Dynamic** pack is not recommended in the following situations:

- one of the special modes (other than standard mode) of Grip control is on,
- low fuel level reached,
- low AdBlue level reached.

Pressing this button has no effect when a trailer is connected.

Sport programme

SPORT

In **D** mode, pressing this button activates the **Sport** programme.
"S" appears in the instrument panel.

Dynamic pack

SPORT

The indicator lamp in the button is on when the **Dynamic pack** is activated.

You can activate or deactivate the function:

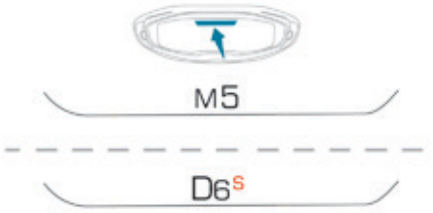
- by pressing this button,

or

- via the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, by modifying the setting for an ambience in the touch screen.

For more information on the **Dynamic Pack** and the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays in the instrument panel



With the ignition on, the state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:
P: park.
R: reverse.
N: neutral.
D1...D6: automatic mode.
S: Sport programme or Dynamic pack.
M1...M6: manual mode.
-: instruction not accepted in manual mode.

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed asking you to put the gearbox into **P** mode.
The state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel for a few moments after switching off the ignition.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.
Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle with the engine running.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - Risk of damage to the gearbox!
In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chocks supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

General points

To release the gearbox:
- from **P** mode:
  - ☞ press the brake pedal firmly,
  - ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
  - ☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal and on the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
- from neutral **N**:
  - ☞ speed below 3 mph (5 km/h),
  - ☞ press the brake pedal firmly,
  - ☞ maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, select another mode.

To engage reverse:
- ☞ speed below 3 mph (5 km/h),
- ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
- ☞ push forward once or twice.

To change to manual mode:
- ☞ with **D** mode first selected,
- ☞ press the **M** button; the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

To come out of manual mode:
- ☞ push forward to return to **D**.

or
- ☞ press the **M** button; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

The vehicle must be stationary to switch off the ignition.
To put the vehicle into free-wheel with the engine off:

- ☞ vehicle stationary, engine running, select **N**,
- ☞ switch off the engine,
- ☞ switch the ignition on within five seconds,
- ☞ with your foot on the brake pedal, push the selector forward or rearward and release to confirm **N** and release the electric parking brake manually,
- ☞ switch off the ignition.

If you exceed the period of five seconds, the gearbox goes into **P** mode; you must then start the procedure again from the beginning.

i With **N** engaged, opening the driver's door results in an audible signal. Closing the driver's door stops the signal.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the ambient temperature, the profile of the road, the load on the vehicle and the style of driving.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
The steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the road and engine speed permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The change from one gear to another takes place only if the if the road speed and engine speed permit.
If the engine speed is too high or too low, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is displayed.

Moving off

From **P** mode:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ Push twice rearward going beyond the point of resistance to select the automatic **D** mode, or forward to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearward to select the automatic **D** mode, or forward, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.

Then, from **P** or **N**:

- ☞ Release the brake pedal.
- ☞ Accelerate progressively to automatically release the electric parking brake.
- ☞ With the parking brake released, the vehicle then moves off.

In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), it is recommended that the engine be allowed to run for a few minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

Stopping the vehicle

Whatever the state of the gearbox when the ignition is switched off, **P** mode is engaged automatically, with the exception of **N**, in which case **P** mode will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (allowing the change to free-wheel).
Check that **P** mode has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.



The corresponding indicator lamps for the selector panel and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as the ones in the instrument panel.

Operating faults

Malfunction of the gearbox

SERVICE This is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, when the ignition is switched on.

The gearbox goes into back-up mode: **D** mode stays in third gear, the steering mounted control paddles are inoperative, **M** mode is no longer available. You may feel a pronounced jolt when engaging reverse. This does not present any risk for the gearbox.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Malfunction of the selector

In the event of a minor fault

SERVICE You are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

In certain cases, the selector lamps may not come on, but the state of the gearbox is still displayed in the instrument panel.
Drive cautiously and go to a PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a serious fault

STOP You are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, away from the traffic, and call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
When the ignition is switched off, the gearbox goes into **P** mode automatically.

Hill start assist

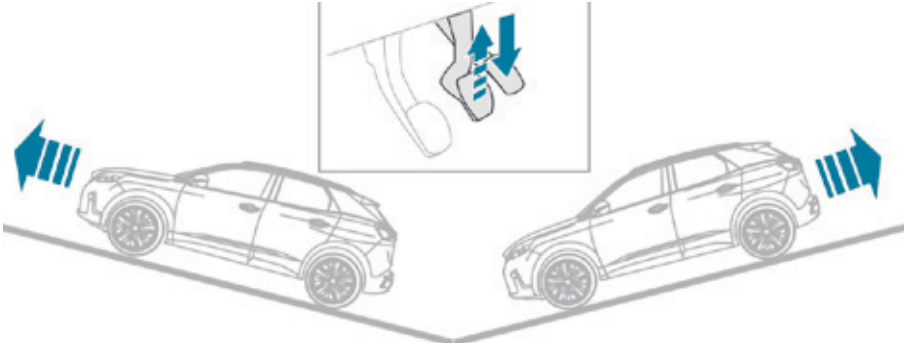
System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This system only operates when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain gradient conditions are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp and the warning lamp **P** in the lever of the electric parking brake control are on fixed (not flashing).

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a momentarily when you release the brake pedal:
- provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Dynamic Pack

This pack adapts:
- the display colour for the instrument panel,
- the acoustic ambience of the engine,
- the level of power assistance for the steering,
- acceleration,
- the management of gear changes with an automatic gearbox,
- the display in the instrument panel of information on the vehicle's dynamic parameters.

Activation



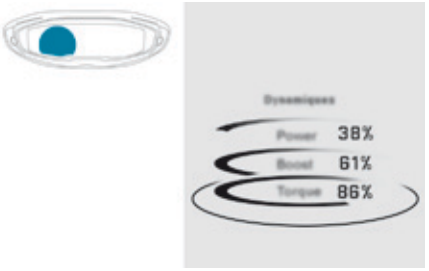
☞ Press and hold this button until the instrument panel colour changes (red); the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

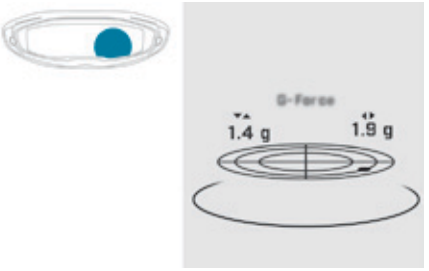


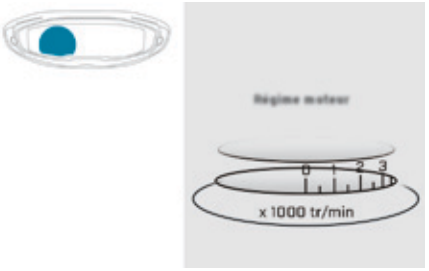
The Dynamic pack is also managed by the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.

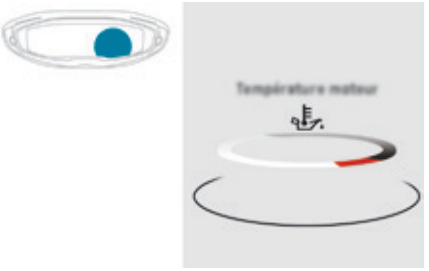
For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

If the indicator lamp flashes, activation is not possible (for example, if Park Assist is selected) and the instrument panel display colour returns to its normal mode.
If the indicator lamp continues flashing for a long time, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.









Displays

☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk to display the various dynamic parameters in the instrument panel.

☞ Press repeatedly to go from one screen to another.

You can also display this information with the "PERSONAL" mode of the instrument panel.

This telemetry information (power output, turbocharger pressure, torque, longitudinal and lateral acceleration, ...) is given as an indication only.

Gear shift indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

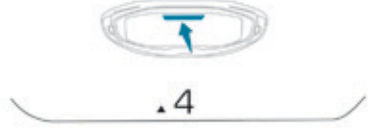
On BlueHDi Diesel 135 and 150 versions with manual gearbox, in certain driving conditions the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start). In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).
The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

* Depending on engine.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, ...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h) or vehicle stationary with the PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi 115 and 120 Diesel versions, when you place the gear lever in neutral and you release the clutch pedal,

- **with an automatic gearbox**, vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or put the gear selector in **N** mode.

A time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key or the **START/STOP** button.

For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
Stop & Start does not affect the operation of vehicle systems such as braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the **START/STOP** button.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slop (rising or falling),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the **START/STOP** button),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode



This indicator lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox:**
  - gear selector in **D** or **M** mode, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in **N** mode and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in **D** or **M** mode,
  - or when you engage reverse.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

As a safety measure or to maintain comfort levels in the vehicle, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (2 mph (3 km/h) with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi 115 and 120 Diesel versions), or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox.
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation / Reactivation

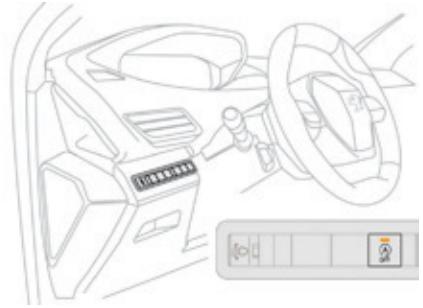
In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain the temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.
The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on.
If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts.
The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Opening the bonnet
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.



Driving on flooded roads
Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

With the button on the dashboard



☞ Press this button; the associated indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel.

Pressing the button again reactivates the system; the associated indicator lamp goes off.
The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by the display of a message.

With the touch screen button

Activation and deactivation of the function is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the "**Driving assistance**" tab, then "**Stop & Start**".

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel.

A new selection reactivates the system.
The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall.
All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.
It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.
It compares the information given by the four wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (high loading, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking tyre pressures
This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert

This is given by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
- ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

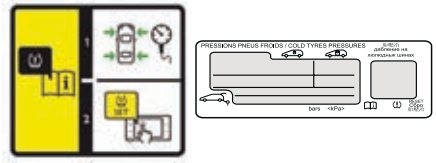
or

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is maintained until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

It is necessary to reinitialise the system every time one or more tyre pressures are adjusted, and after changing one or more wheels.



! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the use of the vehicle and in line with the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Monochrome screen C



Reinitialisation of the function is done in the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu of the screen.

- ☞ Select the "**Define the vehicle parameters**" menu.
- ☞ Select the "**Driving assistance**" menu.
- ☞ Select the "**Tyre inflation**" menu.
- ☞ Select the "**Reinitialisation**" function.
- ☞ Select "**Yes**" to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by an audible signal.

Touch screen



Reinitialisation of the function is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Settings**" tab.
- ☞ In the page, select the "**Under-inflation reinitialisation**" function.
- ☞ Select "**Yes**" to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speeds to be saved, which can then be offered to set the two systems: the speed limiter (to limit the speed of the vehicle) or the cruise control (for a vehicle cruising speed).
You can memorise up to six speed settings for each of the two systems.
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

Modifying a speed setting



This function is accessible in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

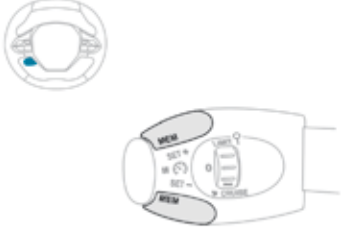
- Select the "**Driving assistance**" tab.
- Select "**Speed settings**".

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.



- Select the "**Speed limiter**" or "**Cruise control**" tab, depending on the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings.
- Select the speed setting you want to modify.
- Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.
- Confirm to save the modifications and quit the menu.

"MEM" button



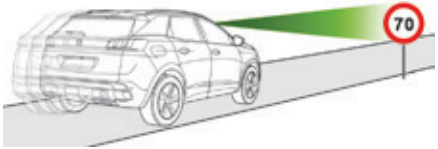
This button allows you to select a memorised speed setting for use with the speed limiter or the cruise control.
For more information on the **Speed limiter** or the **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Speed limit recognition

This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.
Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

Principles





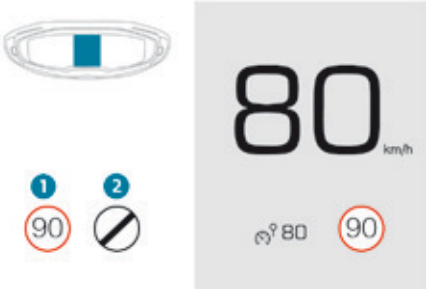
Using a camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs.
The system also takes account of information on speed limits from the navigation system mapping.

i It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic.
It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

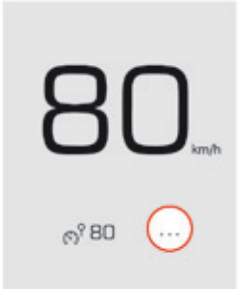
i To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.

Display in the instrument panel

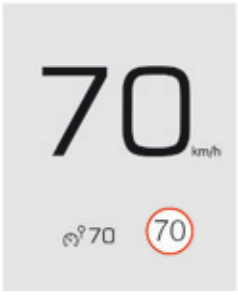


1. Indication of the speed limit.
or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.

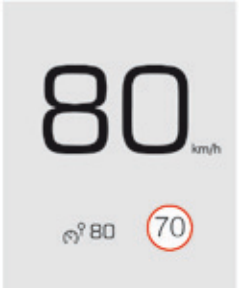
Display of the speed



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



The driver can, if desired, adjust the speed of the vehicle according to the information given by the system.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.

Activation / Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle parameters menu in the screen.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.
The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:
- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- trailer, caravan,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers,
- ...

The system may be disrupted or not work at all in the following situations:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area ahead of the camera dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

Memorising the speed setting

This memorisation is in addition to the display of **Speed limit recognition**.



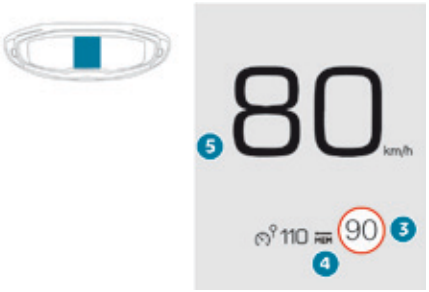
The driver can choose to adapt the speed setting to the speed limit suggested, by pressing the memorisation button for the speed limiter, the standard cruise control and the dynamic cruise control with Stop function.
This speed setting then replaces the previous speed setting for the speed limiter and/or cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter, Cruise control**, or **Dynamic cruise control with Stop function**, refer to the corresponding sections.



Steering mounted controls

1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.



Display in the instrument panel

3. Speed limiter indication.
4. Memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

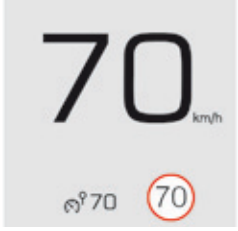


On detection of a speed limit sign, the system displays the speed limit and offers to make it a new speed setting.
"**MEM**" flashes in the screen for a few seconds.

i If the difference between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the recognition system is less than 6 mph (10 km/h), the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.



☞ Make an **initial** press on this button to request saving of the speed suggested.



☞ Press this button again to confirm and save the new speed setting.
After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

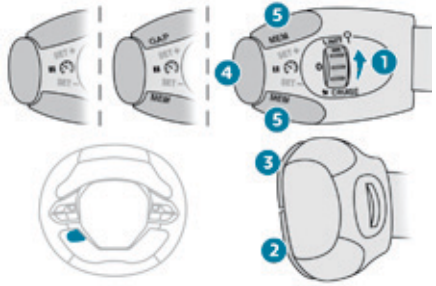
Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h).
The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

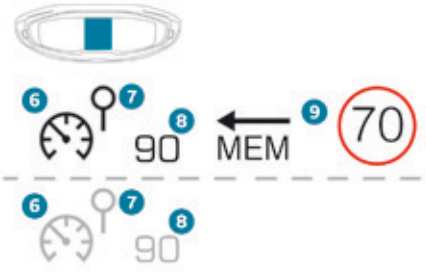
Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On / Pause.
5. Display memorised speed settings or, depending on version,
   Accept the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

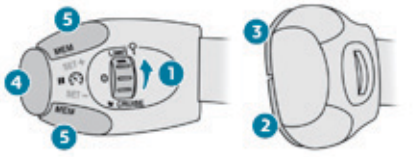
For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on / pause indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Select a memorised speed or, depending on version,
   Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

Switching on



☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.



☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,

☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the speed limiter setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,

☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,

☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

This value is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed limiter setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.



! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

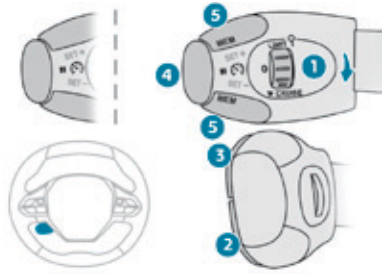
The cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) as well as:
- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of third gear or higher,
- with an automatic gearbox, the gear selector in **D** mode or second gear or higher in **M** mode.

Speed regulation remains active after changing gear on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):
- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

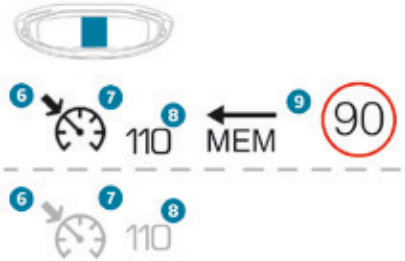
Steering mounted controls



1. Select cruise control mode selection.
2. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lower the cruise setting.
3. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raise the cruise setting.
4. Pause / Resume cruise control.
5. Display memorised speed settings or, depending on version,
   Accept the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

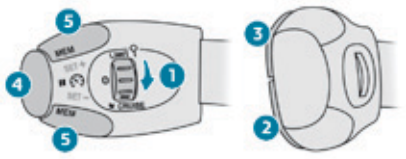
Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause / resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selected indication.
8. Cruise speed setting.
9. Select a memorised cruise speed or, depending on version,
   The speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

Switching on



☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.
You can release the accelerator pedal.



☞ Pressing button **4** interrupts operation of the system (pause).



☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

☞ in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,

☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

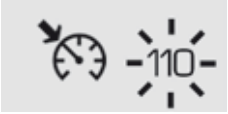
- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

This value is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new cruise speed setting.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

When required (overtaking manoeuvre...), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.



To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.
To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Only use the cruise control if the traffic conditions will allow you to drive for a certain time at a steady speed and at a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow...).
In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Dynamic cruise control with Stop function

This system provides two functions:

- automatic regulation of the speed of the vehicle to a value programmed by the driver,
- automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.

To do this, the system has a radar, located in the middle of the front bumper, with a maximum range of 150 metres.



Principles



This system detects a vehicle running in front of your vehicle, travelling in the same direction.

It automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.

If the vehicle in front is running more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle, using engine braking and the braking system.

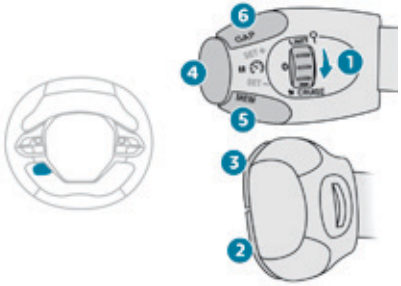
If the braking system is used to decelerate the vehicle, the brake lamps come on.

If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the dynamic cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

! The dynamic cruise control is a driving aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the observation of speed limits and safe distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
It is recommended that you always keep your feet close to the pedals.
The driver must be ready to take back control of their vehicle at any time, using the brake or accelerator pedal as appropriate.

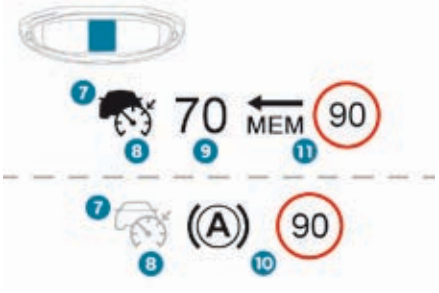
Steering mounted controls



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting / Lower the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting / Raise the speed setting.
4. Pause / Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
6. Display and adjust the inter-vehicle distance setting.

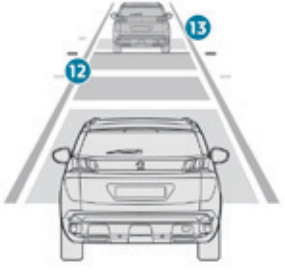
For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays in the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence / absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation / deactivation.
9. Speed setting.
10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary.
11. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

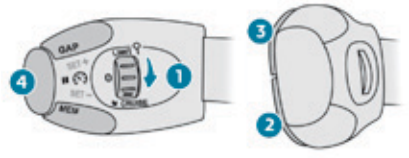
If a vehicle is detected, the symbol **7** is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol **7** is empty.
In cruise control activated mode, the symbol **8** appears in green. By default, the symbol **8** appears in grey.



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of the vehicle detected by the radar.

This information is visible in the instrument panel in "DRIVING" display mode.

Switching on



The cruise control is **switched on** manually, it requires a vehicle speed of between 18 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h).
An automatic gearbox must be in position **D** or **M**.

☞ With the ignition on, turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position: cruise control mode is selected, but not started (grey).
☞ Vehicle moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control is activated (green).
By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at **"Normal"** (2 dashes).
Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

i When the cruise control is operating, Stop & Start is automatically deactivated.

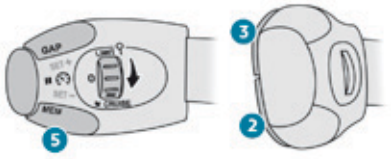
Pause

The dynamic cruise control can be **paused** manually by:
- action by the driver:
  - on button **4**,
  - on the brake pedal,
  - on the electric parking brake control,
  - when changing from **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.
- or automatically, if operation of the ESC system is triggered for reasons of safety.

i Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused. The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system by exceeding 18 mph (30 km/h) and pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**.
If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a few minutes.

! When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.
Wait until the speed of the vehicle is close to the speed setting before reactivating the system - by pressing button **2** or **3** - in order to set your current speed as the new speed setting.

Modification of the speed setting



Engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

Modification from the current speed

- ☞ By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to raise or lower the setting in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h),
- ☞ By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to raise or lower the setting in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

! Take care: a prolonged press on button **2** or **3** will cause a very quick change in the speed of your vehicle.

Modification from the speed limit recognition system

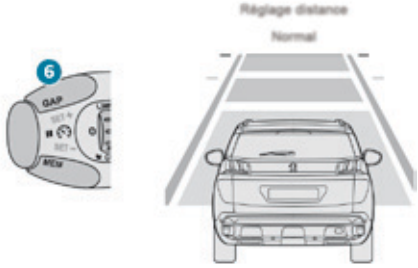
- ☞ The speed to be memorised is displayed in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed setting close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Modification of the inter-vehicle distance setting



Three predefined inter-vehicle distance settings are offered:

- **"Distant"** (3 dashes),
- **"Normal"** (2 dashes),
- **"Close"** (1 dash).

Engine running and cruise control selected (grey), you can modify the inter-vehicle distance setting:

☞ press button **6** to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance,

☞ press button **6** repeatedly to cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.

The modification is then taken into account.

This setting remains in memory, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.

Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all of the information available in the instrument panel, you must first select the "DRIVING" display mode.
The following table describes the alerts and the messages displayed for the different driving situations.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

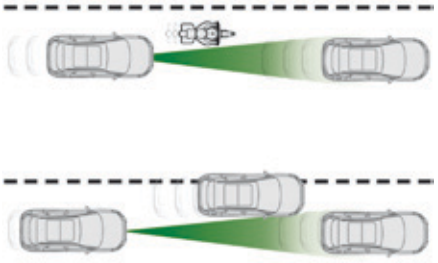
Indicator	Display	Associated message	Comment
	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
 70	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
 70	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
 or 		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Indicator	Display	Associated message	Comment
70		"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver should take control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
70		"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). **The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.**
(70) or (70)		"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control (speed outside the operating range, winding road).
(A) or (A)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver should accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it with the speed of the vehicle above 18 mph (30 km/h).

Limits of operation

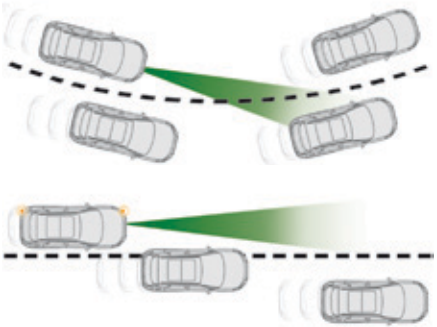
The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.
It is recommended that the system be deactivated when the "space-saver" spare wheel is in use.
The system should not be activated when towing a trailer.
In certain critical situations, the system will encourage the driver to immediately take back control:

- if the vehicle in front slows down too much or too suddenly, and the driver does not brake,
- if a vehicle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



As the radar's field of detection is quite narrow, it is possible that the system may not detect:

- vehicles of reduced width (motorcycles, scooters...),
- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane,
- vehicles entering a corner,
- vehicles suddenly pulling out.



The cruise control does not take account of:

- pedestrians, cyclists, animals,
- stationary vehicles (traffic jam, red light, breakdown...),
- vehicles crossing a junction,
- vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

! The cruise control operates by day and at night, in fog or moderate rainfall.
However, it is strongly recommended that you always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, according to the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface.

Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and at an adequate safe distance.
Do not use the cruise control in urban areas, heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads or on slippery or flooded surfaces.
In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even attained: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, ...

The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:
- the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of driving lamps),
- driving on a racing circuit,
- running on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains or non-slip covers.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- ensure that mats are secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The operation of the radar, located in the front bumper, may be disturbed in certain weather conditions, for example: with accumulations of snow, ice, mud, ...
Clean the front bumper, removing the snow, mud, ...

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the cruise control, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! As a safety measure, do not use the system if the brake lamps are faulty.
Do not use the system if the front bumper is damaged.

Distance alert and Active Safety Brake



This system includes three functions:
- Distance alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

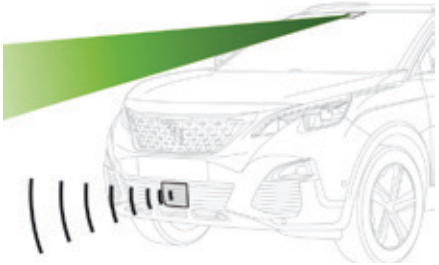
Distance alert: it warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.
Intelligent emergency braking assistance: it completes the braking action taken by the driver if this is inadequate.
Active Safety Brake: it intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
If the driver fails to act, it contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.

The vehicle is fitted with a radar located in the front bumper and a camera at the top of the windscreen.

Conditions for activation and operation

The system is active from about 4 mph (7 km/h) and is deactivated below about 3 mph (5 km/h). It takes account of:
- registered vehicles running in the same direction or stationary,
- pedestrians present in the traffic lane (bicycles, motorcycles, animals and objects on the road are not necessarily detected).

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.
This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



Points on the Active Safety Brake function

The speed of the vehicle must be between 3 and 87 mph (5 and 140 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.
The speed of the vehicle must not be higher than 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
The speed of the vehicle must not be higher than 36 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
The DSC system must not be deactivated or faulty.
All occupants must have fastened their seat belts.
Driving at steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

! Following an impact, the system is automatically disabled; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Limits of operation

In the following cases, it is recommended that the system be deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu:

- when towing a trailer or caravan,
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version),
- following impact damage to the windscreen close to the detection camera,
- if the front bumper has been damaged,
- if the brake lamps are not working.

! Because of limits in the operation of the system, it is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
Consequently, the driver must always remain attentive and able to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Distance alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.



Level 1: visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.

i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is never displayed if the "**Close**" threshold has been selected.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a vehicle moving or stationary in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.
The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu in the screen.
You can select one of three thresholds:

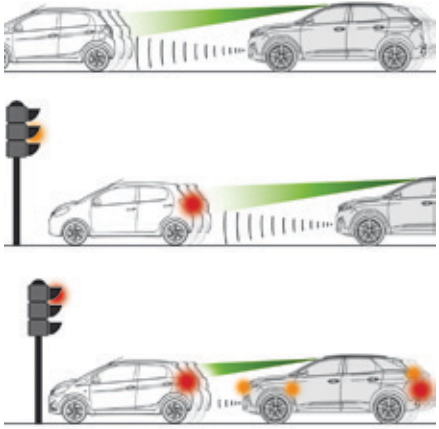
- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will complete the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.
Using a radar and a camera, this function acts on the vehicle's braking system.

If the radar and the camera have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

Important: if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you should take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to add to or finish the automatic braking action.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

The point at which braking is triggered may be adjusted according to the reaction from the driver, such as movement of the steering wheel or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of the automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of the automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed to stop the vehicle moving off again.

Deactivation / Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.
The system can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle settings menu in the screen.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Check that the sensors (camera and radar) are not covered by dirt, mud, frost, snow...
If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could mask the camera's view.
Clean the front bumper, removing mud, snow, ...

If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

There may be interference in the operation of the camera or it may not work at all in the following situations:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, ...),
- dazzle (headlamps of an approaching vehicle on the other side of the road, low sun, reflection on a wet road, leaving a tunnel, alternating between light and shade, ...),
- camera or radar masked (mud, frost, snow, ...).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

Fatigue detection system

It is recommended that you take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.
Depending on version, the function either has the "Driving time warning" only, or this combined with the "Fatigue detection system".

Activation / Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
For more information on the menu, refer to the part covering your screen in the "Dashboard instruments" section.

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Do not take the wheel if you are tired.

Driving time warning



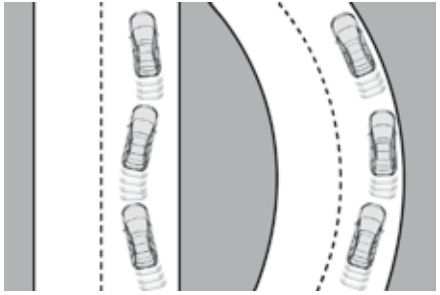
The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

This alert takes the form of the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Fatigue detection system



Depending on version, the "Driving time warning" may be combined with the "Fatigue detection system".

Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h))

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.



Once the system considers that the behaviour of the vehicle suggests a certain level of fatigue or inattention by the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.
The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, ...),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, ...),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, masked (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, ...),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, ...

Lane Departure Warning System

System which, using a camera which recognises solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.
To provide safe driving, the camera analyses the image then, if the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



! This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Activation / Deactivation

Activation and deactivation of the function is done via the **Driving** menu in the touch screen.

Select the "**Driving assistance**" tab, then "**Lane departure detection assistance.**".

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection

If an unexpected change of direction is detected, you are alerted by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel and an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a fault, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The detection may be impeded:
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface,
- if the windscreen is dirty,
- in certain weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (low sun, leaving a tunnel, ...).

Assisted Lane Departure Warning System

Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the ground, this system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of involuntary crossing of a line.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
The carriageway must have at least one lane marking (solid or broken) on the ground.
The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.
The change of trajectory is not accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.
The ESC system must be activated.



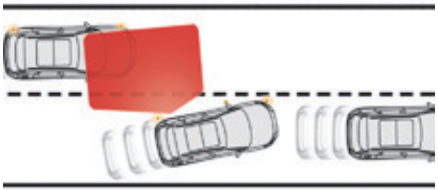
! This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle in all circumstances. The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven on.
It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.
The driver must hold the steering wheel in a way that allows control to be taken back in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (where there are no lane markings, for example).
It is necessary to observe the driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected, it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path.
The driver will then notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

If the driver wishes to maintain the trajectory of the vehicle, they can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example).
The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.

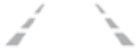
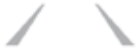
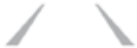
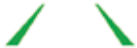
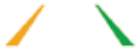


While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.
However, with the "Blind Spot Monitoring System" activated, if the driver starts changing lane and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.
For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System**, refer to the corresponding section.

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all of the information needed in the instrument panel, you must first select the "DRIVING" display mode.
The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed according to the driving situation.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

State of the system	Warning lamp	Associated display and message	Comment
OFF			System deactivated.
ON			System active, conditions not met: - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ESC deactivated or operation triggered, - "sporty" driving.
ON			Automatic deactivation / standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).
ON			Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON			The system corrects the trajectory on the side concerned or the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON	 	 "Take back the wheel".	- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. - During correction of the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and a solid line is crossed: the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of trajectory.

Limits of operation

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- operation of the direction indicators,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The system may not operate correctly or at all in the following situations:
- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of on oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade),
- area of the windscreen in front of the camera dirty, misted, frosted, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- road markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- narrow, twisty roads.

Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:
- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavorable weather conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (black ice).

The system is not designed for the following driving situations:
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling road,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

Activation / Deactivation

Activation / deactivation of the system is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the "**Driving assistance**" tab then "**Help staying in lane**".

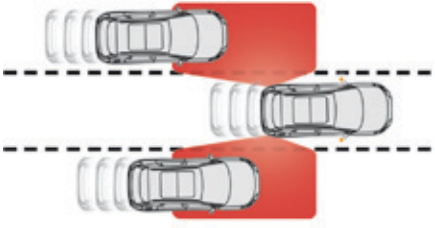
The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Operating fault

SERVICE

In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Monitoring System



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane.
This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation / Deactivation

Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the "**Driving assistance**" tab, then "**Blind spot monitoring**".

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

To deactivate the system, select "**Blind spot monitoring**" again in the "**Driving assistance**" tab.
The indicator lamp goes off.

The state of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

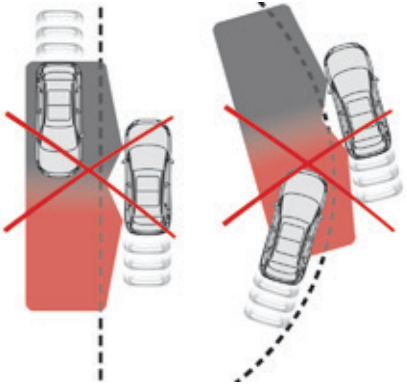
i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by PEUGEOT.

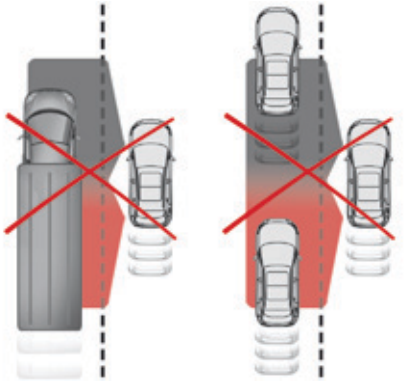
Operation

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, bicycle - is detected.

The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan...





No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs...),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach...) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp and the display of a message.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

High pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail...).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Assisted Blind Spot Monitoring System

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.

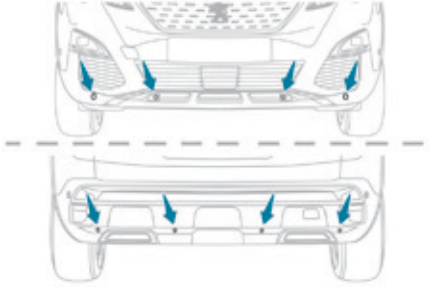
Conditions for operation

The following systems must be activated:
- Blind Spot Monitoring System,
- Assisted Lane Departure Warning System.



For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System** and the **Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Parking sensors



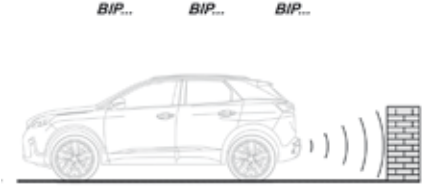
This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (examples: pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.
Certain types of obstacle (examples: stake, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.
This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.







Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle.
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation / Activation

The deactivation or activation of the system is done in the vehicle parameters menu in the screen.
The state of the system is held in memory when the ignition is switched off.

The system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towbar (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist system is measuring a space.
For more information on **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a fault, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).

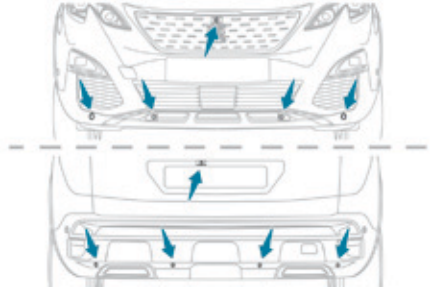
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

High pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the sensors.

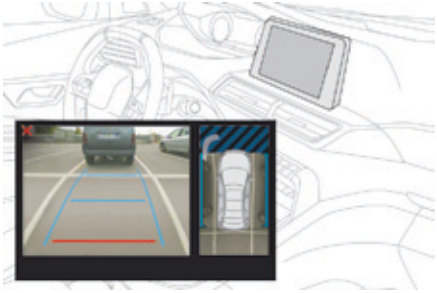
Panoramic vision

General points



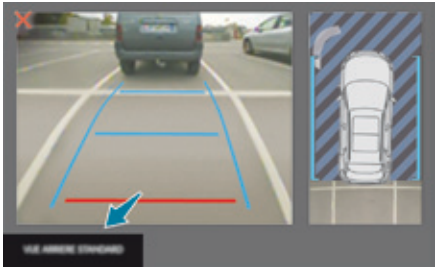
Visiopark 1 - Visiopark 2

With the engine running, this system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed in the touch screen, using one camera for Visiopark 1, and two cameras for Visiopark 2.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle.
The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.
Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:

- standard view,
- 180° view,
- reconstructed view.



AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

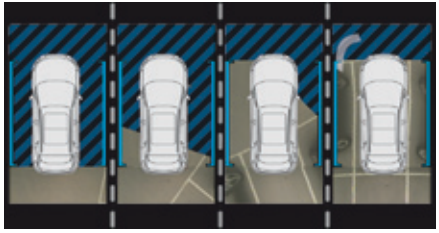
☞ Press the button at the bottom left-hand corner of the touch screen.
☞ Select the type of view:

- **"Standard view"**,
- **"180° view"**,
- **"Zoom view"**,
- **"AUTO view"**.

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of image reconstruction



Using one or both cameras, this system records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre.
An image from above your vehicle in its near surroundings is reconstructed in real time, as you progress in the manoeuvre.
This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.
This reconstructed view is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

With Visiopark 2, the view is reconstructed using both cameras, when going forward and when reversing.
On activation of the system, it is possible that the central view is not reconstructed. If the system is activated after the vehicle has already been driven, the central view may be completely reconstructed.

! This system is a visual aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i The images provided by the camera(s) may be distorted by the relief.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

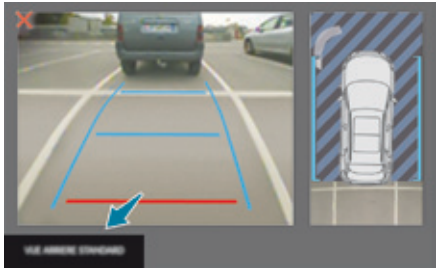
Maintenance

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors and camera lenses are not covered with mud, ice or snow.
Check the cleanliness of the camera lenses regularly.
If necessary, clean the camera lenses with a soft, dry cloth.

High pressure jet wash

When washing your vehicle, keep the tip of the lance at least 30 cm from the cameras.

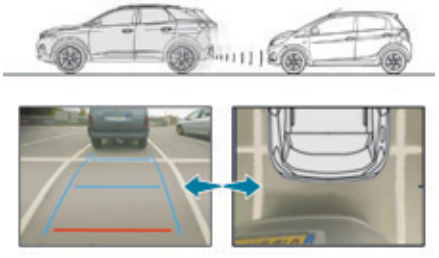
Visiopark 1



Rear vision

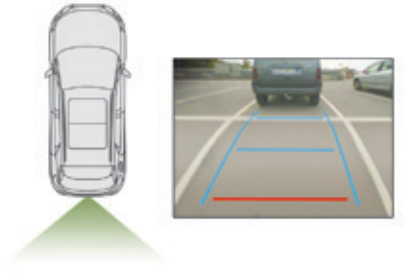
To activate the camera, located in the tailgate, engage reverse and keep the speed of the vehicle below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),
- automatically on opening the tailgate,
- when coming out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.



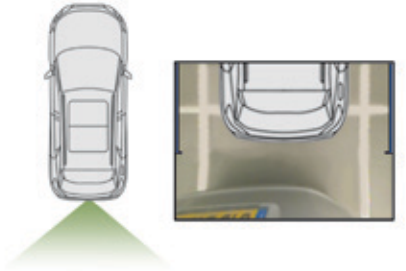
AUTO mode

This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view to a view from above, as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.



Standard view

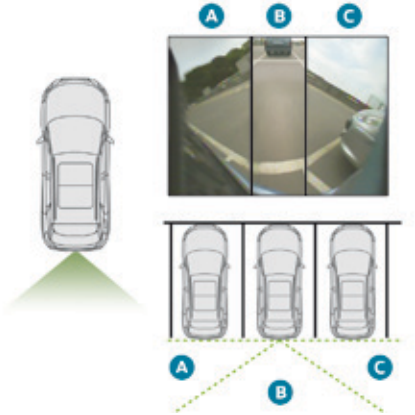
The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen.
The blue lines represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes with the position of the steering wheel.
The red line represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper, and the two blue lines, 1 m and 2 m respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.



Zoom view

The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.
It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

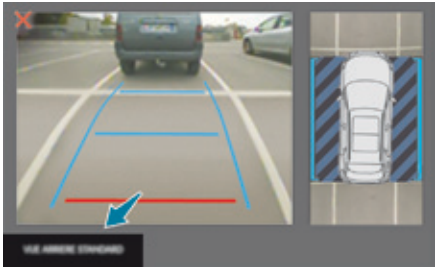


180° view

The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It is made up of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.
This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Visiopark 2

The vehicle has a camera at the front, fitted in the grille, and a camera at the rear, located close to the tailgate opening control.
Using these cameras, the system displays the vehicle's near surroundings in the touch screen, offering views from the rear of the vehicle (rear vision), when reverse gear is engaged and views from the front of the vehicle (front vision), when the gearbox is in neutral or a gear is engaged.

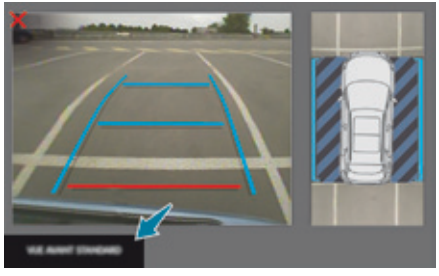


Rear vision

The system is activated automatically on engaging reverse.
The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when coming out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

If a trailer is connected or a bicycle carrier fitted to the towball, the area behind the vehicle in the view from above becomes black.
Reconstruction of the surroundings is achieved by the front camera only.



Front and rear vision

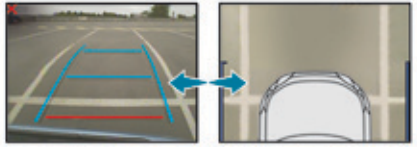
With the engine running and the speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the system is activated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen:

☞ Select "**Panoramic visual aid**".

AUTO mode is displayed by default, with front vision, if the gearbox is in neutral or with a gear engaged, or with rear vision, if reverse is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

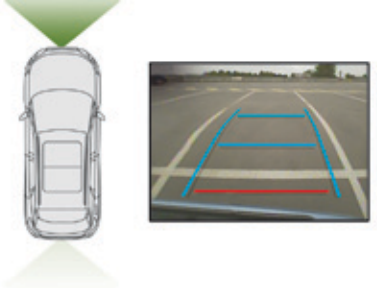
- automatically above about 18 mph (30 km/h) (the image disappears temporarily from 12 mph (20 km/h)),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.



AUTO mode

This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the front bumper, the automatic view changes from front view to the view from above as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.



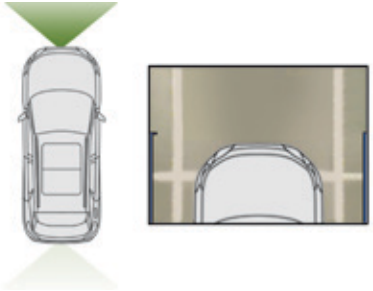
Standard view

The area in front of your vehicle is displayed in the screen.

The blue lines represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes with the position of the steering wheel.

The red line represents a distance of 30 cm from the front bumper, and the two blue lines, 1 m and 2 m respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

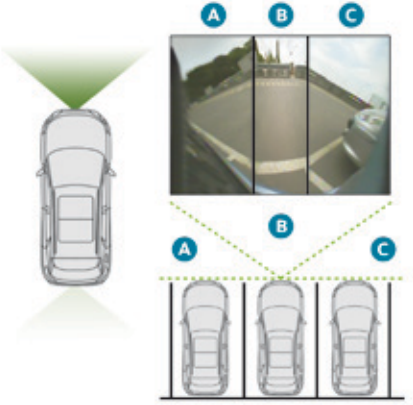


Zoom view

The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.
It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
The front and rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

The rear vision views are similar to those for the Visiopark 1.
For more information on **Visiopark 1**, refer to the corresponding section.



180° view

The 180° view facilitates the exit from of a parking bay in forward gear, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It is made up of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.
This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Park Assist

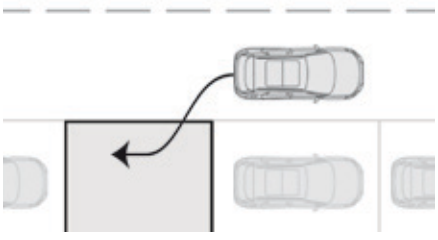
This system provides active assistance with parking. It detects a parking space then operates the steering to park in the space.
It operates the steering while the driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and clutch (manual gearbox). During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

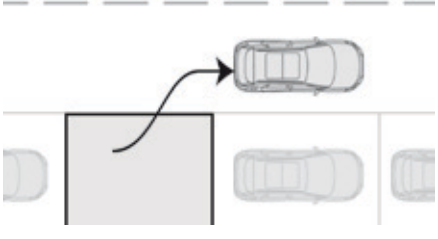
! This manoeuvring assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear throughout the manoeuvre.
In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

i The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.

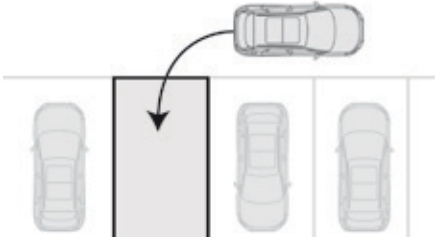
The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:



A. Entry into a parallel parking space



B. Exit from a parallel parking space



C. Bay parking

! During a manoeuvre, the steering wheel turns quickly: do not hold the steering wheel, do not place your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel and take care with loose and bulky clothing (scarves, ties, handbags...) - Risk of injury!

i When Park Assist is activated, it prevents a change to STOP mode of Stop & Start. In STOP mode, activation of Park Assist restarts the engine.

The Park Assist system takes control of the power steering for a maximum of 4 manoeuvre cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles.
If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly, you should then take control of the steering to carry out the manoeuvre.

The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed in the instrument panel.



The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.



The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take control of the steering.

You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away.
If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

Activation of Park Assist deactivates the Blind Spot Monitoring System.

Operation

Assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres

☞ When you have identified a parking space.

☞ Select "**Park Assist**" in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen to activate the function.

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm activation of the function.



☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter parking slot**" in the touch screen.

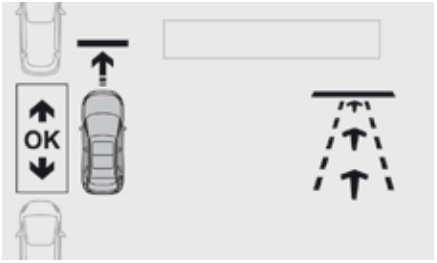
To enter a parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



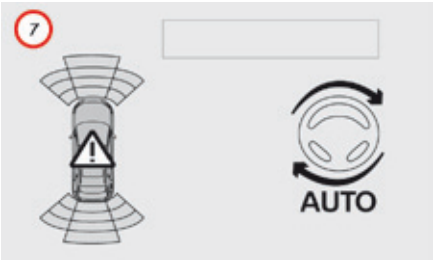
☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



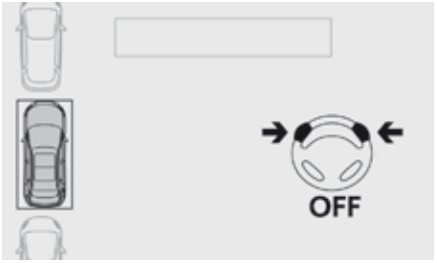
☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.



☞ At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp goes out in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.



☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).

Assistance in exiting from a parallel parking space

☞ When you want to leave a parallel parking space, start the engine.

☞ Select "**Park Assist**" in the "**Driving**" menu of the touch screen to activate the function.

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.

☞ Press on "**Exit parking slot**" in the touch screen.



☞ Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.
☞ Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.



The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space.
At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance with bay parking manoeuvres

☞ Once you have identified a parking zone:

☞ Select "**Park Assist**" in the "**Driving**" menu of the touch screen to activate the function.

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.

☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Start parking in a bay**" in the touch screen.

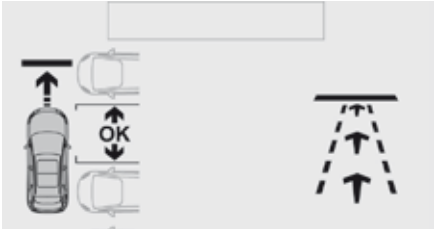


☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.

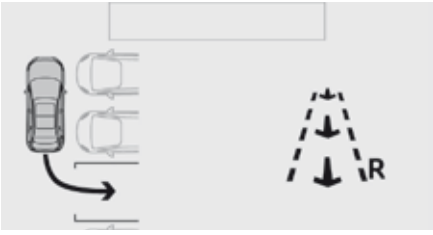


☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

When several successive bays are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



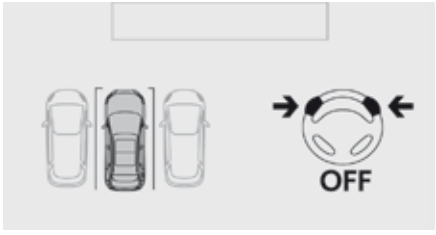
☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.



At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp goes out in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

During a bay parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.

During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the reversing camera and 360 Vision functions may come into operation. They facilitate monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the instrument panel.
For more information on **Panoramic vision**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.
The system is deactivated automatically:
- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is started within 5 minutes of selection of the type of manoeuvre,
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the road wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
- on opening the driver's door,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

The operation indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal.
The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.

If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the drive should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.

Switching off

The system is switched off automatically:
- when towing a trailer, connected electrically,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 42 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system of for a prolonged period, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults



In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the warning lamp goes off.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.
Anything projecting beyond the envelope of the vehicle (a ladder on the roof, for example) is not taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by road dirt, ice or snow.
In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

High pressure jet washing
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL,

A PARTNERSHIP TO DELIVER BETTER PERFORMANCE!

2015 was marked by PEUGEOT's return to Rally-Raid, one of the most difficult motorsport disciplines in the world. To obtain the best performance in these trials, PEUGEOT Sport chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 2008 DKR, a lubricant of high technology which protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D. Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO_2 emissions and keeps your engine clean.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

PEUGEOT TOTAL

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Fuel tank

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 53 litres.

Low fuel level

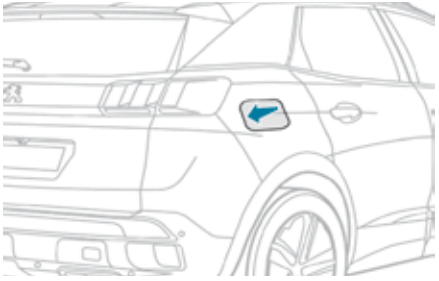
When the low fuel level is reached in the fuel tank, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on there remains **approximately 6 litres** of fuel in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**. Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

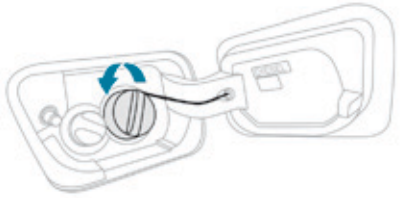
Refuelling



A label affixed to the inside of the flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used depending on your engine.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise a caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.



To fill the tank in complete safety:

- ☞ **the engine must be switched off,**
- ☞ with the vehicle unlocked, press the rear part of the filler flap,
- ☞ turn the filler cap to the left,
- ☞ remove the filler cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the filler flap,
- ☞ fill the tank, **but do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the pump**; this could cause malfunctions.

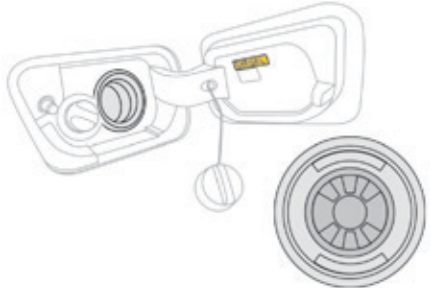
When you have filled the tank:

- ☞ put the filler cap back in place,
- ☞ turn it to the right,
- ☞ close the filler flap.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),
- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),
- Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

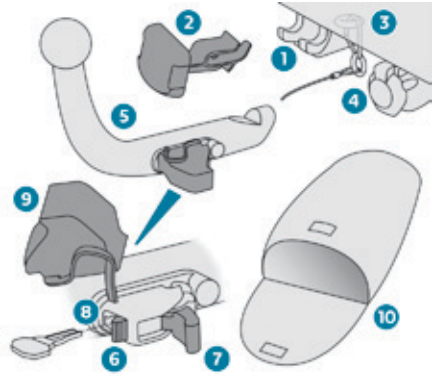
Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.
For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

For more information on **Weights** (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

You must observe the maximum trailer weight, indicated on the registration certificate or in the technical specification for your vehicle.

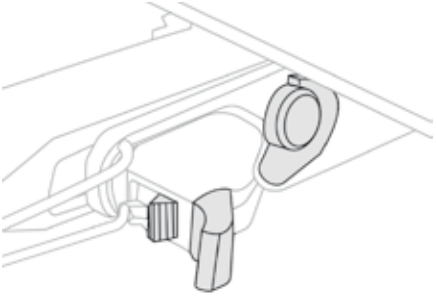
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

Presentation



No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towbar system.

1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Safety eye.
4. Trauiler wiring harness connection socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking / unlocking latch.
7. Locking / unlocking trigger.
8. Key-operated safety lock.
9. Safety lock protective cap.
10. Stowing bag.



A. Locked position

The latch is positioned to the right.
The trigger is facing toward the rear.



B. Unlocked position

The latch is positioned to the left.
The trigger is facing toward the front.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

i For information on the trailer weights for your vehicle, refer to the "Technical data" section.
For driving safely when **Towing a trailer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted, verifying the follow points:
- the towball is correctly engaged (position **A**),
- the safety lock is on and the key removed; the trigger can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

If the towball is not locked, the trailer could separate - Risk of an accident!

During use

Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle plus trailer - the Gross Train Weight or GTW.
You must not exceed the maximum nose weight on the towbar: if exceeded, this could result in detachment from the vehicle - Risk of an accident!
Check that the trailer lighting and signalling work correctly.
Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.
For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

Following use

When travelling without a trailer or load on a towbar-mounted carrier, the towball must be removed and the protective plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly where the towball might obscure visibility of the number plate or its lighting.

Maintenance

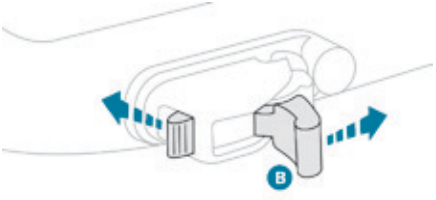
Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towbar system.

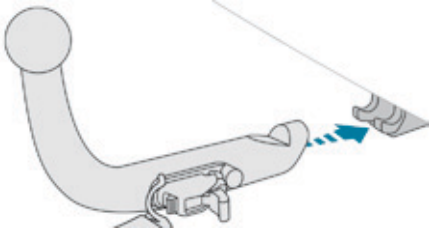
Fitting the towball



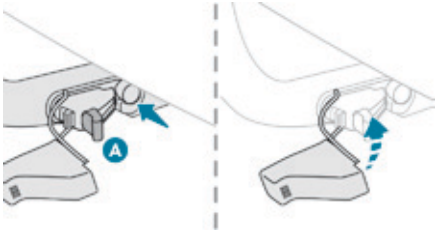
☞ Below the rear bumper, unclip and remove the protective plug from the carrier.

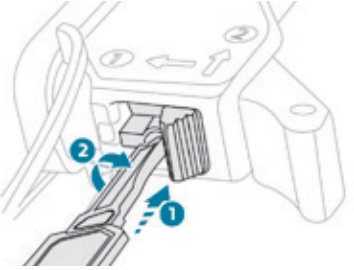


☞ On the towball, push the latch to the left and hold it in this position.
☞ At the same time press the trigger forward to release the mechanism (position **B**).



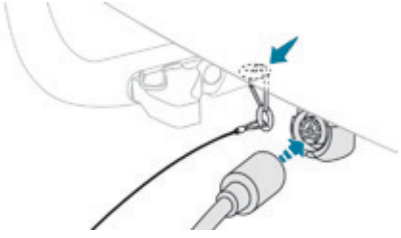
☞ Insert the end of the towball into the carrier, pushing it in as far as it will go.



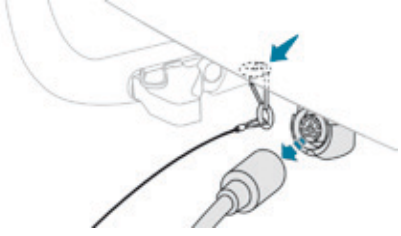


☞ Ensure that the two pins are in contact with the cut-outs in the carrier, that the trigger has returned to rear and the latch to the right to secure the mechanism (position **A**).
☞ Insert the key in the lock and turn it to the right.
☞ Remove the key from the lock.
☞ Install and clip in place the protective cap by rotating it to the left.

Removing the towball

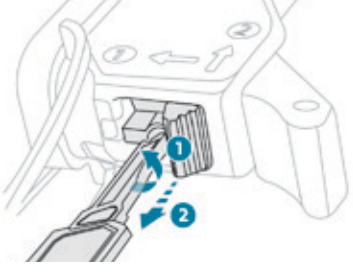


- Attach the trailer to the towball.
- Attach the trailer safety cable to the eye provided on the towball carrier.
- Raise the protective cover on the socket and connect the trailer wiring harness.

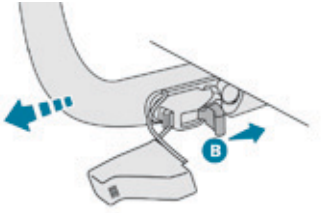


- Disconnect the trailer wiring harness from the socket on the carrier.
- Detach the trailer safety cable from the eye on the carrier.
- Detach the trailer from the towball.



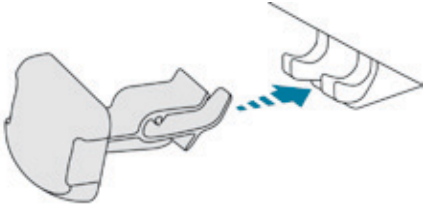


- Unclip and remove the protective cap, by turning it to the right.
- Insert the key in the lock and turn it to the left.
- Remove the key from the lock.



- On the towball, push the latch to the left and hold it in this position.
- At the same time, push the trigger forward to release the mechanism (position **B**).

- Press the trigger fully in and remove the towball by pulling it toward you.



- Install the protective plug on the carrier, located below the rear bumper.
- Stow the towball in its bag.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to economy mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Very cold climate screens*

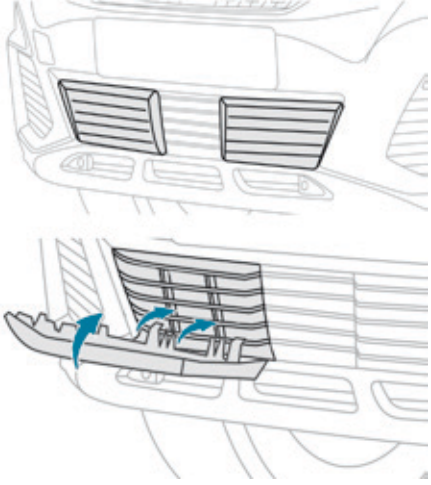
Removable protective screens which prevent the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

! Before fitting or removing a screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

i It is recommended that the screens be fitted and removed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fitting

The arrangement is of two symmetrical parts which are placed either side of the radar location in the front bumper.

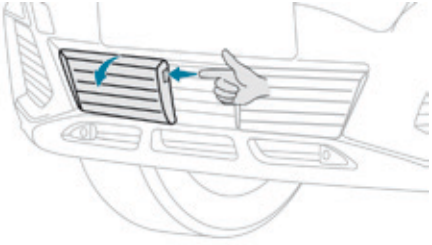


- ☞ Offer up the corresponding screen to the lower grille in the bumper.
- ☞ First engage the two lower fixing lugs in the bumper.
- ☞ Raise the screen until the three upper fixing lugs engage in the bumper.
- ☞ Check that the screen is secure by pressing around its edge.

Repeat these operations for the other screen.

i Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screens:
- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10° C,
- when towing,
- for running at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Removing



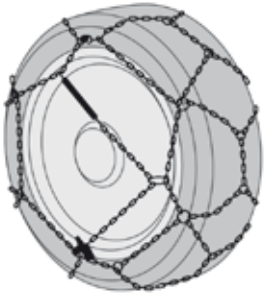
- ☞ Insert a finger into the cut-out at the top of the screen.
- ☞ Pull toward you to unclip the screen.

Repeat these operations for the other screen.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.



! The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
215/65 R17	9 mm
225/55 R18	9 mm
205/55 R19	9 mm
235/50 R19	cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Fitting roof bars

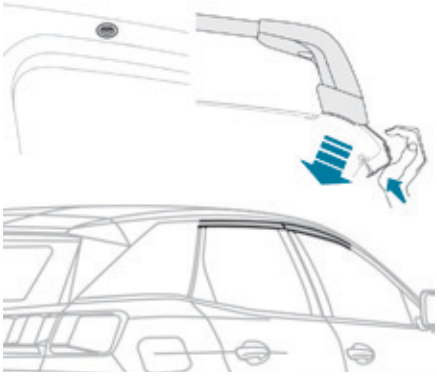
As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Fitting on longitudinal bars



You must attach the transverse bars at the engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

Fitting directly to the roof



You must attach the transverse bars only at the four anchorage points located at the edge of the roof. These points are hidden by the vehicle's doors when closed.
The roof bar fixings include a stud which must be fitted to the aperture at each of the anchorage points.

Maximum load on the roof bars, evenly spread and with a load height not exceeding 40 cm (except for bicycle carriers): **80 kg**.
For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the vehicle's anchorage points.
For transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle, refer to local legislation.

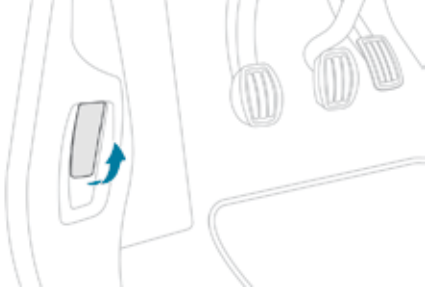
Recommendations

- Distribute the load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- Lash the load securely.
- Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and the stability of the vehicle may be affected.
- On a long journey, check the security of the load at every stop.
- Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Bonnet

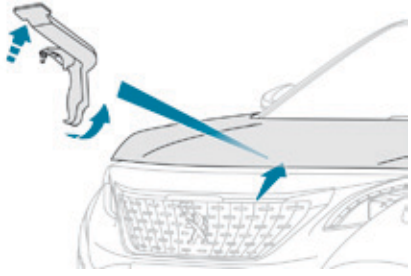
Opening

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

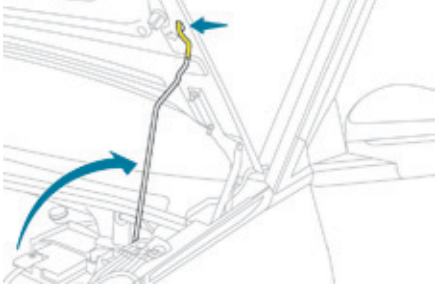


- ☞ Open the left hand front door.
- ☞ Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left hand front door is shut.



- ☞ Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.

Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

! **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

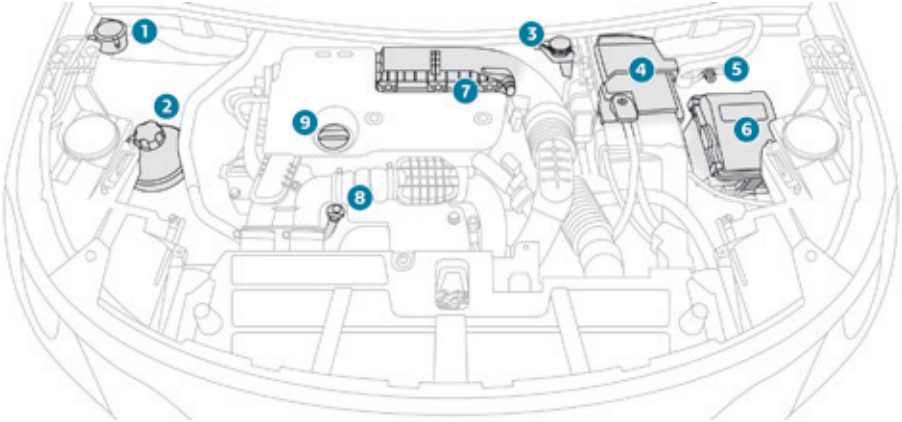
! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of its support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay back into its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it has latched correctly.

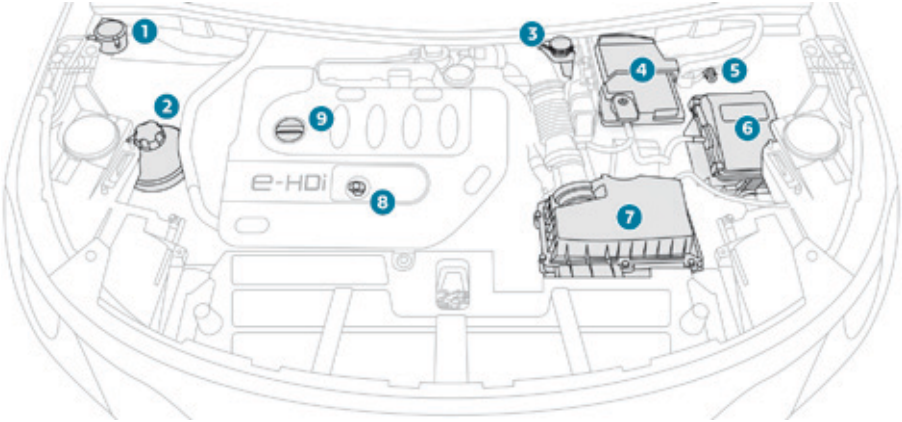
Petrol engines

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery / Fuses.
5. Remote earth point (-).
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



Diesel engines

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery / Fuses.
5. Remote earth point (-).
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure.
All work on the system must only be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top-up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top-up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

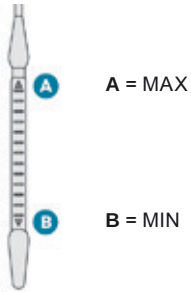
Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.

☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.

☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top-up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping-up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping-up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping-up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly.
It is normal to top-up this fluid between services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.
The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top-up.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid the risk of scalding in the event of an urgent need to top-up, with a cloth around the cap, unscrew it by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top-up the level.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top-up the level.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up the level when necessary.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with plain water.
In wintry conditions, it is recommended that you use an ethyl alcohol or methanol based fluid.

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

SERVICE The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping-up

The reservoir must be topped-up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

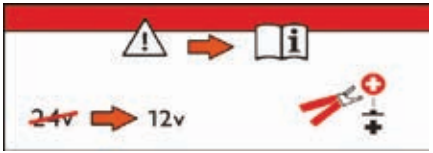
Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.
However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.
For more information and the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.



! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.
A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

SERVICE The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is held in a special tank with a capacity of about 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km). An alert is triggered automatically to warn you when the reserve level is reached: you can then drive about 1 500 miles (2 400 km) before the tank is empty.

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage of your vehicle between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), it will be necessary to top-up the AdBlue®.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.
In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

Topping-up the AdBlue®

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the fluid between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement. You can go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Precautions in use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes.
If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute AdBlue® with water.
Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.



The supply in a non-drip container or bottle simplifies topping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles or 5 litre containers from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Procedure

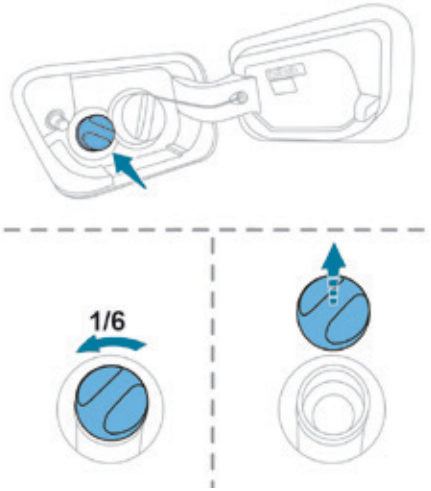
Before topping-up, in wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank.
Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

Park the vehicle

- ☞ Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition to stop the engine and remove the key from the switch.

or

- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "**START/STOP**" button to stop the engine.



Open the filler

- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, open the fuel filler flap; the blue filler cap for the AdBlue® tank is located to the left of the black fuel filler cap.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the blue cap downwards.



Top-up

☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! **Important**: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine - you must add at least 4 litres and no more than 10 litres.

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any fluid is spilt or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

Refit the filler cap

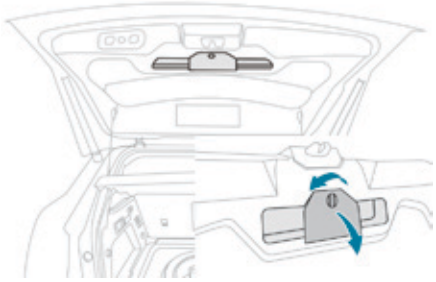
☞ Refit the blue cap and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
☞ Close the filler flap.

! Important: **when topping-up after running out of AdBlue**, signalled by the message "**Top-up AdBlue: starting impossible**", you must wait for about 5 minutes before switching the ignition on again, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the remote control key into the ignition switch, or placing the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle.**
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

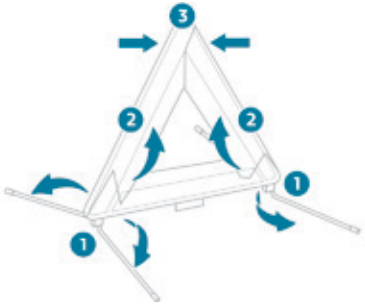
Storage compartment



A compartment for stowing a warning triangle is provided in the tailgate interior trim.

- ☞ Open the tailgate.
- ☞ Release the cover by turning the fixing a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

Assembling the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment:

- ☞ remove the triangle from its case,
- ☞ unfold the legs,
- ☞ open out the two sides of the triangle,
- ☞ clip together to complete the assembly.

For other versions, refer to the instructions provided with the triangle.

Positioning the triangle

- ☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

BlueHDi engines

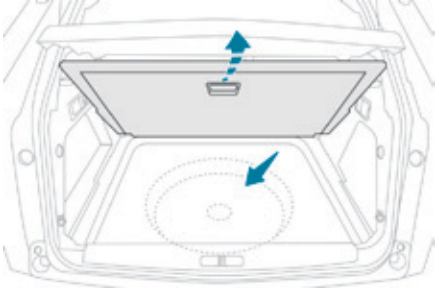
- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with the vehicle. Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- temporary puncture repair kit,
- spare wheel.

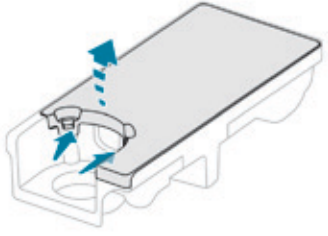
Access to the tools



The main tools are stowed in the boot under the floor.

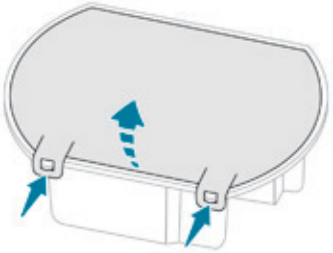
For access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ place the adjustable boot floor in the high position,
- ☞ raise the floor past the two retractable stops,
- ☞ lay the floor on these two stops to hold it up.



For versions with a temporary puncture repair kit:

- ☞ unclip the two fixings to open its cover.



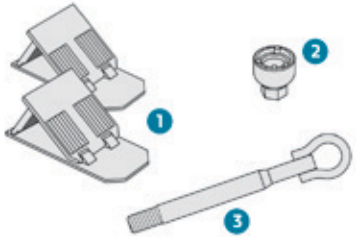
For versions with a spare wheel:

- unclip the carrier box by pulling it up,
- unclip the two fixings to open its cover.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

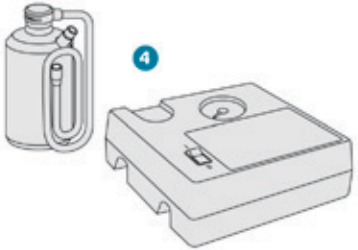
i The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

List of tools



1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment).
2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
3. Removable towing eye.

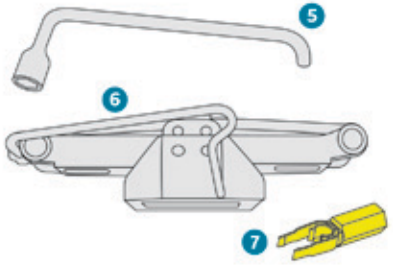
For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.



For versions with a temporary puncture repair kit:

4. Temporary puncture repair kit.
   Includes a 12 V compressor and a cartridge of sealant, to effect a temporary repair to a tyre and adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.



For versions with a spare wheel:

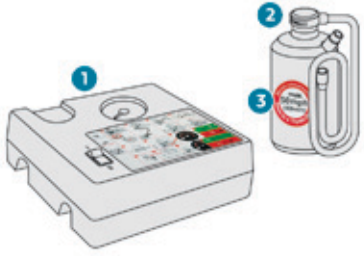
5. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cover remover (depending on equipment).
   For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

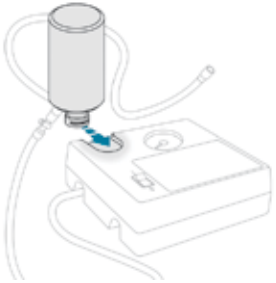
The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure



- Switch off the ignition.
- Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the sealant cartridge.

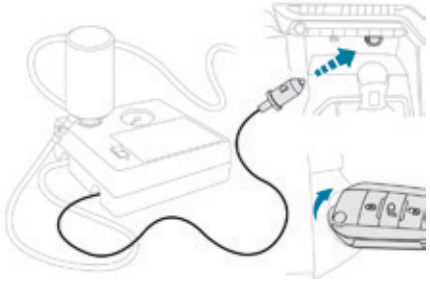


- Turn the sealant cartridge and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.

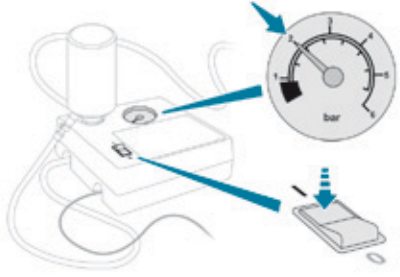


- Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.
- Connect the hose from the sealant cartridge to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.



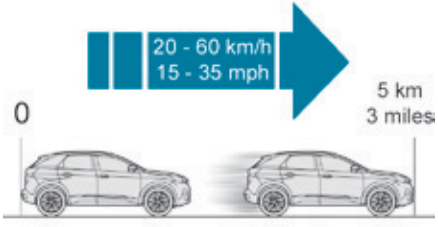
- Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar.
The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing and stains).

! Only the 12 V sockets located at the front of the vehicle and in the boot can be used to power the compressor.
The 12 V socket located at the back of the centre console is not suitable for this purpose.

i If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date is marked on the cartridge.
After use, do not discard the cartridge by the roadside, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Don't forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

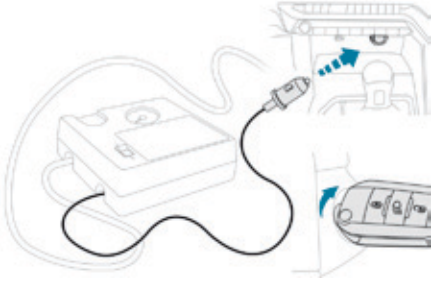


- Place the switch in the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit.
- Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

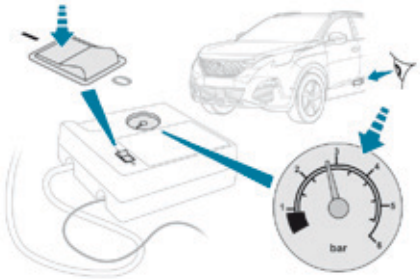


You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and if necessary adjust the tyre pressures

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.

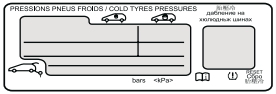


- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
  To deflate: press the black button on the compressor pipe, at the valve connector.
- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

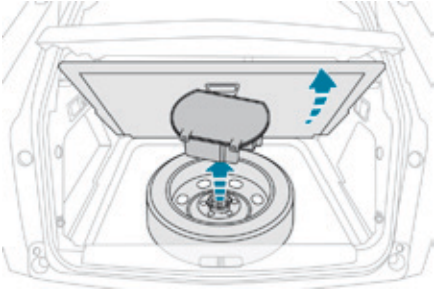


i The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

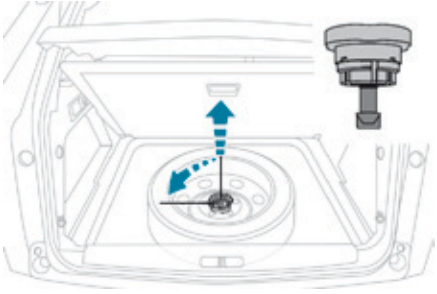
Spare wheel

Procedure for replacing a wheel with a punctured or damaged tyre by the spare wheel, using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the spare wheel



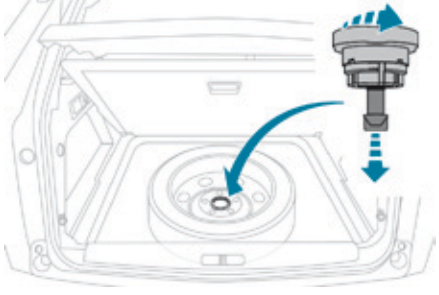
The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.
For access to the spare wheel, first refer to section on **Access to the tools**.

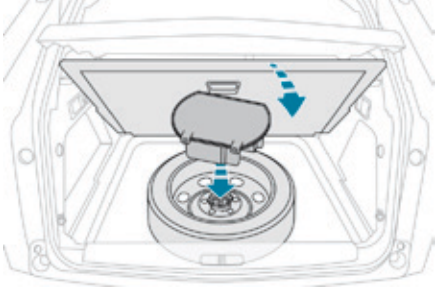


Removing the wheel

- ☞ Slacken the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fixing parts (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Depending on version, the spare wheel is a standard size steel or alloy wheel. For some countries of sale, it is the "space saver" type.





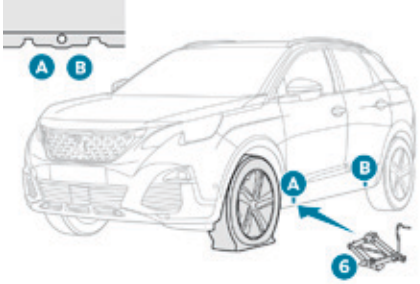
Putting the wheel back in place

- Put the wheel back in its housing.
- Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- Position the fixing parts (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- Tighten fully until the central nut clicks, to retain the wheel correctly.
- Return the tool box to the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor.
The punctured tyre must be repaired or replaced by by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Removing a wheel

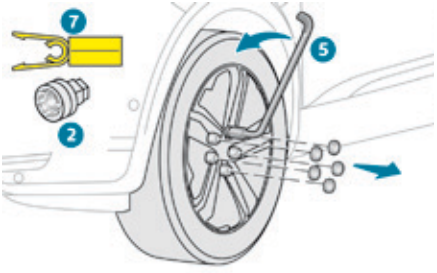


Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.
When refitting the wheel, after tightening the wheel bolts, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.
Check that the braking warning lamps in the instrument panel are on (not flashing).
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

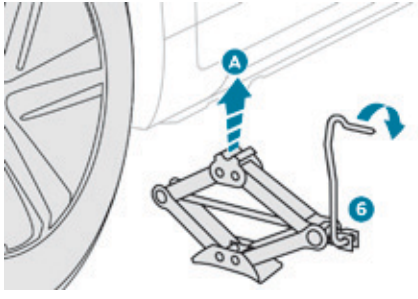


List of operations

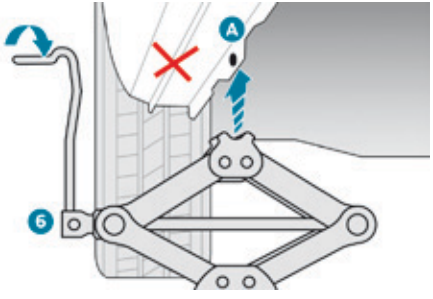


- Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **7** (according to equipment).
- Fit the security socket **2** on the wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

* mode **P** for an automatic gearbox.

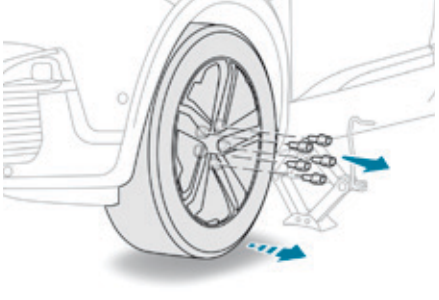


☞ Place the foot of the jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



☞ Extend the jack **6** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.

☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.

☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack only at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle.
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping - Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



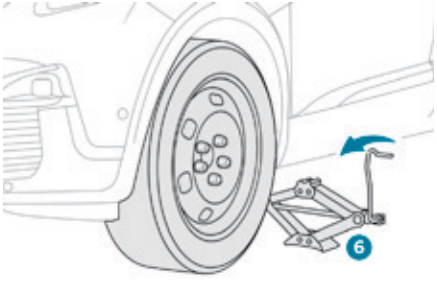
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

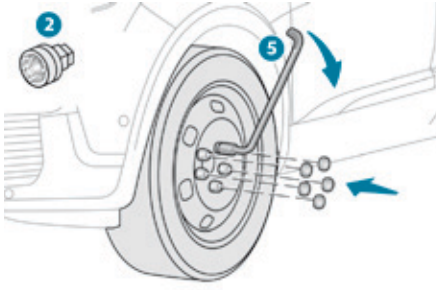


List of operations

- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the security socket **2**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **6** and detach it.



☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the security socket **2**.



☞ Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
☞ Refit the bolt covers to the bolts (according to equipment).
☞ Store the tools.

After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.
When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Changing a bulb

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

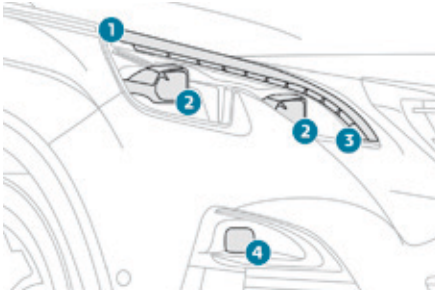
Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

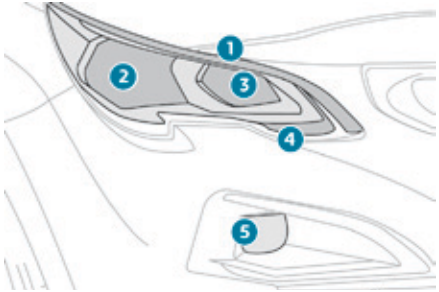
Front lamps



Model with "Full LED" headlamps

1. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).**
2. **Main beam / dipped beam headlamps (LEDs).**
3. **Direction indicators (LEDs).**
4. **Foglamps (LEDs).**

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)
For the replacement of this type of lamp, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Model with halogen headlamps

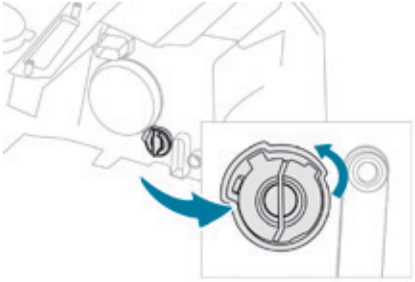
1. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs)***.
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (HB3).**
4. **Direction indicators (PWY24W).**
5. **Foglamps (H11).**

For bulbs with lugs (type H7...) take care to observe their correct installation so as to ensure the best lighting performance.

* LEDs: light-emitting diodes.

Daytime running lamps / sidelamps

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp and lighting guides, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A replacement kit for the LEDs is available from PEUGEOT dealers.



Changing direction indicator bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)

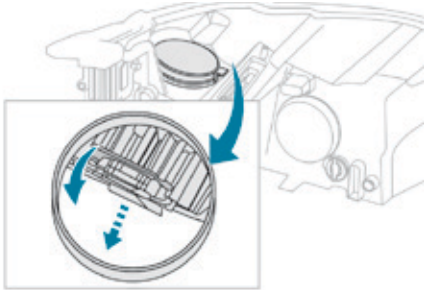
Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.

When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to preserve the sealing of the headlamp.

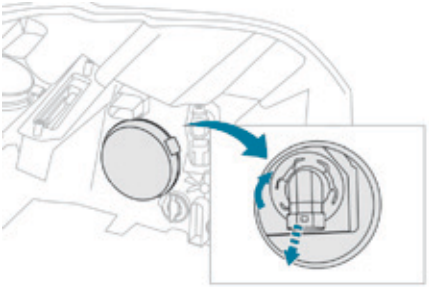


Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs

(on models with halogen headlamps)

- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Pull the connector toward the rear to disconnect it.
- Pull the bulb toward the rear to extract it.
- Change the bulb.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

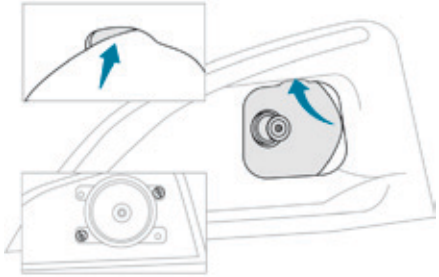


Changing main beam headlamp bulbs

(on models with halogen headlamps)

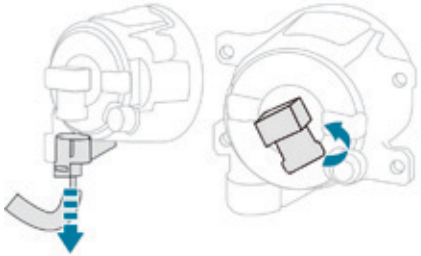
- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing foglamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)

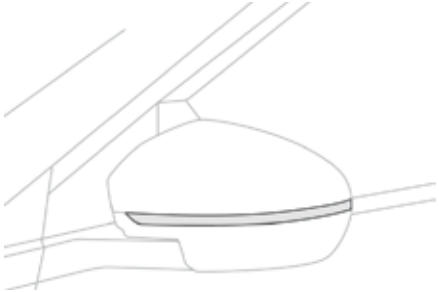
- ☞ Introduce a flat screwdriver in the hole in the finisher.
- ☞ Pull and lever to unclip the front bumper finisher.
- ☞ Using a Torx screwdriver, remove the two module fixing screws.
- ☞ Remove the module from its housing.



- ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Change the assembly.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Changing direction indicator side repeaters (LEDs)

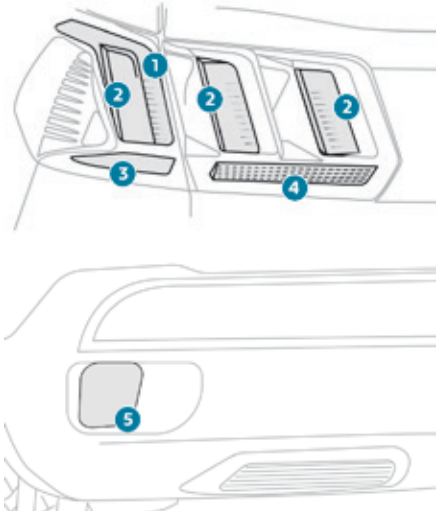
For the replacement of this type of light-emitting diode lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Changing the side spotlamps (LEDs)

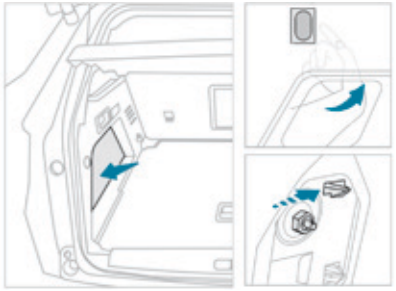
For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps



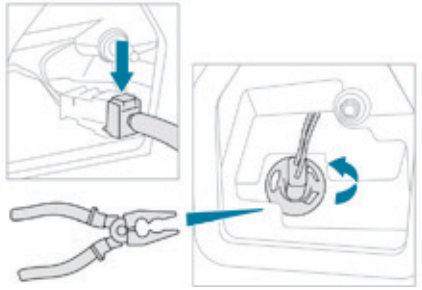
1. **Brake lamps (LEDs).**
2. **Sidelamps / daytime running lamps (LEDs).**
3. **Direction indicators (WY16W amber).**
4. **Reversing lamps (W16W).**
5. **Foglamp (P21W).**

LEDs: light-emitting diodes.



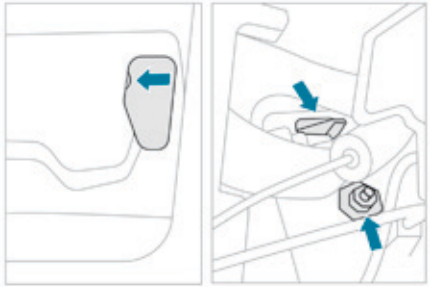
Direction indicators (on the wings)

- ☞ Open the tailgate then unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- ☞ Slacken the lamp fixing nut using a 10 mm box spanner or socket.
- ☞ To avoid losing the nut if it drops into the wing trim, first place a cloth below it.
- ☞ Manually unscrew and remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining clip, while pushing the lamp out slightly.



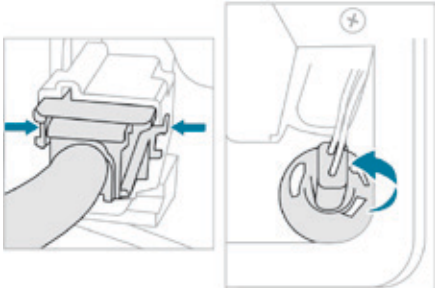
- ☞ From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear, then up.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out using a standard pair of pliers.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and replace it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.



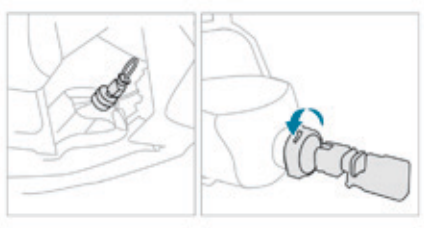
Reversing lamp (tailgate)

- Open the tailgate, then introduce a flat screwdriver into the cut-out to unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- Slacken the lamp fixing nut using a 10 mm box spanner or socket.
- Manually unscrew and remove the lamp fixing nut.
- Disengage the retaining clip, while pushing the lamp out slightly.



- From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear.
- Disconnect the lamp connector by pressing on each side.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- Pull the bulb out and replace it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing foglamp bulbs

These bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper:

- pass your hand under the bumper,
- turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it,
- turn the bulb a quarter turn, pull it out and fit a new bulb.

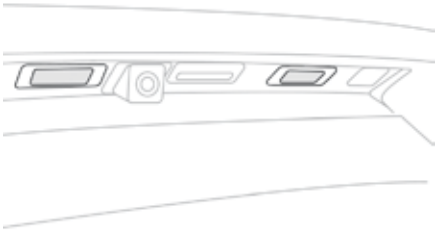
For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Take care not to touch the silencer; there is a risk of burns if changing a bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition.



Third brake lamp (light emitting diodes - LEDs)

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.



Number plate lamps

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the slot in the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

Changing a fuse

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the allocation tables and layout diagrams available.

To change a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The fuse allocation tables and corresponding layout diagrams are available at the following website: http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/ You can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good Failed



Tweezer

The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

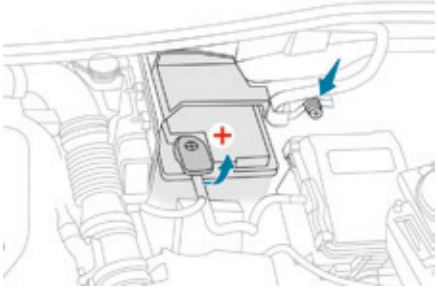
Lead-acid starter batteries

Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.
For access to the (+) terminal:

- release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay.

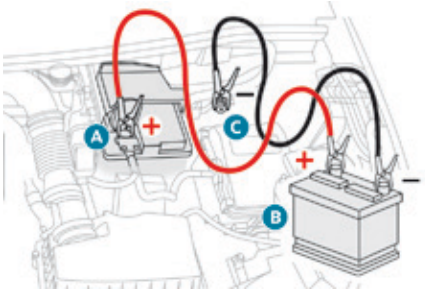
(+) Positive terminal.
It has a quick-release clamp.

(-) Negative terminal.
As the battery negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is located close to the battery.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...).
Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, ...).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Raise the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

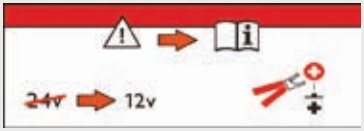
Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you envisage charging your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

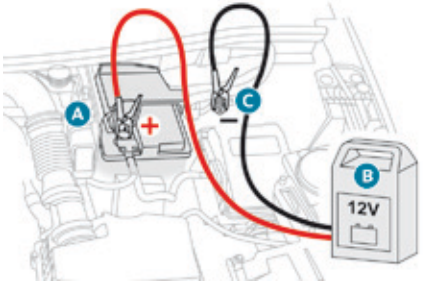


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger, to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, ...).
- Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



! Never try to charge a frozen battery.
If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Disconnecting the battery

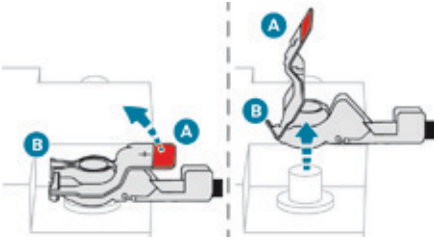
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, sunroof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

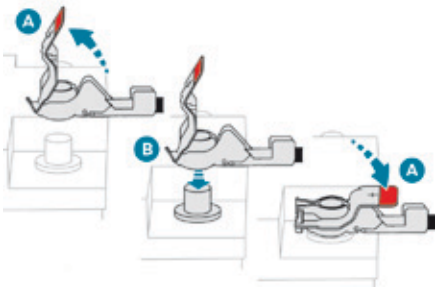
At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

Quick-release terminal clamp



Disconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.



Reconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

After reconnecting the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to allow initialisation of the electronic systems.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself initialise or reset certain systems, such as:

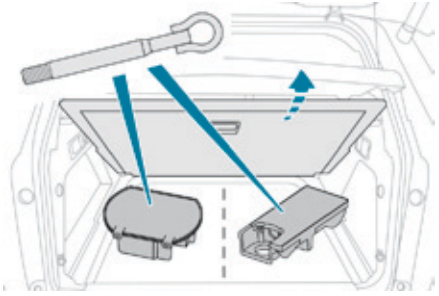
- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the sunroof and its electric blind,
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

! The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the ambient temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is stowed in a tool box, under the boot floor.
For more information on access to the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

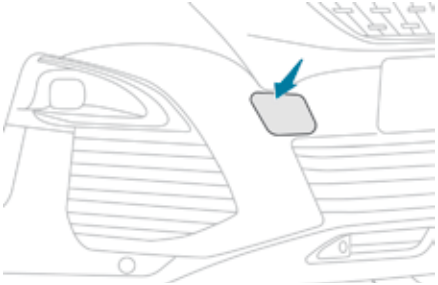
! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Towing your vehicle

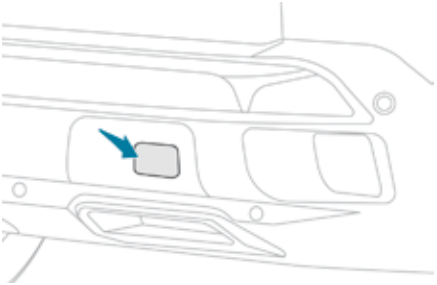


- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the top.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.

- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on an automatic gearbox).
  Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the left.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Petrol engine	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S		1.6 litre THP 150	1.6 litre THP 160	1.6 litre THP 165 S&S
Gearbox	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: MR... M4...	**HNYH/S HNYH/1S**	**HNYW/S HNYW/1S**	**5FEA**	**5FMA**	**5GZW/S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 199		1 598	1 598	1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 90.5		77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	96		110	120	121
Max power speed (rpm)	5 500		6 050	6 000	6 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230		240	240	240
Max torque speed (rpm)	1 750		1 400	1 400	1 400
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.5		4.25	4.25	4.25

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Petrol engine	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S		1.6 litre THP 150	1.6 litre THP 160	1.6 litre THP 165 S&S
Gearbox	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: MR... M4...	**HNYH/S - HNYH/1S**	**HNYW/S - HNYW/1S**	**5FEA**	**5FMA**	**5GZW/S**
Unladen weight	1 250 - 1 254	-	-	-	1 300
Kerb weight*	1 325 - 1 329	-	-	-	1 375
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 910	-	-	-	1 950
Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 310 - 3 210	-	-	-	3 500
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 400 - 1 300	-	-	-	1 550
Unbraked trailer	660	-	-	-	685
Recommended nose weight	70	-	-	-	70

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
When towing the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S**	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S**		**1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S**	
Gearbox	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: MC...	**BHY6/S**	**BHXH/S BHXH/1S**	**BHXW/S BHXW/1S**	**BHZH/S BHZH/1S**	**BHZW/S BHZW/1S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560		1 560	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3		75 x 88,3	
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	73	85		88	
Max power speed (rpm)	3 750	3 750		3 750	
Max torque: UE standard (Nm)	254	300		300	
Max torque speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750		1 750	
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes		Yes	
Particle filter	Yes	Yes		Yes	
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.75	3.75		3.75	

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	**2.0 litre BlueHDi 150**		**2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S**	**2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S**
Gearbox	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: MJ...	**-**	**-**	**AHRH/S AHSH/S AHXH/S**	**AHWW/S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	-	-	1 997	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	-	-	85 x 88	85 x 88
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	-	-	110	132
Max power speed (rpm)	-	-	4 000	3 750
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	-	-	370	400
Max torque speed (rpm)	-	-	2 000	2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Particle filter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	-	-	6.1	5.1

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S		1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S	
Gearbox	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: MC...	**BHY6/S**	**BHXH/S - BHXH/1S**	**BHXW/S**	**BHZH/S - BHZH/1S**	**BHZW/S**
Unladen weight	-	1 300 - 1 304	1 315	1 300 - 1 304	1 315
Kerb weight*	-	1 375 - 1 379	1 390	1 375 - 1 379	1 390
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	-	1 970 - 1 980	1 990	1 970 - 1 980	1 990
Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	-	3 470 - 3 380	3 290	3 470 - 3 380	3 290
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	-	1 500 - 1 400	1 300	1 500 - 1 400	1 300
Unbraked trailer	-	685	695	685	695
Recommended nose weight	-	70	70	70	70

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

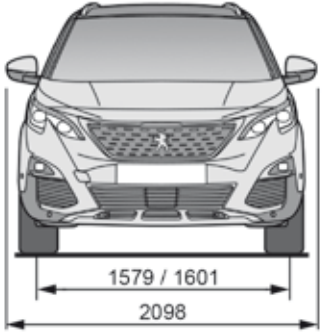
Diesel engine	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150		2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S	2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S
Gearbox	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: MJ...	**-**	**-**	**AHRH/S AHSH/S AHXH/S**	**AHWW/S**
Unladen weight	-	-	1 425	1 465
Kerb weight*	-	-	1 500	1 540
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	-	-	2 050	2 090
Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	-	-	3 700	3 730
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	-	-	1 650	1 640
Unbraked trailer	-	-	745	750
Recommended nose weight	-	-	70	70

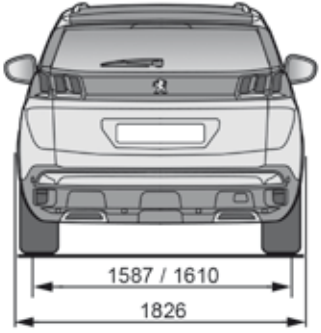
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

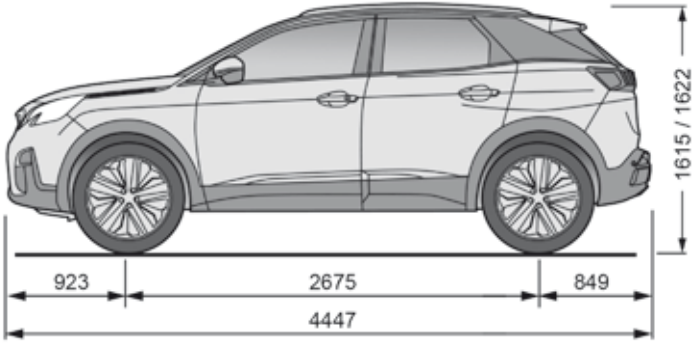
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

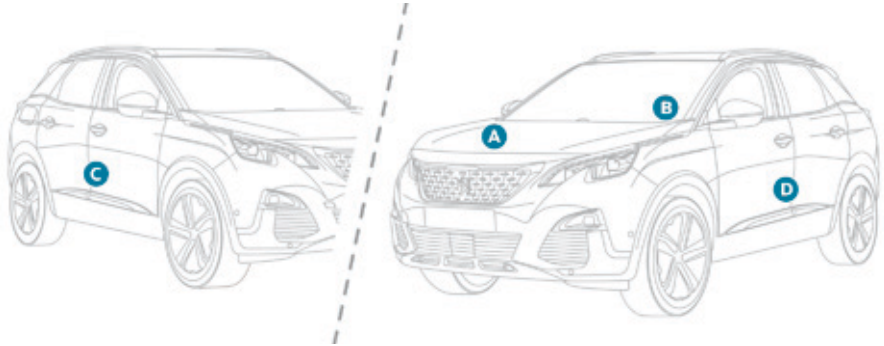






Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.

The number is engraved on the body structure.

B. Vehicle identification number (VIN), on the dashboard.

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This self-destructing label is affixed to the right-hand door aperture.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised vehicle + trailer weight (the Gross Train Weight or GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres / paint code label.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information on the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the reference, size, type, load index and speed rating,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

Checking tyre pressures

The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.

The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

! Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

180° rear vision 267

A

Accessories 156, 201
Active Safety Brake 21, 26, 247, 250
AdBlue® 30, 37, 303, 304
Additive, Diesel 301
Adjusting headlamps 145
Adjusting head restraints 93
Adjusting seat 90, 91, 94
Adjusting the air distribution 111
Adjusting the air flow 111
Adjusting the date 45
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 99
Adjusting the lumbar support 90, 91, 94
Adjusting the seat belt height 168
Adjusting the temperature 111
Adjusting the time 45
Advanced Grip Control 164
Advice on driving 195, 196
Airbags 28, 172
Airbags, curtain 175, 176
Airbags, front 173, 176
Airbags, lateral 175, 176
Air conditioning 10, 107, 110
Air conditioning, automatic 105
Air conditioning, digital 111, 116
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 111, 116
Air conditioning, manual 105, 106, 116
Air conditioning, mono-zone 108, 116
Air intake 111
Air vents 104
Alarm 70
Amplifier, audio 122
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 160, 161
Anti-theft 197
Armrest, front 124
Armrest, rear 134
Assistance call 158
Assistance, emergency braking 160, 249
Audio system (radio) 45

B

Backrest, folding 92
Battery 290, 301, 332-335
Battery, charging 334
Battery, remote control 63, 66
Blanking screen (snow shield) 291
Blind 84
Blind spot monitoring system 20, 260, 262
Blind spot monitoring system, active 20, 262
Blind spot sensors 20, 260
BlueHDi 37, 40, 303, 308
Bonnet 294
Boot 75, 76, 79
Brake discs 302
Brake lamps 328
Brakes 26, 302
Braking assistance system 160
Braking, automatic emergency 21, 26, 247, 250
Braking, dynamic emergency 203, 208
Bulbs (changing) 323, 328, 330

C

Capacity, fuel tank 281
Cartridge, fragrance 125, 126
Central locking 60, 68
Changing a bulb 323, 328, 330
Changing a fuse 331
Changing a wheel 309
Changing a wiper blade 154
Changing the remote control battery 66
Charger, induction 122
Charger, wireless 122
CHECK 40
Checking the engine oil level 36
Checking the levels 297-300
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 312
Checks 295, 296, 301, 302
Checks, routine 301, 302
Child lock 193, 194
Children 184, 186-188, 190
Children (safety) 193, 194

Child seats 171, 177, 178, 182-184, 192
Child seats, conventional.....183, 184
Child seats, i-Size.....190
Child seats, ISOFIX 186-188, 190
Cigarette lighter.....120
Closing the boot.....56, 61, 62, 75
Closing the doors.....56, 60-62, 74
Configuration, vehicle..... 45, 48, 50
Control, emergency boot release.....81
Control, emergency door.....64
Control, heated seats.....97
Controls, steering mounted 211
Control stalk, lighting 17, 141, 144
Control stalk, wipers 152, 153, 155
Courtesy lamps.....128
Cover, load space 136
Cruise control.....226, 229, 234, 238
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 229
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function..... 229, 238
Cup holder..... 119

D

Date (setting).....45
Daytime running lamps.....143, 323, 324
Deactivating the passenger airbag.....173
Deadlocking 56, 62
Defrosting..... 116, 118
Defrosting, front 116
Demisting 116
Demisting, front..... 116
Demisting, rear..... 118
Demisting, rear screen 118
Dials and gauges 12
Dimensions 344
Dipstick.....36, 297
Direction indicators..... 144, 323, 324, 328
Display screen, instrument panel.....218
Distance alert..... 21, 26, 247, 248
Door pockets..... 119
Doors.....74
Doors, rear 194
Driver's attention warning 253
Driving 88
Driving abroad.....143
Driving economically.....10
Driving positions (storing) 96
Driving time warning 252
Dynamic pack 217
Dynamic stability control (DSC)..... 26, 160, 162, 164

E

Eco-driving (advice).....10
Economy mode 290
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....160, 161
Emergency braking assistance (EBA).....160
Emergency call 158
Emergency switching off.....202
Emergency warning lamps 157, 307
Emissions control system, SCR 31
Energy economy mode.....290
Engine compartment 295, 296
Engine, Diesel.....283, 296, 308, 340
Engine, petrol..... 283, 295, 338
Engines 338, 340
Environment.....10, 63

F

Fatigue detection 252, 253
Filling the fuel tank.....281-283
Filter, air 301
Filter, Diesel fuel 296
Filter, oil.....301
Filter, particle 300, 301
Filter, passenger compartment 301
Fitting a wheel.....319
Fitting roof bars.....293
Fittings, boot 135
Fittings, interior 119, 120
Fittings, rear.....133
Flap, fuel filler.....281, 282
Flashing indicators.....144, 324
Floor, boot, adjustable 138
Foglamps 142
Foglamps, front.....142, 151, 323, 324, 326
Foglamps, rear.....142, 329
Folding the rear seats.....130

Fuel....10, 283
Fuel consumption....10
Fuel tank....281, 282
Fuses....331

G

Gauge, fuel....281
Gearbox, automatic....10, 211, 216, 217, 219, 302, 332
Gearbox, manual....10, 210, 216, 217, 219, 302
Gear lever....10
Gear lever, automatic gearbox....211
Gear lever, manual gearbox....210
Gear shift indicator....218
Glove box....120
Grab handles....119

H

Hands-free access....78
Hands-free tailgate....76, 78, 79
Hazard warning lamps....157, 307
Headlamp adjustment....145
Headlamps, automatic dipping....17, 149
Headlamps, automatic illumination....141, 146, 147
Headlamps, dipped beam....17, 323-325
Headlamps, halogen....324
Headlamps, main beam....17, 323-325
Head restraints, front....93
Head restraints, rear....130
Heating....10, 104, 106, 108
Hi-Fi system....122
Hill Assist Descent Control....20, 166
Hill start assist....216
Horn....157

I

i-Cockpit amplify function....98, 102, 125, 217
Ignition....199, 201
Immobiliser, electronic....63, 197
Indicator, AdBlue® range....30, 37
Indicator, coolant temperature....32
Indicator, engine oil level....36, 40
Indicator lamps, operation....17, 19, 21
Indicator lamps, status....19
Indicators, direction....144, 324
Inflating tyres....10, 345
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit)....312
Instrument panel....12, 13, 40, 42, 43
Intelligent Traction Control....161
ISOFIX....187
Isofix mountings....186

J

Jack....310
Jump starting....333

K

Key....54, 63, 64
Key, electronic....58, 60-62
Keyless Entry and Starting....58, 61-63, 197, 200
Key not recognised....202
Key with remote control....197
Kit, temporary puncture repair....309, 312

L

Labels, identification....345
Lamp, boot....140
Lamps, parking....144
Lamps, rear....328
Lamps with "Full LED" technology....151, 323
Lane departure warning active....21, 27, 255, 262
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)....27, 254
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes....143, 323, 324, 328
Level, brake fluid....298
Level, Diesel additive....300, 301
Level, engine coolant....32, 299
Level, engine oil....36, 297
Levels and checks....295-300
Level, screenwash fluid....154, 299
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs....143, 323, 324, 328
Lighting....17
Lighting, cornering....151
Lighting dimmer....42
Lighting, exterior....141
Lighting, guide-me home....57, 146-148
Lighting, interior....128, 129
Lighting, mood....42, 129
Lighting, welcome....147
Loading....10, 137, 293
Load reduction mode....290
Locating your vehicle....56
Locking....55, 61, 63
Locking from the inside....68
Long objects, transporting....134
Low fuel level....281

M

Maintenance, routine....10
Map reading lamps....128
Markings, identification....345
Massage function....98
Massage, multi-point....98
Mat....127
Memorising a speed....226
Mirror, rear view....101
Mirrors, door....99, 100, 118, 260
Mirror, vanity....120
Misfuel prevention....282
Motorised tailgate....76, 77, 79
Mountings, Isofix....186

N

Net, high load retaining....137
Number plate lamps....330

O

Oil change....297
Oil consumption....297
OIl, engine....297
On-board tools....139, 309
Opening the bonnet....294
Opening the boot....58, 75
Opening the doors....58, 74
Opening the fuel filler flap....281
Opening the windows....55

P

Pads, brake....302
Paint....345
Paint colour code....345
Parcel shelf, rear....136
Park Assist....272, 274
Parking brake....302
Parking brake, electric....25, 203, 208
Parking sensors, front....264
Parking sensors, rear....263
Personalisation....13
PEUGEOT Connect Assistance....158
PEUGEOT Connect Packs....158
PEUGEOT Connect SOS....158
Plates, identification....345
Player, USB....121
Port, USB....121
Pre-heater, Diesel....18
Pressures, tyres....316, 345
Pre-tensioning seat belts....171
Priming the fuel system....308
Protecting children....173, 177, 178, 182, 184, 186-188, 190
Puncture....312

R

Range, AdBlue 30, 37, 38
Rear screen, demisting 118
Recharging the battery 334
Reduction of electrical load 290
Regeneration of the particle filter 301
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 224, 225
Reinitialising the remote control 67
Reminder, key in ignition 199
Remote control 54-56, 60, 62, 63
Removing a wheel 319
Removing the mat 127
Replacing bulbs 323, 328, 330
Replacing fuses 331
Replacing the air filter 301
Replacing the oil filter 301
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 301
Reservoir, screenwash 299
Resetting the service indicator 35
Resetting the trip recorder 41
Reset trip 43
Rev counter 12
Reversing lamps 328
Roof bars 293
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 308

S

Safety, children 173, 177, 178, 182, 184, 186-188, 190
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 301
Scented air freshener 125, 126
Screen, monochrome 45
Screens, very cold conditions 291
Screenwash, front 153
Screenwash, rear 153
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 31, 303
SCR system 31, 303
Seat belts 168-171, 183
Seat belts, rear 169, 170
Seats, electric 96
Seats, front 90, 96
Seats, heated 97
Seats, rear 130
Selector, gear 211
Serial number, vehicle 345
Service indicator 33, 40
Servicing 10, 33
Settings, equipment 45, 48, 50
Sidelamps 143, 144, 323, 324, 328
Side repeater 327
Ski flap 134
Snow chains 223, 292
Snow screen 291
Socket, 12V 314
Socket, 12 V accessory 120, 133, 136, 314
Socket, 230 V 133
Speakers 122
Speed limiter 226, 229, 231
Speed limit recognition 227
Speedometer 12
Spotlamps, side 148, 327
Stability control (ESC) 160, 163, 164
Starting the vehicle 197, 200, 211
Starting using another battery 202, 333
Stay, bonnet 294
Steering wheel, adjustment 99
Stopping the vehicle 197, 200, 211
Stop & Start 18, 21, 44, 105, 116, 219, 281, 294, 301, 335
Storage 119, 120, 124, 134, 135
Storage box 139
Storage compartments 119
Storage wells 135, 139
Storing driving positions 96
Stowing rings 135
Sunroof, panoramic 84
Sun visor 120
Switching off the engine 197
Synchronising the remote control 67

T

Table of weights 339, 342
Table position 92
Tables of engines 338, 340
Tailgate 75
Tank, fuel 281, 282
Technical data 338-340, 342
Telephone 122
Temperature, coolant 32
Third brake lamp 330
Three flashes (direction indicators) 144

Ticket holder 119
Time (setting) 45
Tool box 139
Tools 309
Total distance recorder 41
Touch screen 42, 48, 50, 102, 121
Towball, quickly detachable 285
Towbar 163, 196, 284
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 285
Towed loads 339, 342
Towing another vehicle 336
Traction control (ASR) 26, 160, 162, 164
Trailer 163, 196, 284
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 160, 163
Trajectory control systems 160
Triangle, warning 307
Trip computer 43, 44
Trip distance recorder 41
Tyres 10, 345
Tyre under-inflation detection 223, 316

U

Under-inflation (detection) 223
Unlocking 55, 58
Unlocking from the inside 68
Unlocking the boot 57, 59
Unlocking the tailgate 57, 59

V

Ventilation 10, 104-106, 108
Visibility 116
Vision, 180° forward 269
Vision, panoramic 265
Visio Park 265, 267, 269

W

Warning and indicator lamps 16, 21, 22
Warning lamp, braking system 26
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 18
Warning lamps 19, 22, 25, 40
Warning lamp, Service 23
Weights 339, 342
Welcome lighting 57, 148
Wheel, spare 309, 317, 345
Window controls 82
Windscreen, heated 117
Wiper blades (changing) 154
Wiper, rear 153
Wipers 20, 152, 155
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 152, 155

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Printed in the EU
Anglais
04-16









PEUGEOT

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax : +33 (0)1 40 66 54 14 - Télex : 645 700 F
http://www.peugeot.com
Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S. : 552 144 503 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 552 144 503 00018 - APE : 2910Z

www.peugeot.com

Anglais
16P84.0040

PEUGEOT Connect Nav

GPS satellite navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	5
Menus	6
Voice commands	8
Navigation	14
Connected navigation	30
Applications	40
Radio Media	56
Telephone	68
Settings	80
Frequently asked questions	90

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. Displaying of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

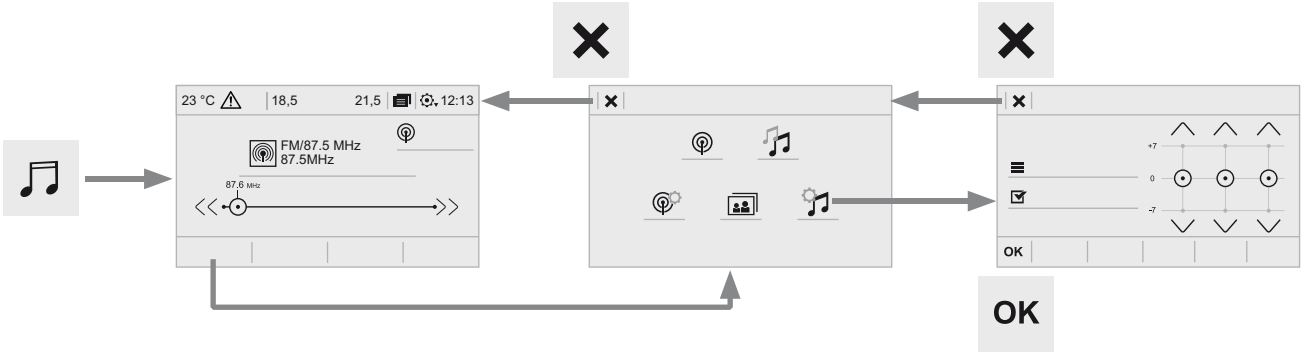
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



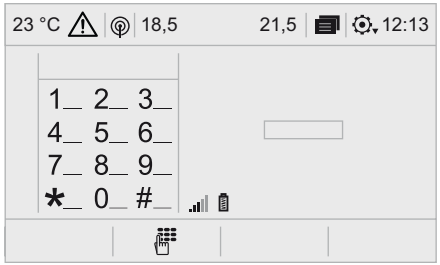
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

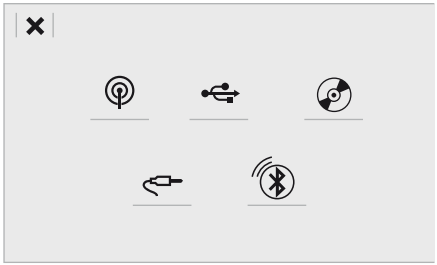
- Reminder of the air conditioning information and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* using Bluetooth* audio streaming.

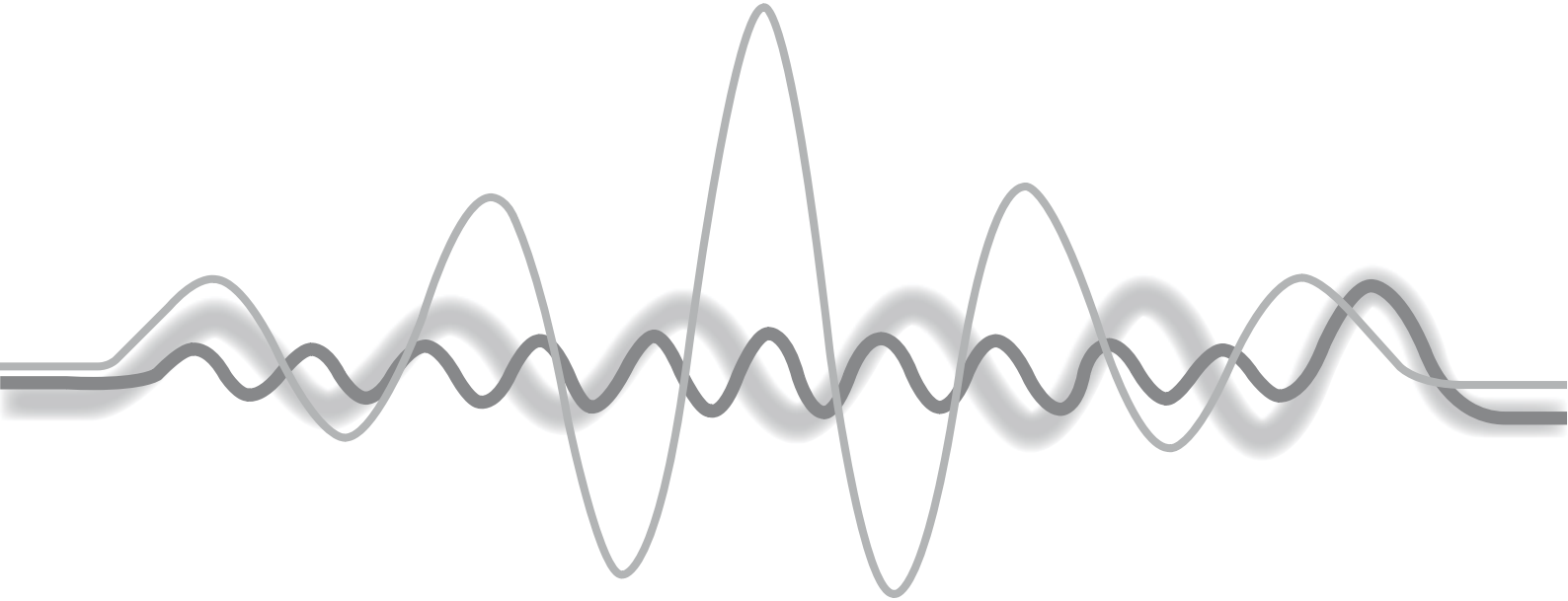
In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.



Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.
Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.

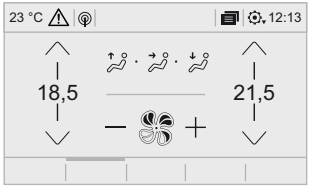


Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

According to version

Air conditioning



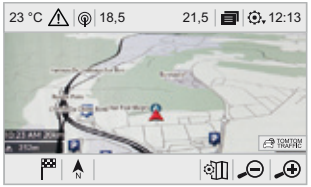
Manage the various temperature and air flow settings.

Driving



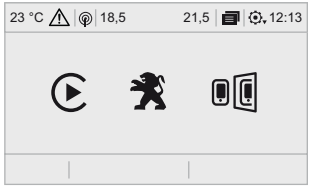
Activate, deactivate and configure certain vehicle functions.

Connected navigation



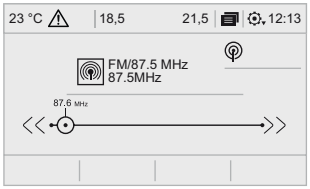
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

Applications



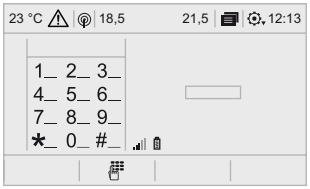
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or MirrorLink™.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



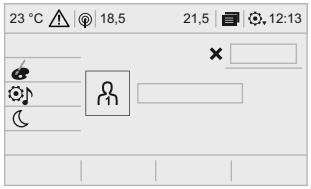
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna" .

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.

Alternative synonyms can be used for some voice commands.
E.g. Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...

The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

i 

Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Select "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box | voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Test message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If no telephone has been connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.
Listen to most recent message*	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".

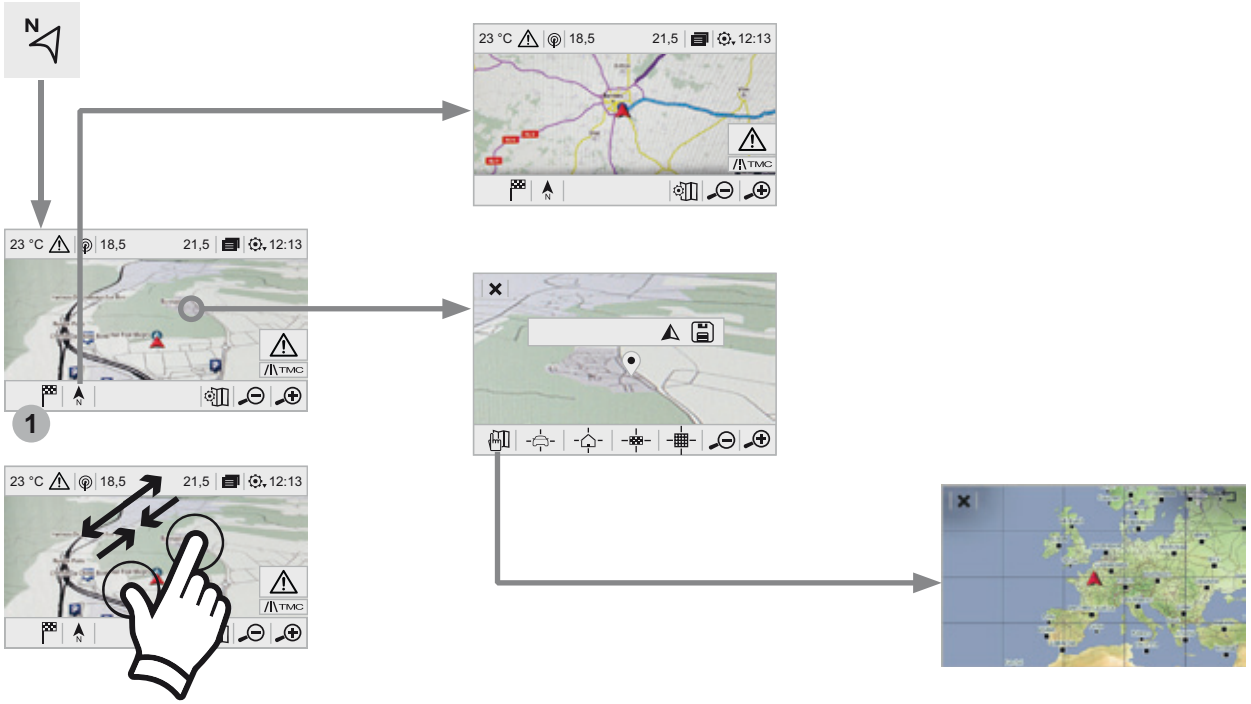
The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

* This function is only available if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

Navigation

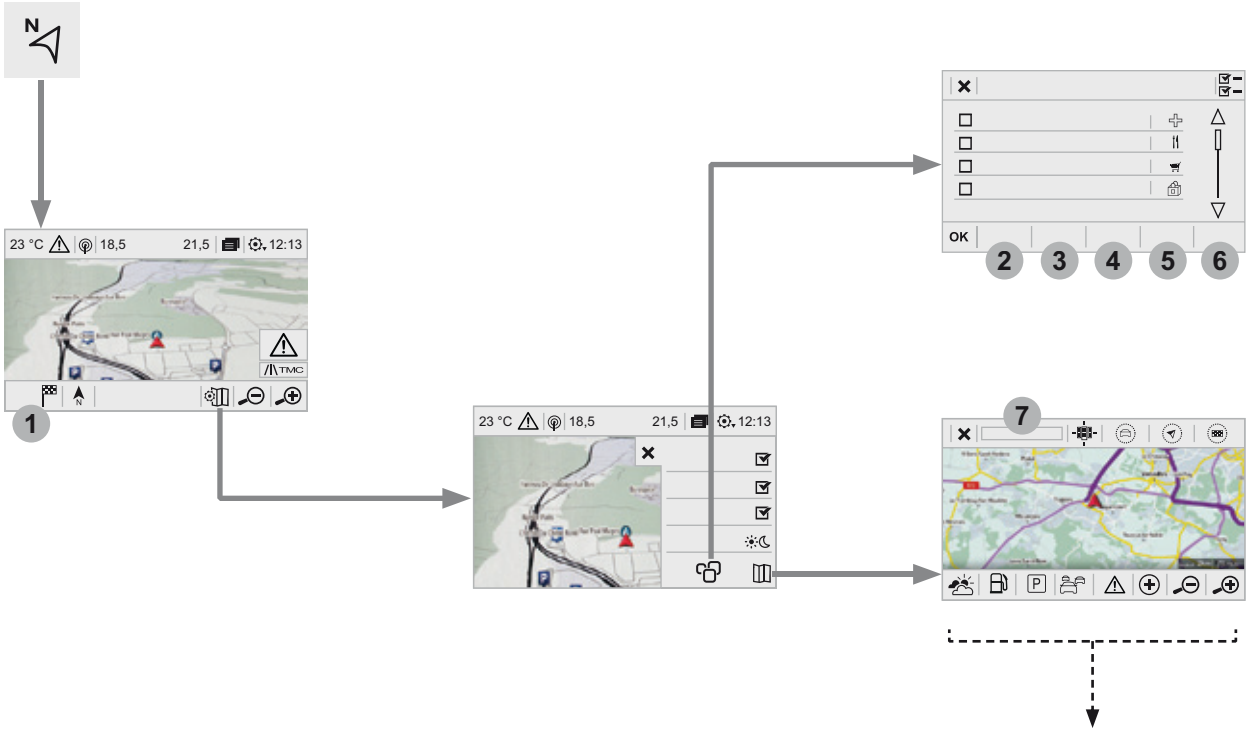
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



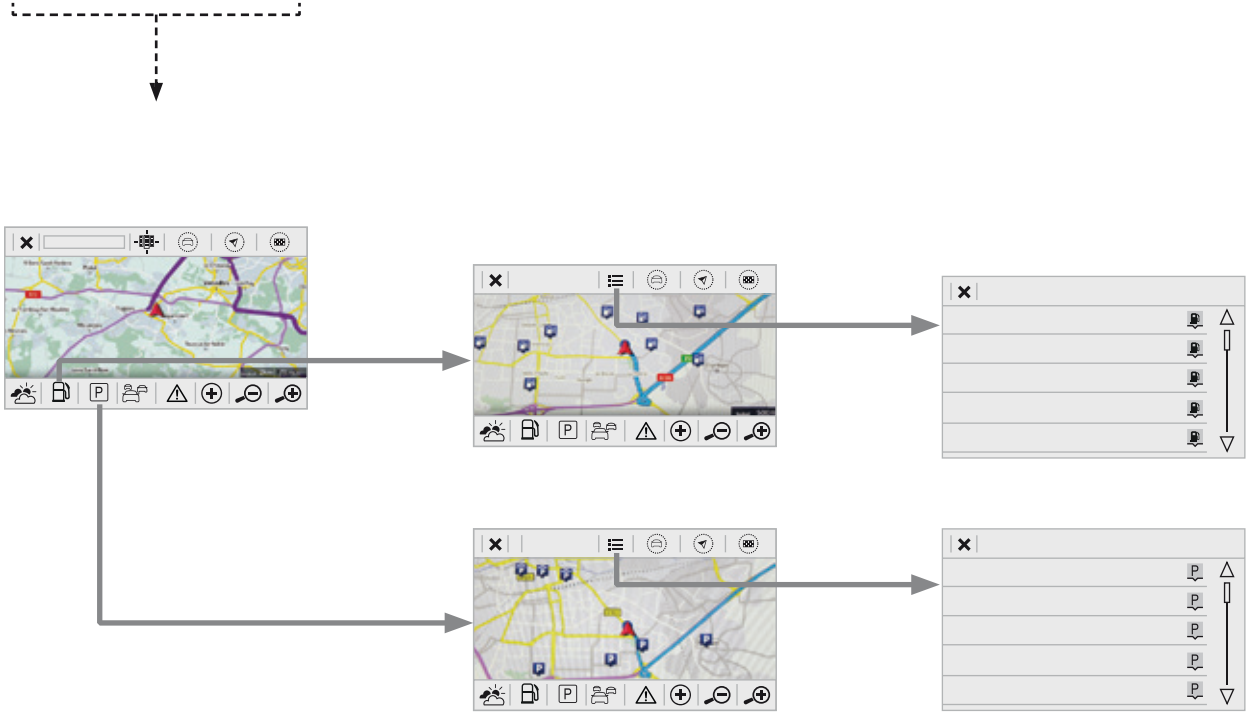
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation					Display the traffic information available.
	Navigation		World map			Manually locate an area on the world map or enter the latitude and longitude coordinates.
			Around the vehicle			Display the location criteria selected.
			Around home			
			Around the destination			
			2D mode			Switch to a 2D map.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.
						Start navigation to the current address.
						Save the current address.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

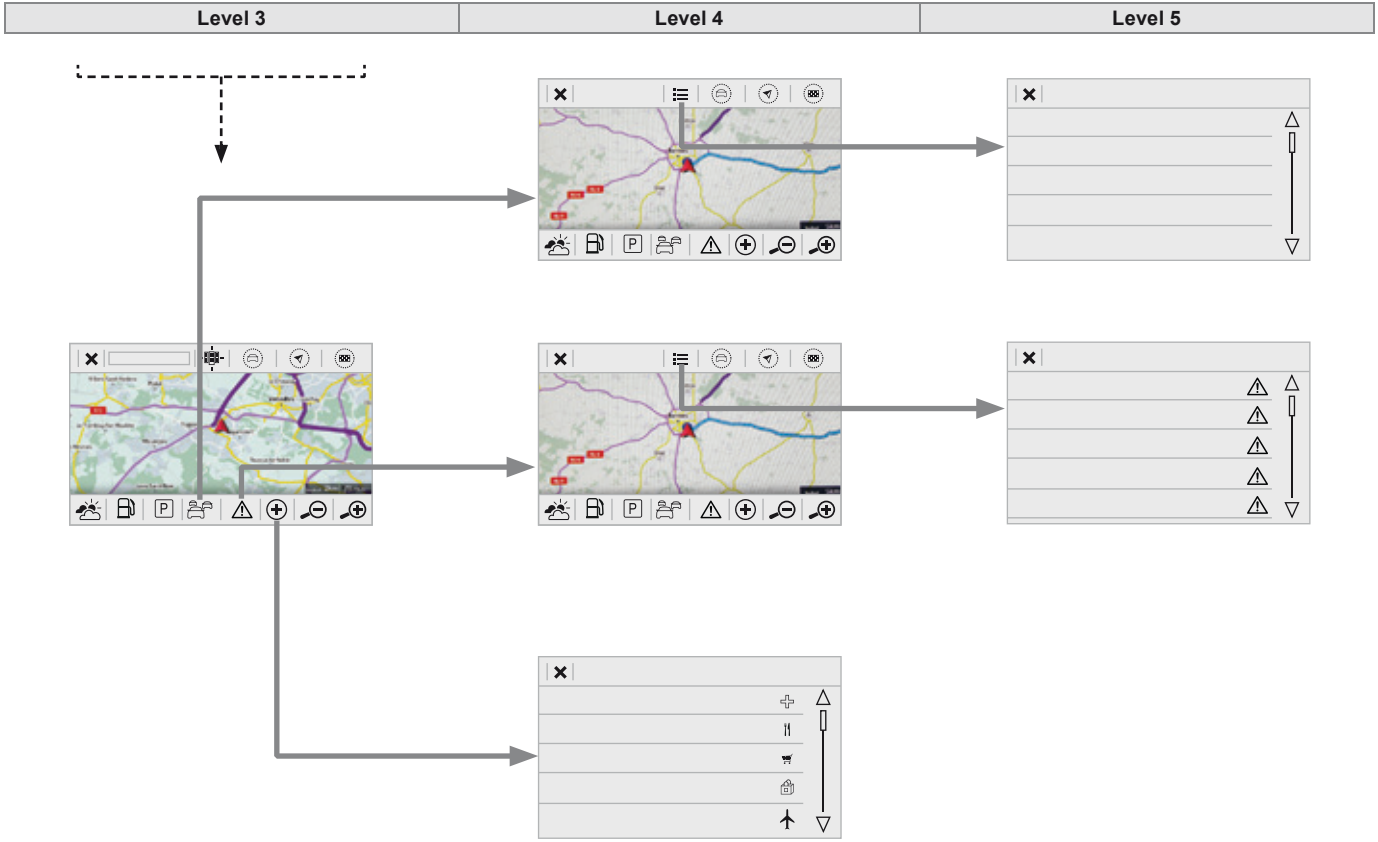


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
			Stations			Activate or deactivate the content available (stations, car parks, risk areas and danger areas).
			Car park			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select day or night mode for display of the map.
			POI on map	2	Travel	Select the POIs available.
				3	Active life	
				4	Commercial	
				5	Public	
				6	Geographic	
	Navigation				Select all	Select or deselect all.
				OK		Save your choice or selection.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or modify a city.
					Weather	Display on the map the content available in non-connected mode.
					Petrol Station	
					Car park	
					Traffic	
					Danger area	
					Select POI	Select from the POIs available.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5

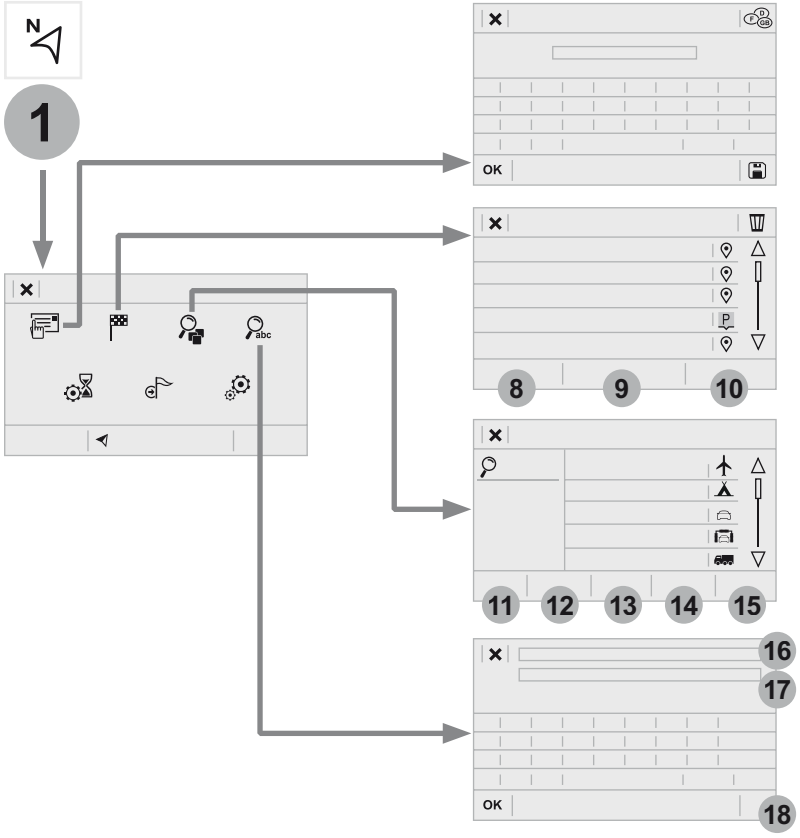


Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Zoom in	OK				Zoom in around the city selected.
	Around the vehicle					Select a location option.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather					Weather information transmitted in TMC mode.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of POIs.
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

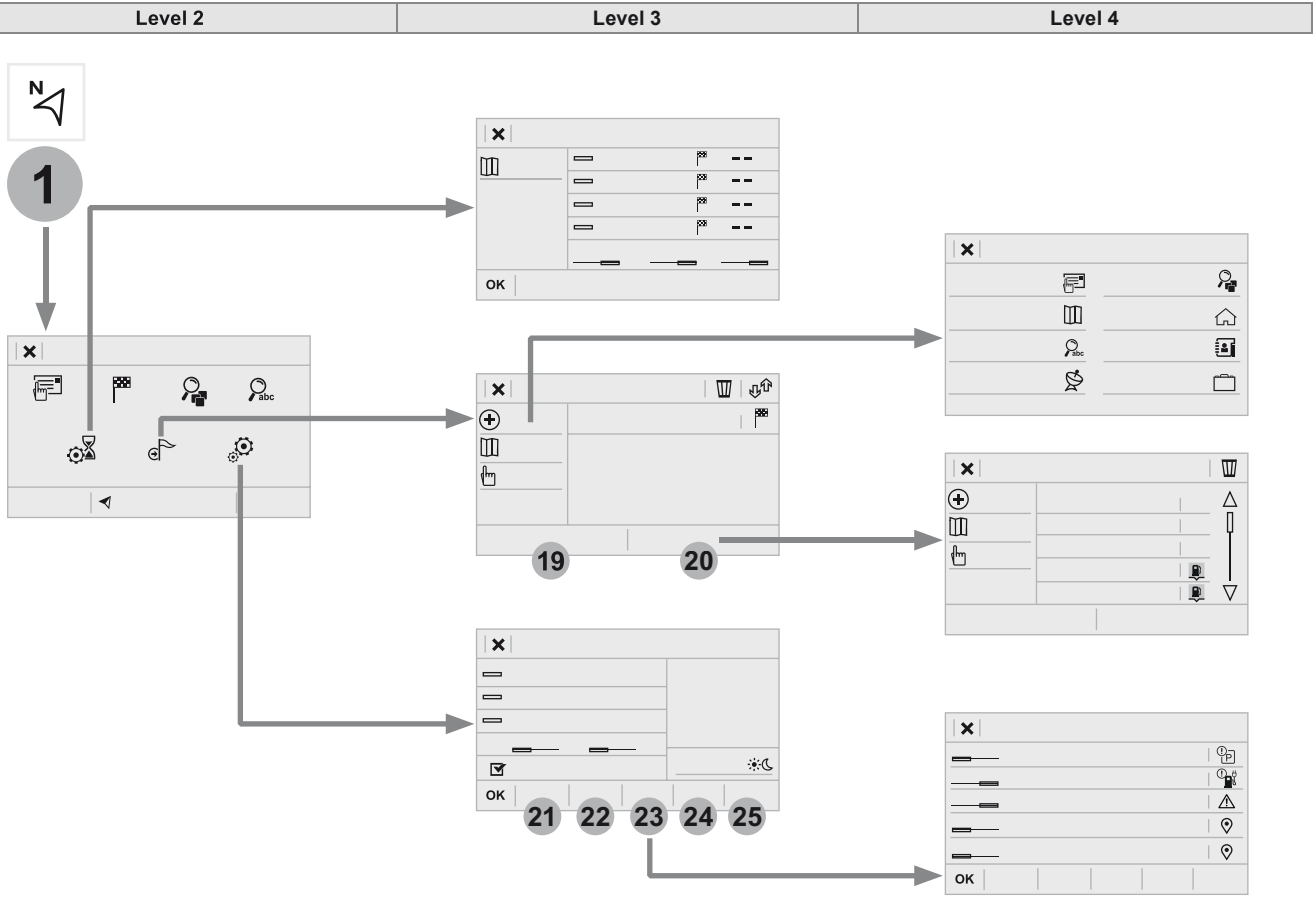

Level 3
Level 4
Level 5

Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Traffic information sent in real time.
	Danger area				List of danger areas	Display the list of danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...).
	Select POI					Configure a category of POI to display.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Enter address					Select the country.
						Save the current address.
		OK				Confirm the current address.
1	Navigation → MENU → My destinations	8	Recent			Display the lists of destinations and start navigation.
		9	Preferred		My home	
					My work	
		10	Contact			
						Delete one or more destinations.
1	Navigation → MENU → Points of interest	11	Travel			List of categories available. After selection of category, select the point of interest.
		12	Active life			
		13	Commercial			
		14	Public			
		15	Geographic			
			Search			Search for a point of interest.
1	Navigation → MENU → Search	16	Point of interest			Enter a point of interest.
		17	Address			Enter the address of a point of interest.
		18	Local / Connected			Enter settings for the POI search mode in a local or connected database depending on the services subscribed to.
		OK				Confirm the entry.


Level 2
Level 3
Level 4
1
OK
19
20
OK
21
22
23
24
25
OK

Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Guidance criteria		Fast			Select the guidance criteria (motorways, tolls and how traffic is taken into account).
			Short			
			Compromise			
			Ecological			
			See on map			Display the route selected using the criteria.
		OK				Save your selections.
1	Navigation → MENU → Routes / waypoints	19	Waypoints			Display the waypoints saved.
		20	Route			Display details of the route.
			Add waypoint		Add a waypoint	Add a waypoint from a list offered.
			Preview			Display the map.
			Finish			Press to calculate the route.
						Delete one or more waypoints.
						Move a waypoint in the list.
1	Navigation → MENU → Settings	21	Aspects			Enter choices and select the volume for the voice and stating the names of streets.
		22	Options			
		23	Alerts			
		24	Vocal			
		25	Mapping			
		OK				Save the selections adopted.

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.



Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

To use the navigation system, it is necessary to enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or to take them from the list of "**Contacts**" or from the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

Towards a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival geographically.

Towards "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a previously saved favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list offered to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

Towards a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed

i A long press on a point opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

Or



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

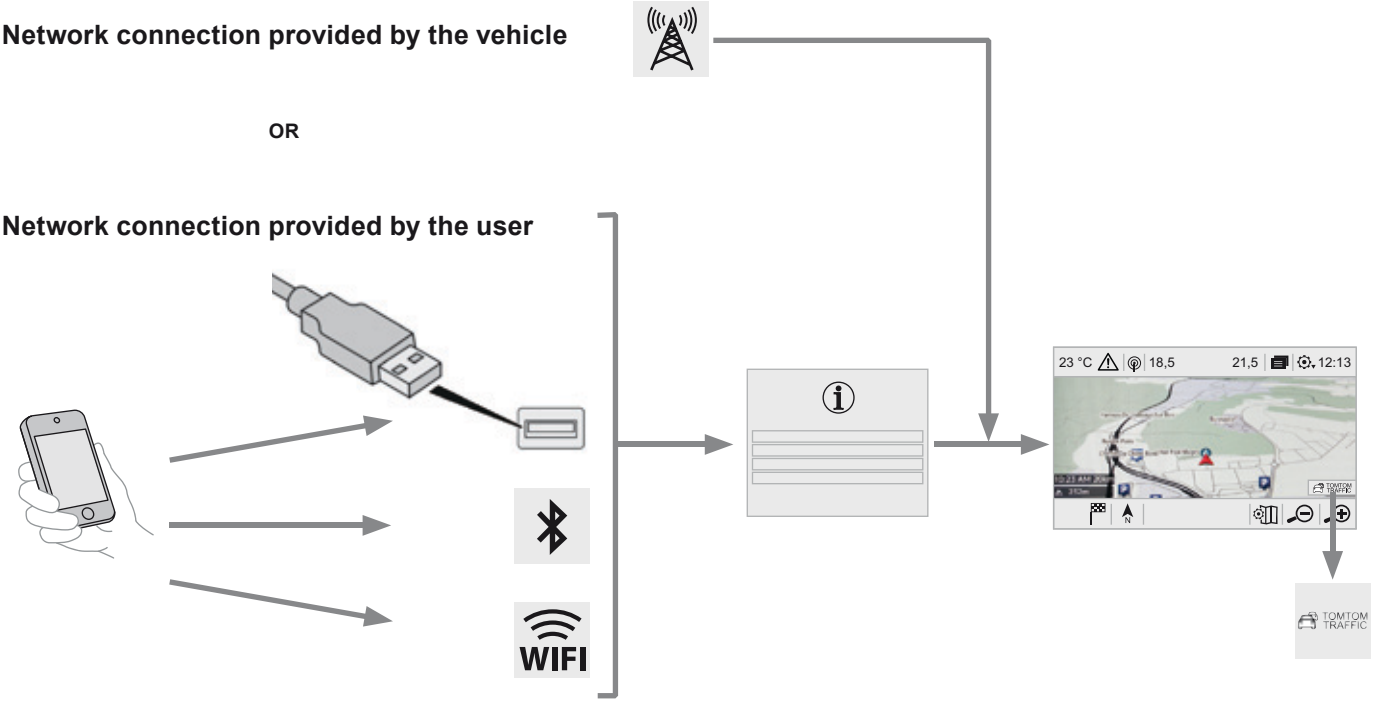
According to version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle

OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone is in charge mode when connected by USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi connection found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

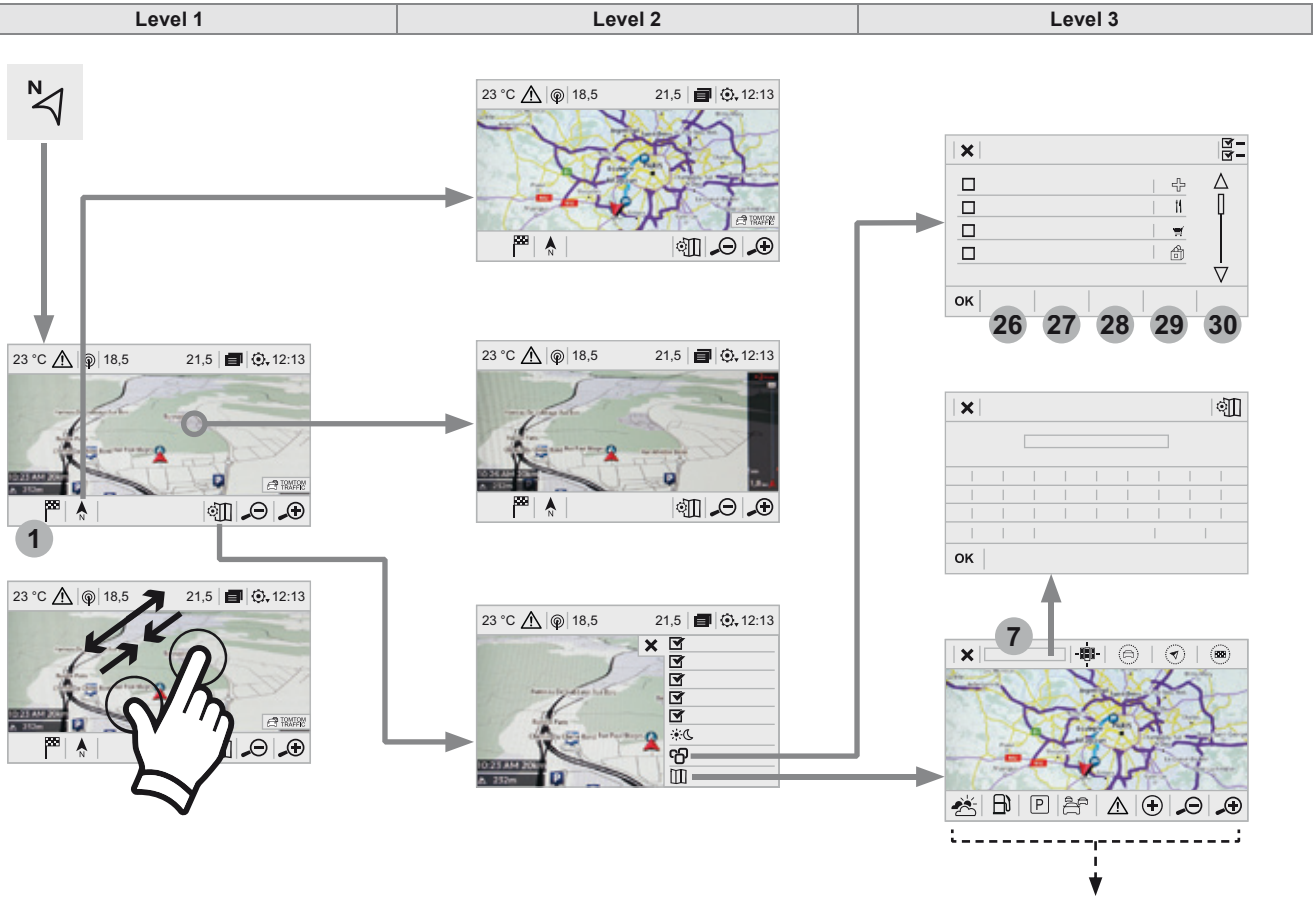


On the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

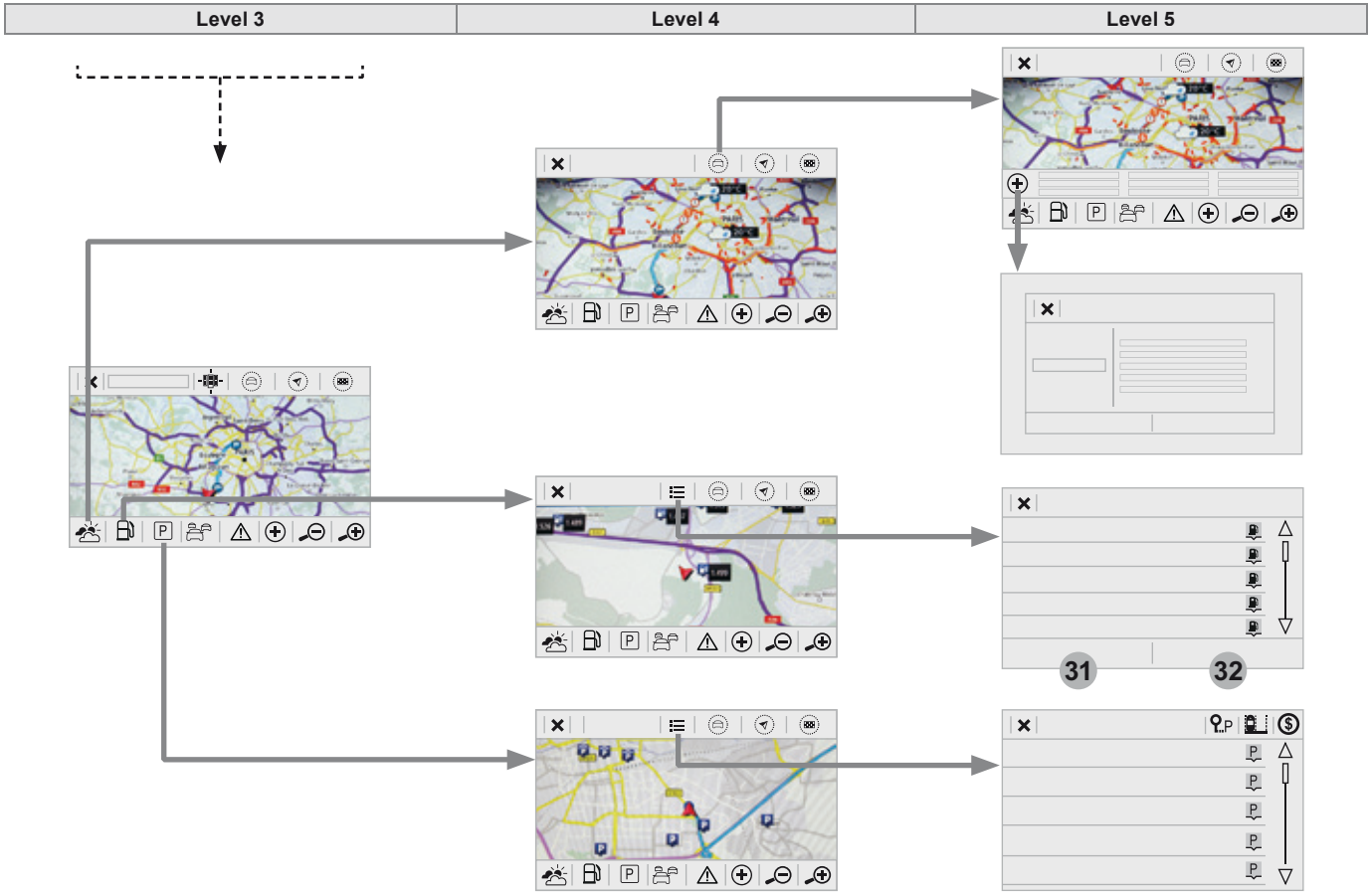
The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI, local search.

A Danger area pack (option).

The principles and standards are constantly changing. For communication between your smartphone and the system to operate correctly, we recommend that you **keep your smartphone's operating system up to date, and the time and date on your smartphone and the system correct.**

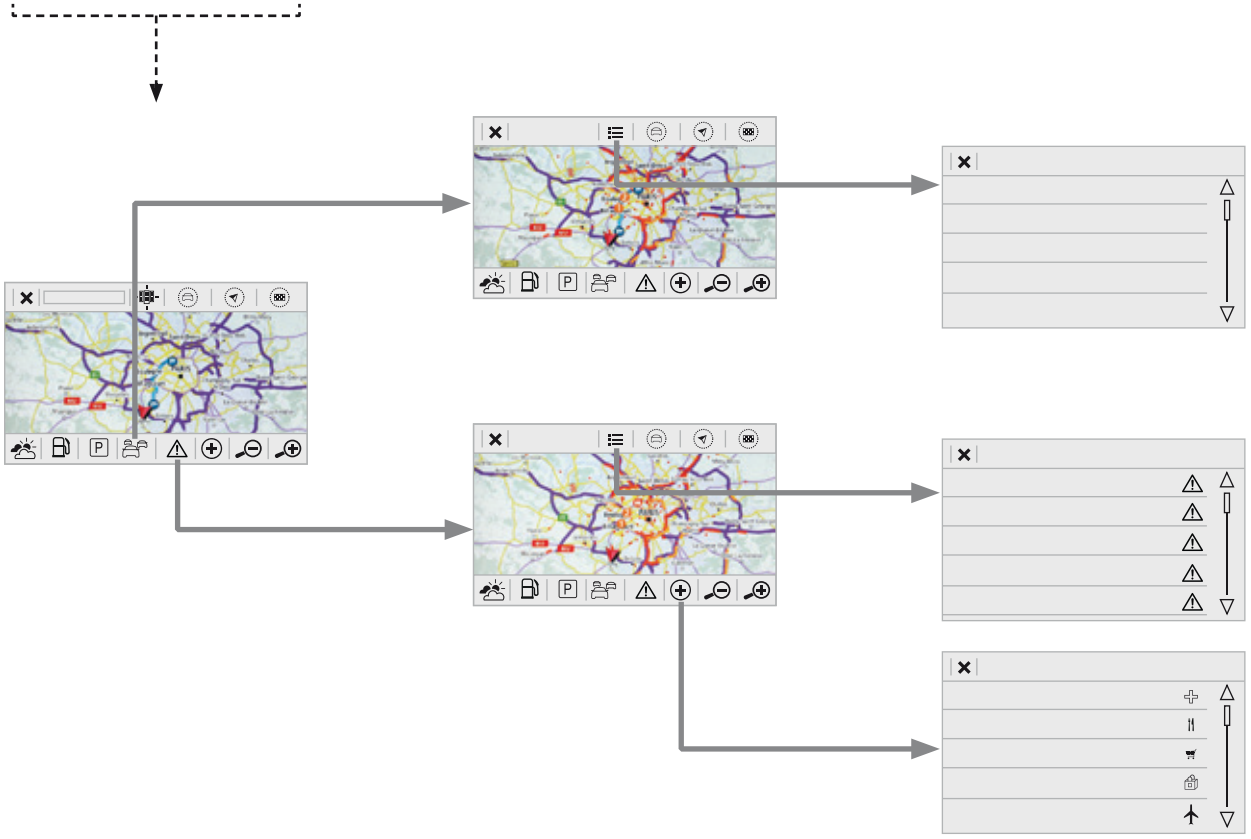

Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
N
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
OK
26
27
28
29
30
7

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation → **TOMTOM TRAFFIC**					On connection of the system to a network, "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" is displayed instead of "TMC", for use of all of the options available, in real time.
	Navigation		**Weather**			Select the options. The map display the route chosen, depending on options.
			Stations			
			Car park			
			Traffic			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select the display mode for the map.
			POI on map	26	Commercial	Select the POIs available.
				27	Geographic	
				28	Leisure	
				29	Public	
				30	Travel	
				OK		Save the options.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or change a city.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.


Level 3
Level 4
Level 5
31
32

Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Select city	OK				Select or change a city.
	Around the vehicle					Select or change a city.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather				**Weather information**	Display the weather forecast for the day or the following days.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of filling stations and the associated information (address, prices, fuels, ...).
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
				31	**By distance**	
				32	**By price**	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	Display the list of car parks and the associated information (address, distance, spaces available, price, ...).
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
					Sort by distance	
					Sort by spaces	
					Sort by price	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Display traffic information in real time: type, description and duration (in minutes).
	Danger areas				List of danger areas	Display danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...) in real time.
	Points of interest		Points of interest		Select POI	Display the list of POIs for the location selected.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display the first level of information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the morning will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the evening will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Options**".



Activate or deactivate:

- "**Allow declaration of danger areas**"
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Authorise sending information**"



Select "**Alerts**".



Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".

The display of danger zones is conditioned by the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger areas"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger areas**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**Declare a new danger area**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen.



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger areas" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to view the version of the various modules installed in the system.



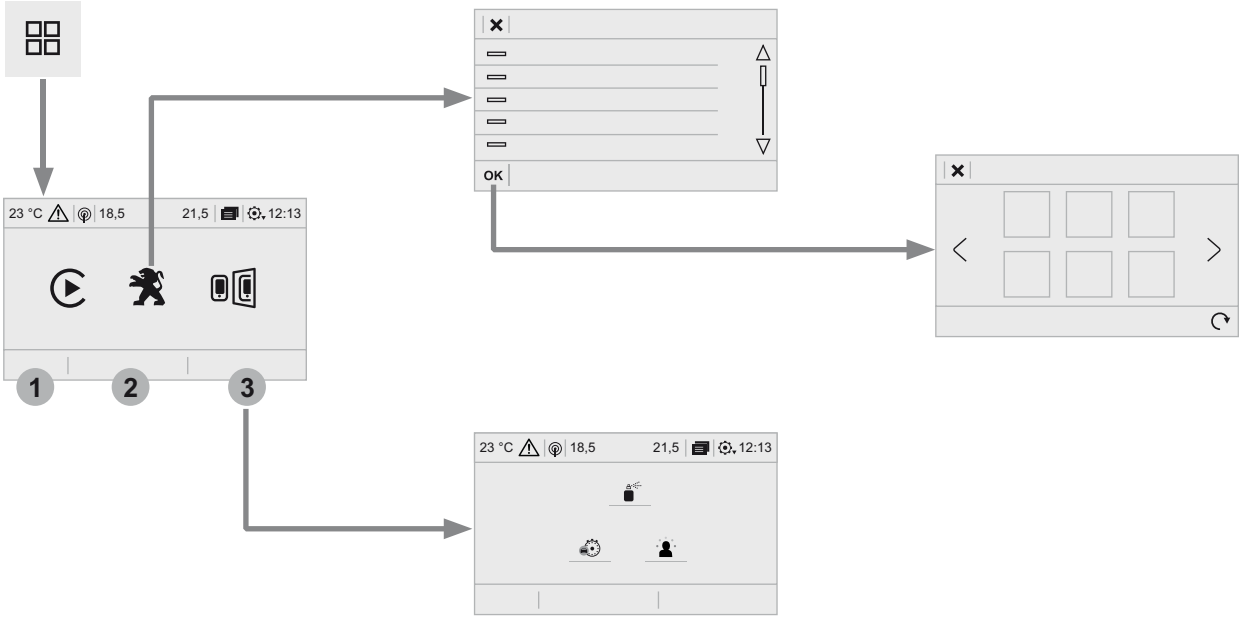
Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Applications

According to version / according to equipment

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.



Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.



Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**® or **MirrorLink**™ function.

Applications

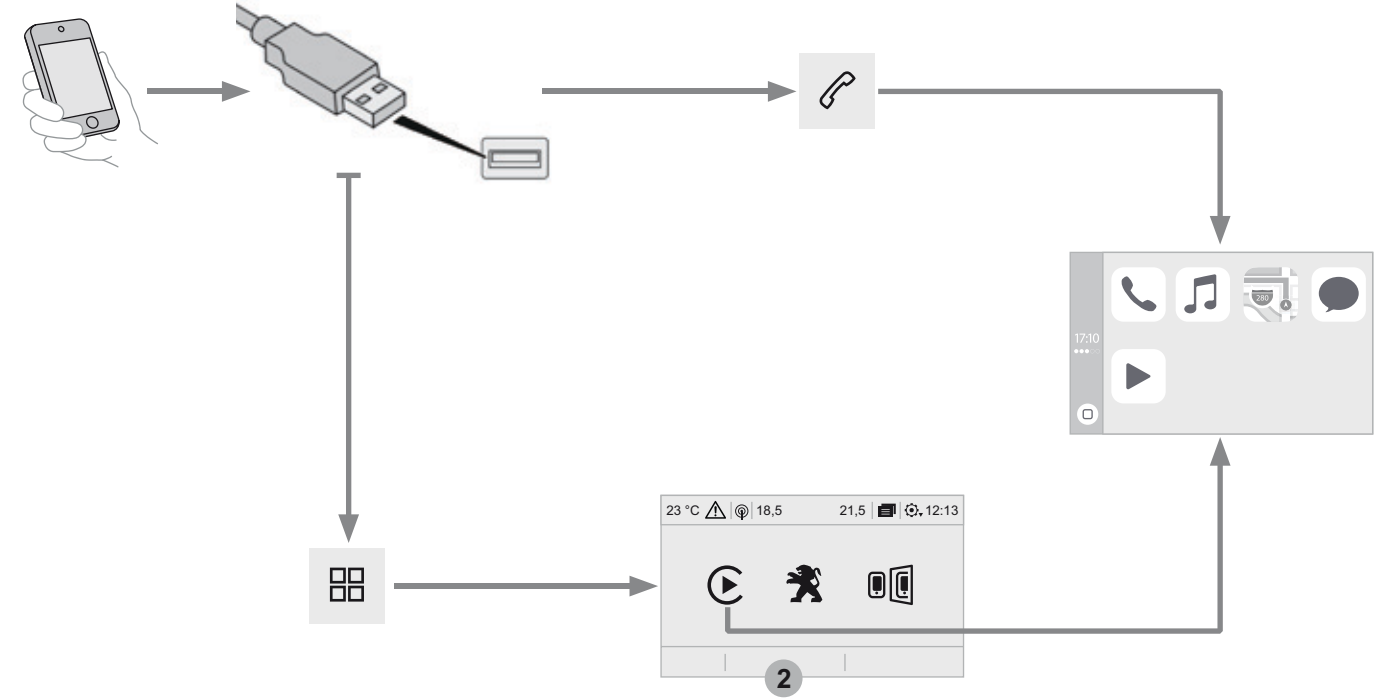


Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connecte d by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



In the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

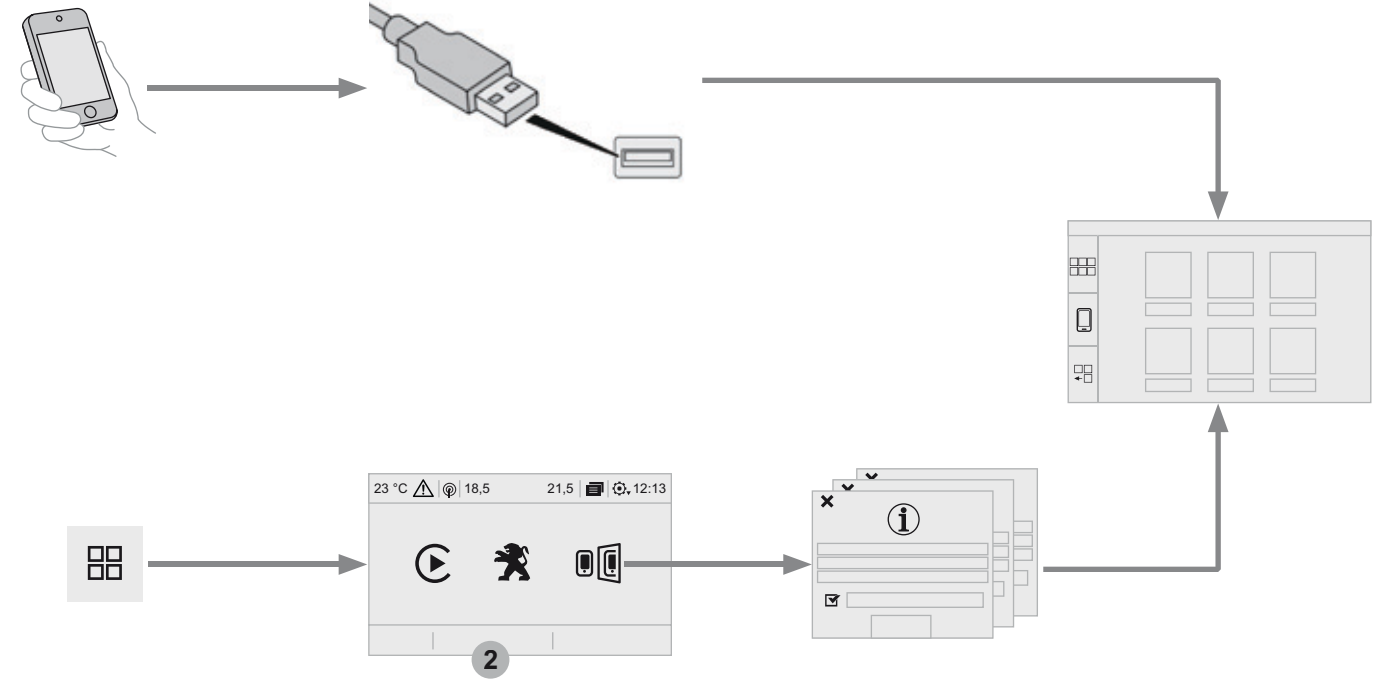
2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.


When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone


Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.


From the system, press on "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.


Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the system's application.

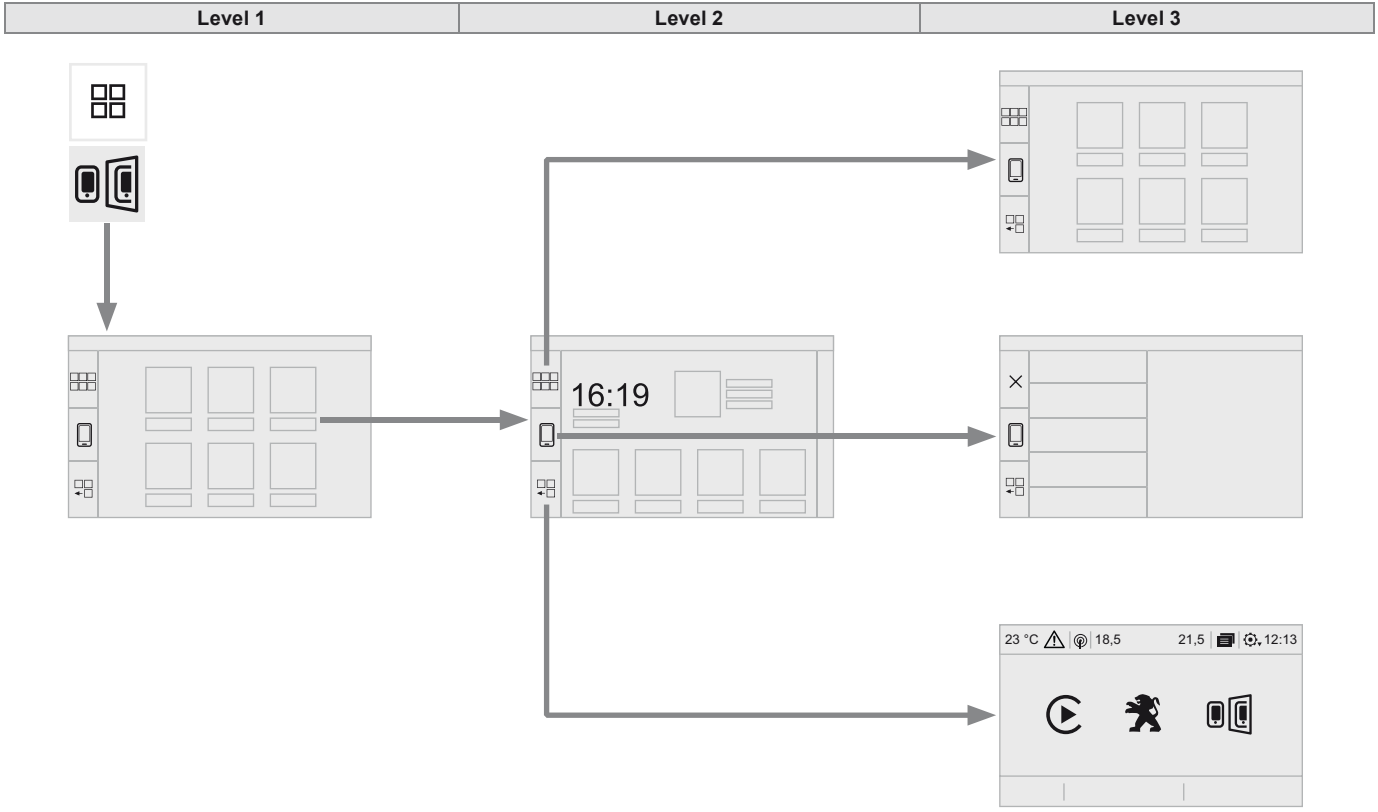
Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

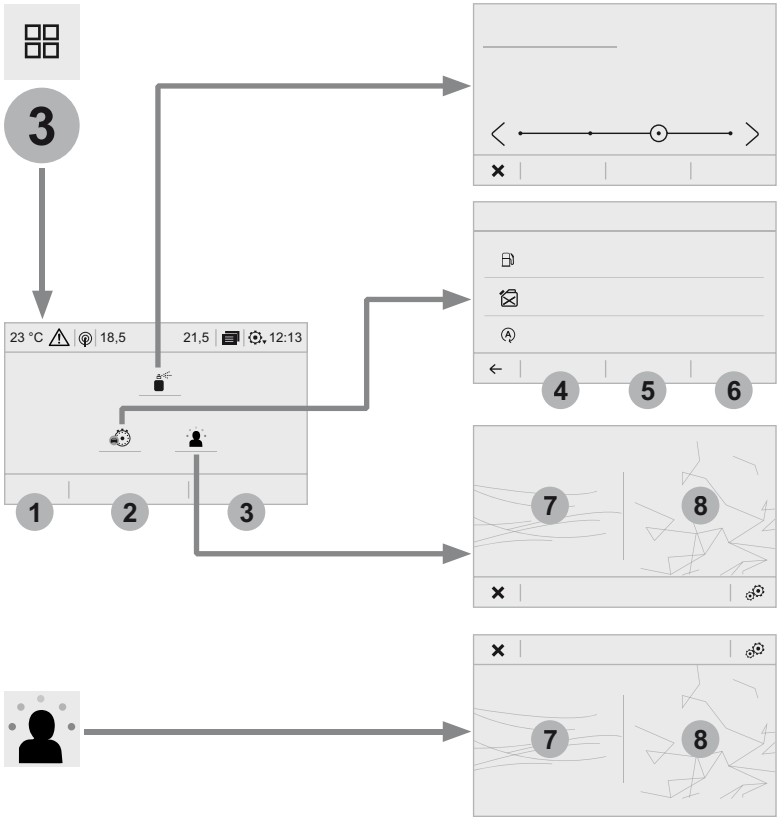
i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
16:19
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
						Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Applications** ↓ **MirrorLink™**					Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
						Go to the primary page of the "Applications" menu.

According to equipment

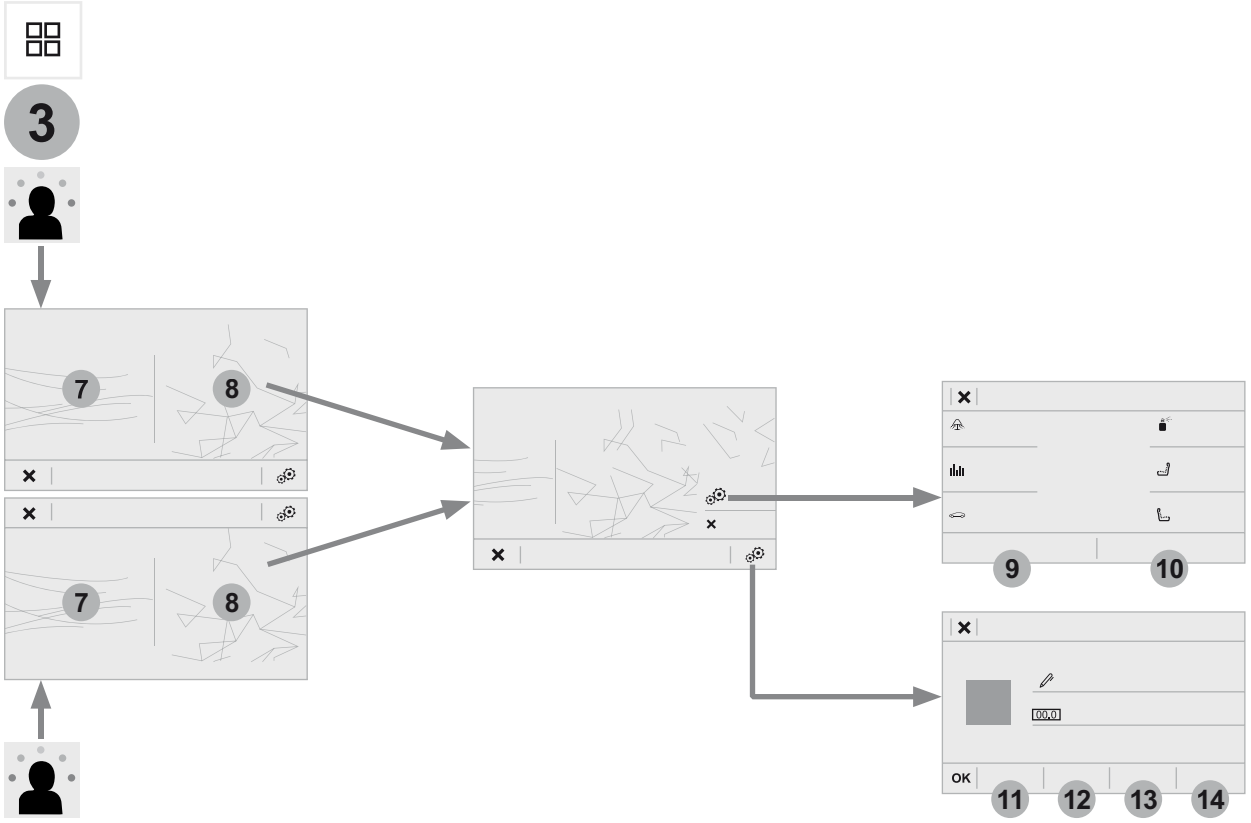
Level 2	Level 3



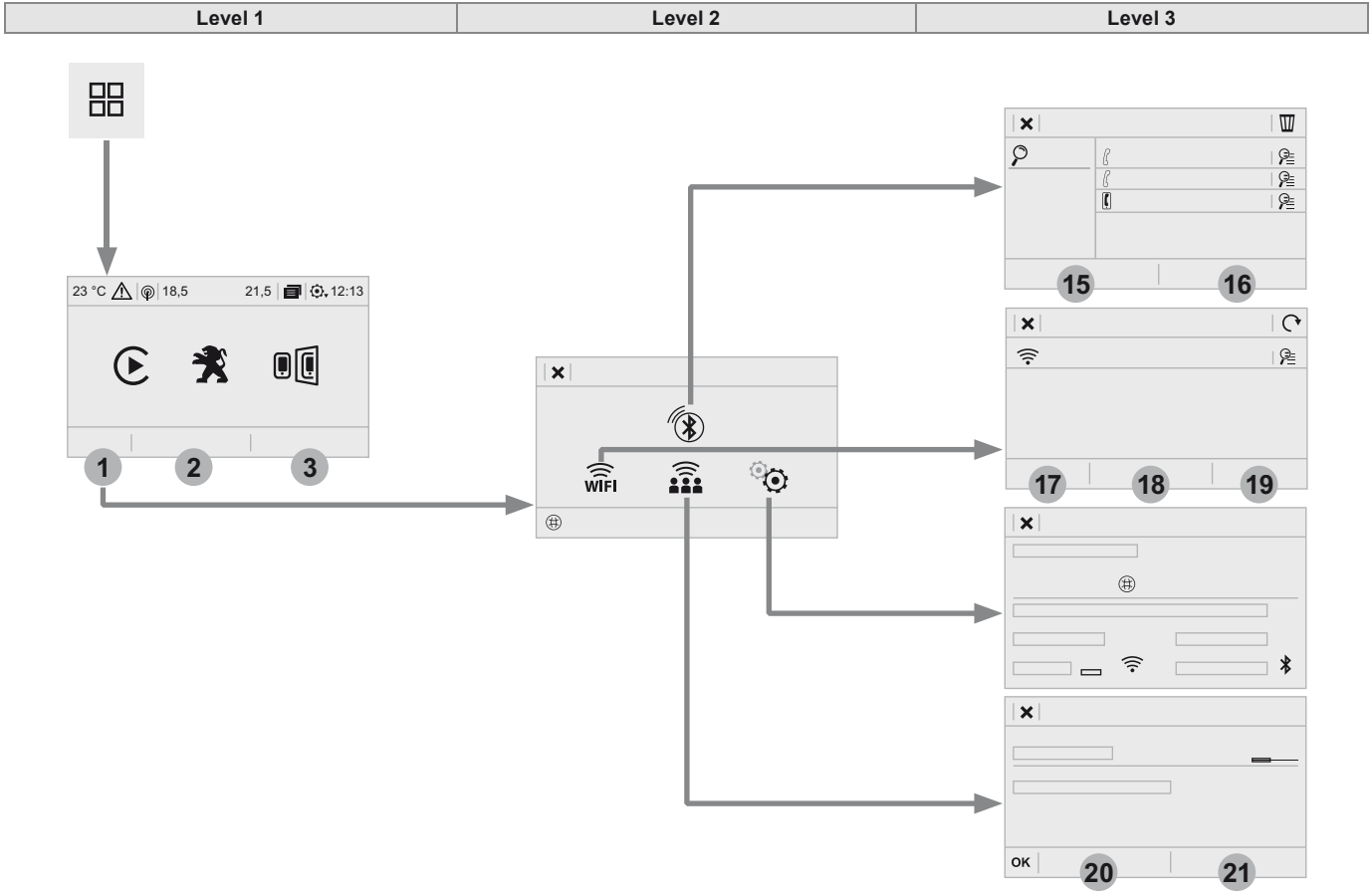
Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications ↓ Scented air freshener			Select the fragrance.
			Off	Switch off the scented air freshener.
			Low	Adjust the intensity of diffusion of the fragrance.
			Medium	
			High	
		✕		Confirm the selection and settings.
	Applications ↓ Trip computer	4	**Instant**	System providing information about the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).
		5	**Trip 1**	
		6	**Trip 2**	
		←		Back to the Applications page.
	Applications ↓ i-Cockpit Amplify	7	**Relax**	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment presets and/or save it in a user profile.
		8	**Boost**	
			Profile management	
	i-Cockpit Amplify	7	**Relax**	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment presets and/or save it in a user profile.
		8	**Boost**	
			Profile management	

According to equipment

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Applications i-Cockpit Amplify Relax Boost OR		Settings		Lighting	Adjust the intensity of the ambience lighting.
					Ambience	Adjust the sound ambience.
					Dynamic	Set the driving mode.
					Fragrance	Select a fragrance.
					Driver massage	Select and configure the driver massage.
					Passenger Massage	Select and configure the passenger massage.
7 8				9	Save settings	Save the settings.
				10	Reset the mode	Reset the parameters of the ambience.
				×		Confirm the selections and settings.
		×	Deactivate			Deactivate the "i-Cockpit Amplify" function.
	i-Cockpit Amplify Relax Boost		Profile management	11	Profile 1	Configure the profiles.
7 8				12	Profile 2	
				13	Profile 3	
				14	Common profile	
				OK		Save the settings.
		OK				Confirm the selections and settings.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
2
3
WIFI
15
16
17
18
19
OK
20
21

Level 2		Level 3		Comments
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection		15	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		16	Connected	Display all telephones connected.
			Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Wi-Fi network connection		17	Secured	Display the secured Wi-Fi networks.
		18	Not secured	Display the not secured Wi-Fi networks.
		19	Stored	Display the stored Wi-Fi networks.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Manage connection				Display the status of the subscription to the connected services, the status of the network connection and the connection mode.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Share Wi-Fi connection		20	Activation	Activate or deactivate the Wi-Fi connection sharing.
		21	Settings	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.
		OK		Save the settings.

Bluetooth® connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.

Press "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Sharing the Wi-Fi connection

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

20 Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

21 Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect from any piracy and provide maximum security for your systems, it is recommended that you use a security code or a complex password.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

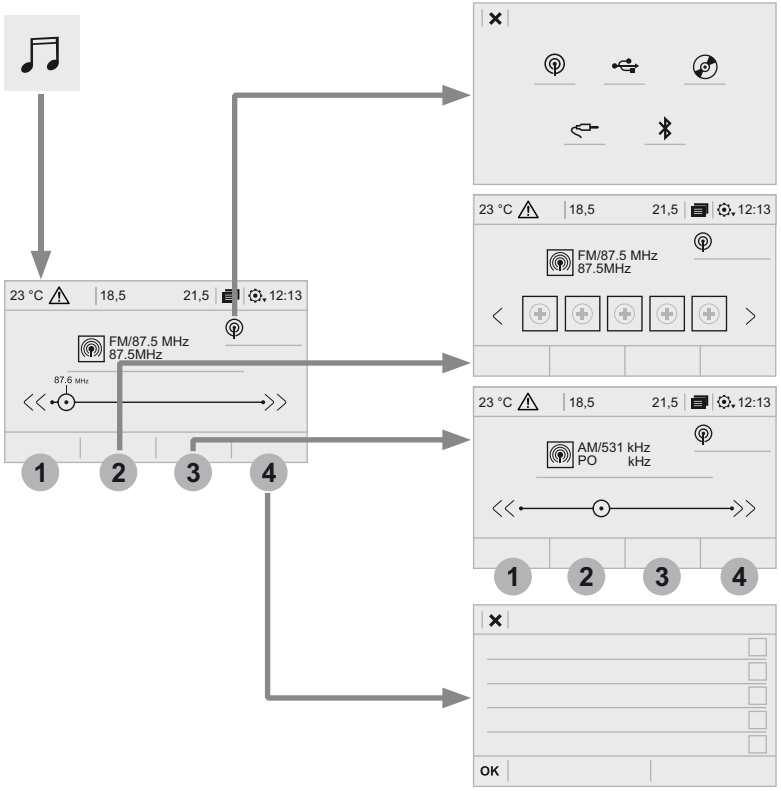
Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio Media

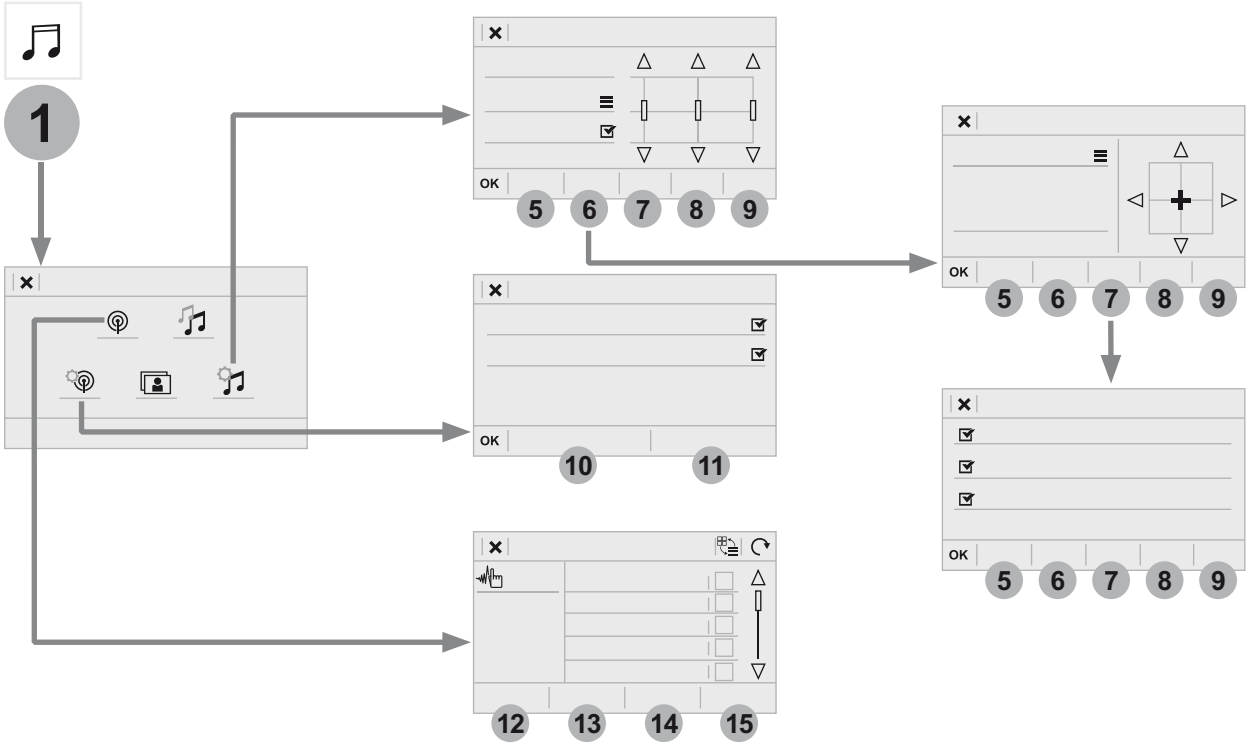
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



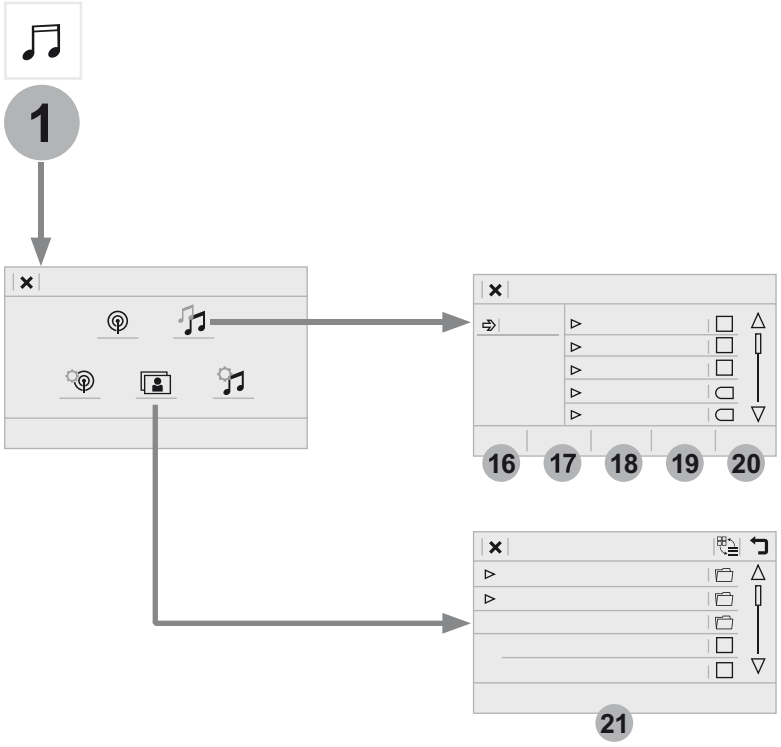
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
♫ /	Radio Media → Source		Radio	Select change of source.
			USB	
			iPod	
			CD	
			AUX	
			Bluetooth	
♫	Radio Media → Frequency / Presets		Frequency	Carry out an automatic or manual search for radio stations.
2			Presets	Make a long press on an empty location to preset a station.
♫	Radio Media → Band		FM	Press the Band button to change waveband.
3			DAB	
			AM	
♫	Radio Media → List		Radio stations	Open the list and press a radio station to select it.
4				

Level 2	Level 3

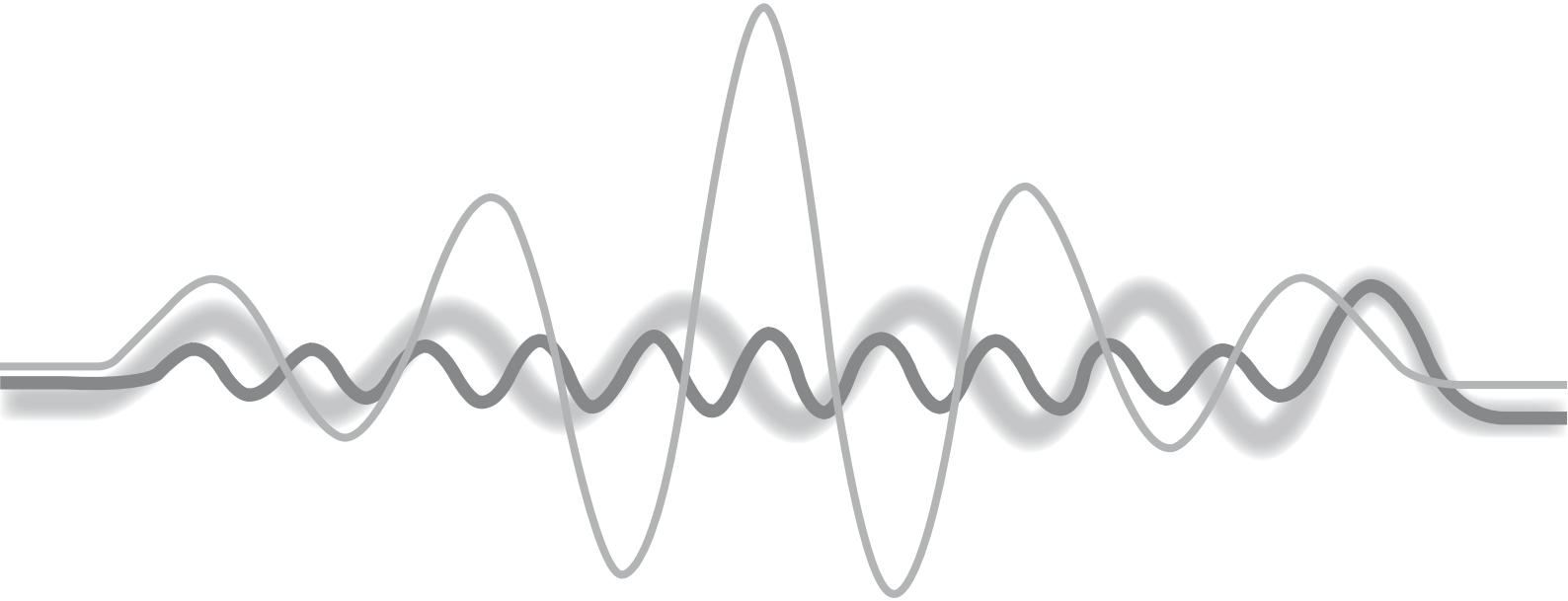


Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Audio settings	5	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		6	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys® system.
		7	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate volume linked to speed.
		8	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		9	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio settings	10	General	Activate or deactivate settings.
		11	Announcements	
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio stations	12	FM	Display the list of radio stations for the band selected.
		13	DAB	
		14	AM	
		15	Presets	Select a preset radio station.
			Frequency	Enter a frequency manually.
				Change the screen display mode.
				Update the list according to reception.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1 ♫	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Music files	16	Albums	Choose a selection mode.
		17	Artists	
		18	Genres	
		19	Playlists	
		20	Folders	
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Managing photos	21	USB	Display photos. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .bmp, .png, .raw and .tiff with a maximum file size of 10 Mb per image.



Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station, relating to the station or the song playing, to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select the audio source.

3 Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

10 Select "**General**".

Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

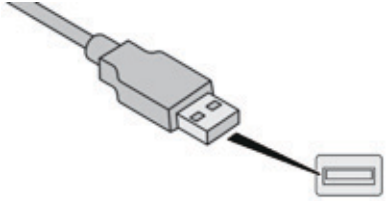
OK Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



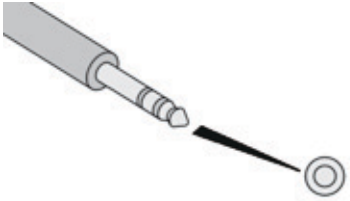
Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary (AUX) socket

(depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on equipment)
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4,...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

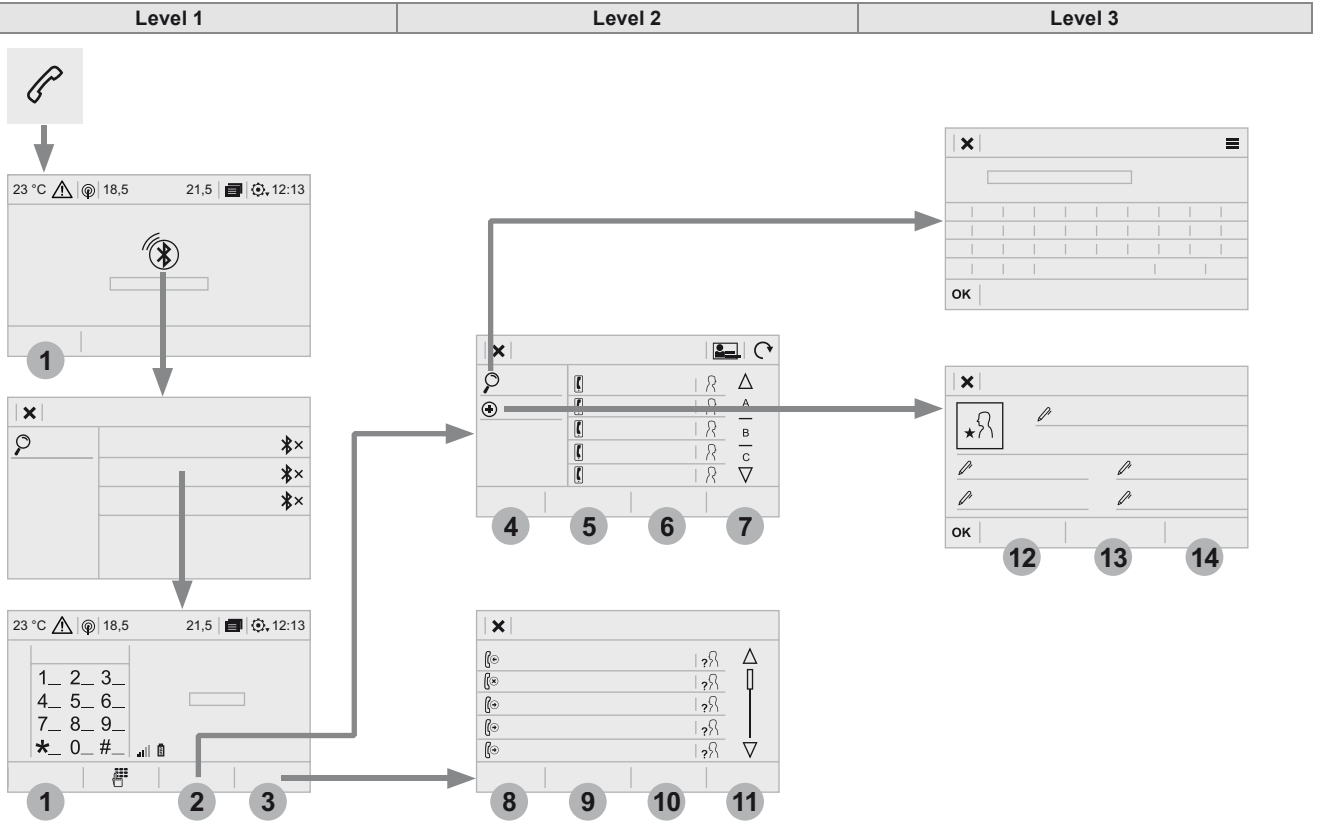
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, when burning it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for the best sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

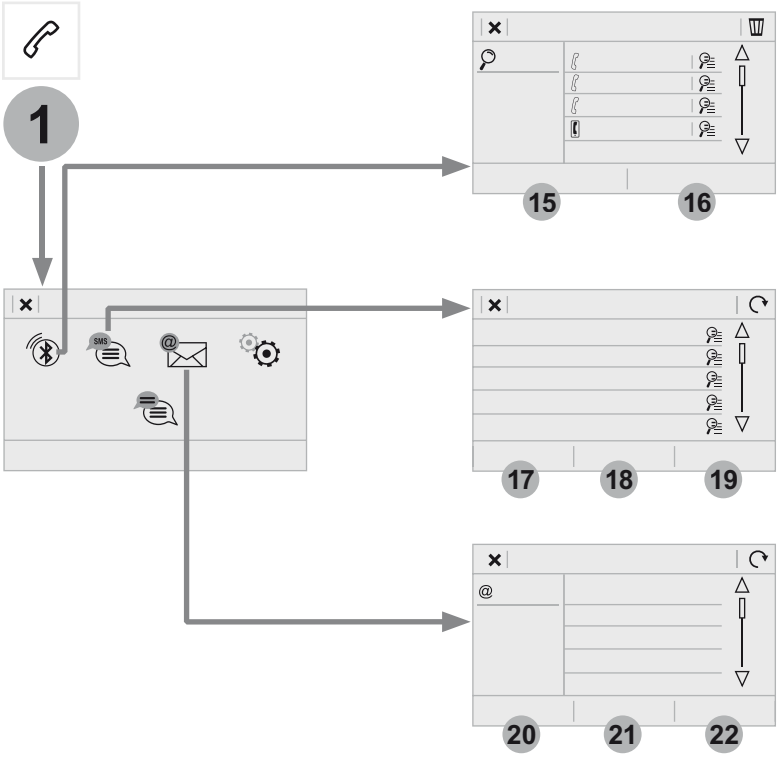
Telephone

According to version



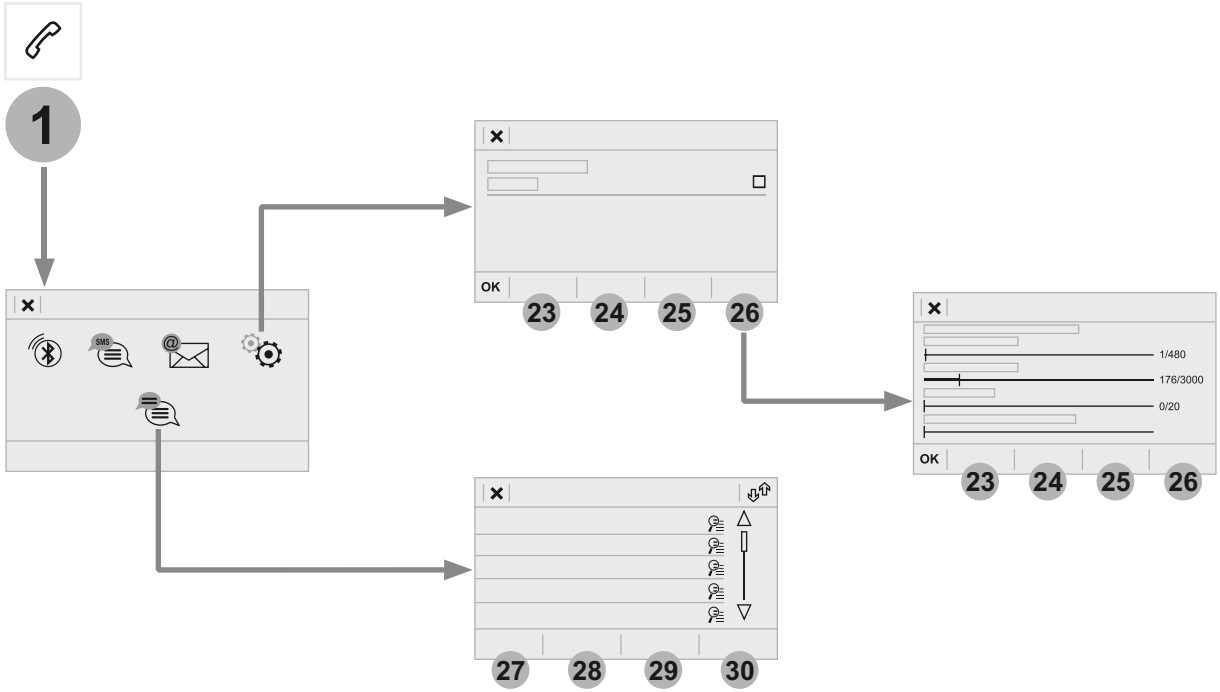
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
2	Telephone → Bluetooth → Contact	4	All			View contacts according to presentation choices. Select a contact or a favourite saved in the system via the profile selected to start the call.
		5	Telephone			
		6	Address			
		7	Favourites			
						Sort the contacts by Surname-First name or First name-Surname.
						Update the contacts from the telephone.
			Search	OK		Search for a contact in the directory.
			Create	12	Telephone	Create a new contact in the system.
				13	Address	
				14	Email	
				OK		
3	Telephone → Bluetooth → Calls	8	All			View calls according to choice of presentation. Select a contact to start the call.
		9	Incoming			
		10	Outgoing			
		11	Missed			
		?				View details for the contact.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 1 	Telephone → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection	15	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		16	Connected	Display all connected telephones.
			Search	Start the search for a device to connect.
 1 	Telephone → OPTIONS → Messages	17	All	Display messages according to the choice made.
		18	Received	
		19	Sent	
 1 	Telephone → OPTIONS → Email	20	Received	Display emails according to the choice made.
		21	Sent	
		22	Not read	
		@	Mailbox	

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Settings	23	Security	Make driving safe.
		24	Voicemail	Enter and save the number for the telephone voicemail.
		25	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		26	Statistics	Display data for the telephone connected.
		OK		Save the options.
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Quick messages	27	Delayed	Select a quick message from the categories, as required.
		28	My arrival	
		29	Not available	
		30	Other	

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with theBluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **Telephone** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **Streaming** (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- **Mobile internet data**.

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, having first activated sharing of the connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.


Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.


Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.


Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts / entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

2 Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

12 In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

13 In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

14 In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! The access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the email chosen in the list.



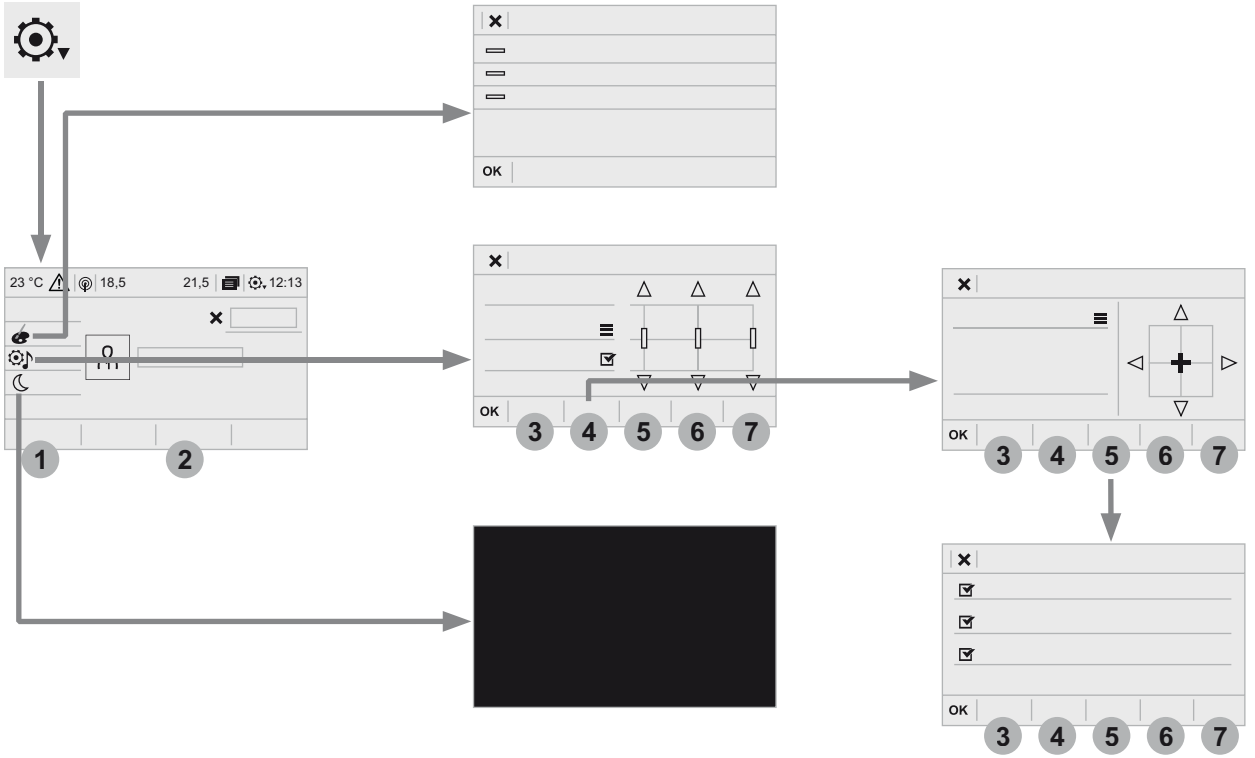
Press "**Play**" to start playing the email.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

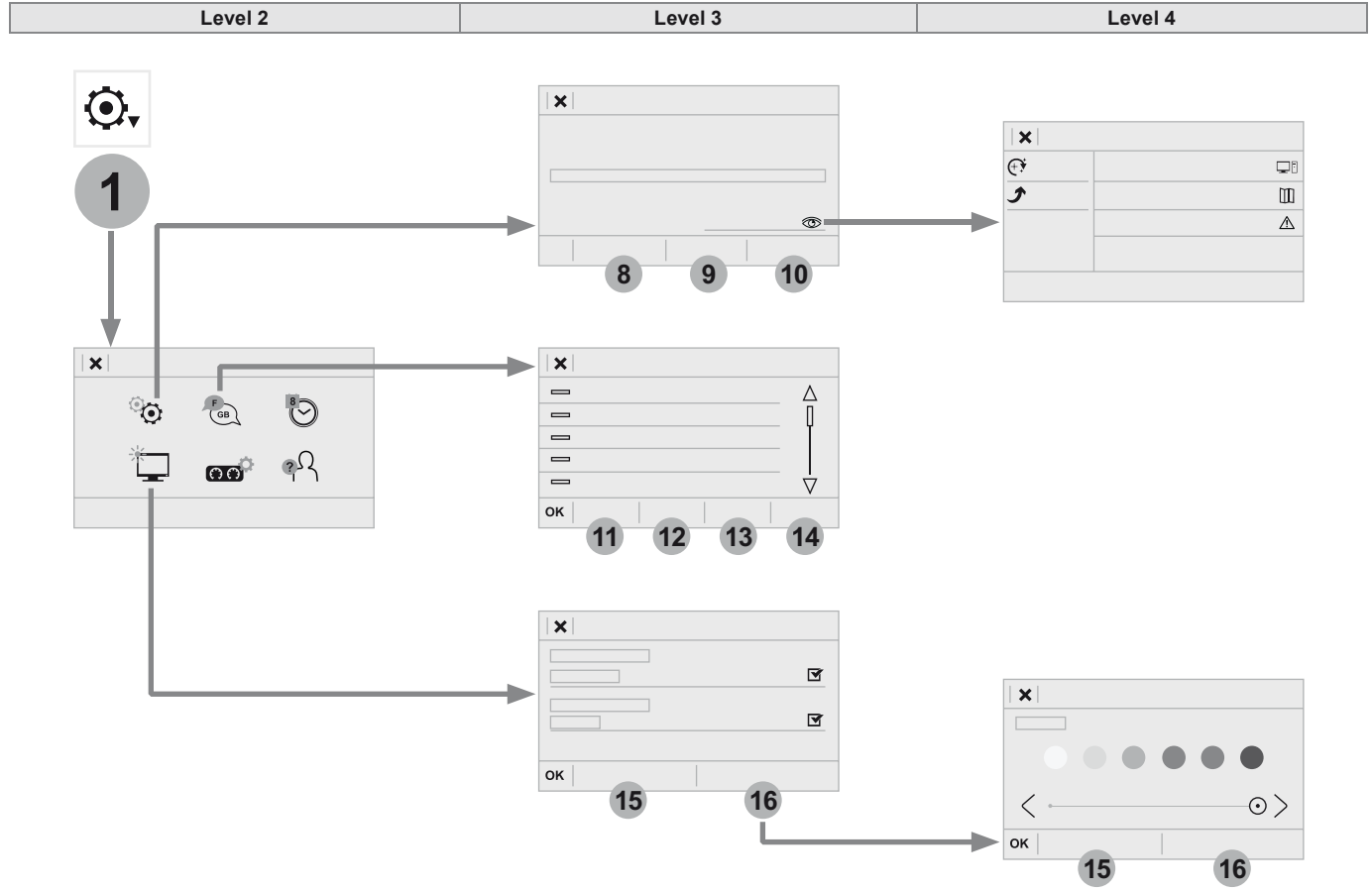
Settings

According to version

Level 1	Level 2

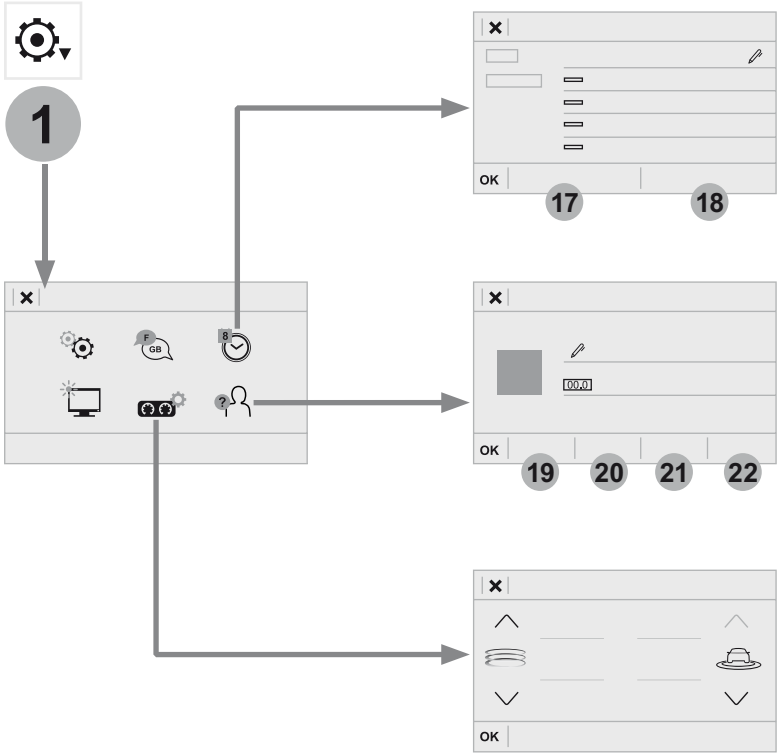


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Color schemes		Color schemes: 1,2,3, ...	Having chosen the color scheme, save the setting.
		OK		
	Settings → Audio settings	3	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		4	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys© system.
		5	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate linked to speed.
		6	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		7	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save the settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen			Function allowing the display to be switched off. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
2	Settings → Profile (1, 2, 3)			Activate the profile selected.


Level 2
Level 3
Level 4
1
8
9
10
OK
11
12
13
14
OK
15
16
OK
15
16

Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Settings → OPTIONS → System settings	8	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Set the units used for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
					Temperature	
		9	Factory settings	00,0	Reinitialize	Restore the factory settings.
		10	System info		View	View the versions of the different modules (system, mapping, risk areas) installed in the system as well as the updates available.
		OK				Save the settings.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Languages	11	All			Select the language then confirm.
		12	Europe			
		13	Asia			
		14	America			
		OK				Having selected the language, save the setting.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Screen configuration	15	Animation			Activate or deactivate settings.
		16	Brightness			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
		OK				Save the settings.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting the time-date	17	Date		Date	Enter the date and select the date format.
					Date format:	
		18	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Define the time zone.
					Time format:	Select the time format: 12h / 24h.
					Synchronisation with GPS (UTC):	Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites.
		OK				Save the settings.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting of the profiles	19	Profile 1			Enter settings for the profiles.
		20	Profile 2			
		21	Profile 3			
		22	Common profile			
		OK				Save the settings.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Driver screen configuration		Personalisation of the dashboard			Choose and select the display information required on the dashboard.
		OK				Confirm the selections.

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**"

Or

4

"**Position**"

Or

5

"**Sound**"

Or

6

"**Voice**"

Or

7

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio **Ambience** settings (6 ambiences available) as well as the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** settings are different and independent for each sound source.
Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".

The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

19

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system deforms the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

2

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

4

"**Distribution**".

Or

5

"**Sound**".

Or

6

"**Voice**".

Or

7

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

15

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate "**Automatic scrolling**".

16

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

8

Select "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

9

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

10

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites (UTC).

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Color schemes

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a color scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the color scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings (without the possibility of adjusting the volume) in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player does not recognise.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...).	
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble, Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	98
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	100
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	101
Menus	102
Applications	104
Radio Media	112
Telephone	124
Settings	138
Frequently asked questions	149

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the Energy Economy Mode message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

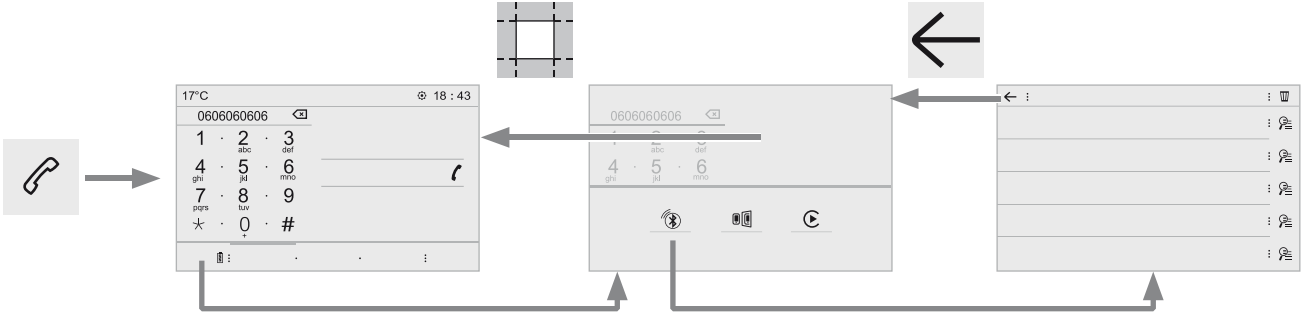
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



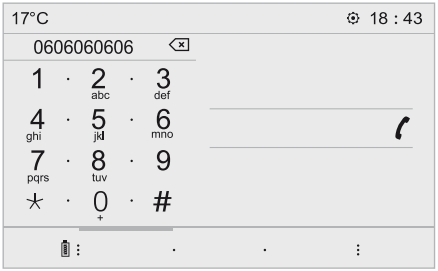
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

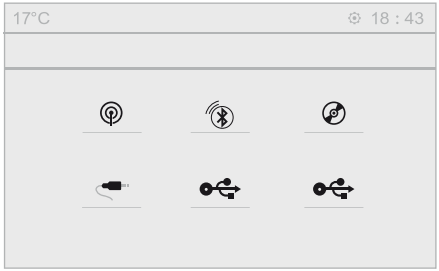
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* stations.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- CD player.
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming)



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/ Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.
Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.

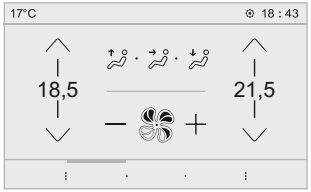
Radio (rotate): previous / next preset.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

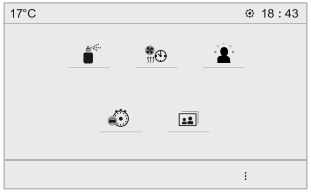
According to version.

Air conditioning



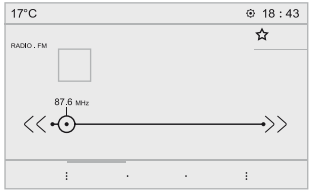
Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.

Applications



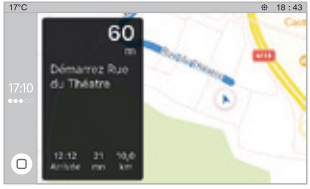
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



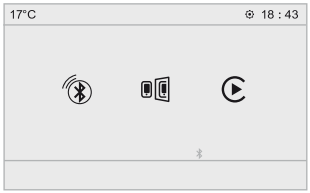
Select an audio source or radio station.

Navigation



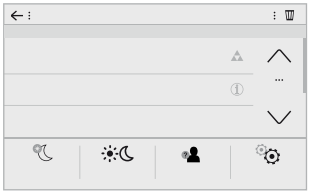
Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Driving



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Applications

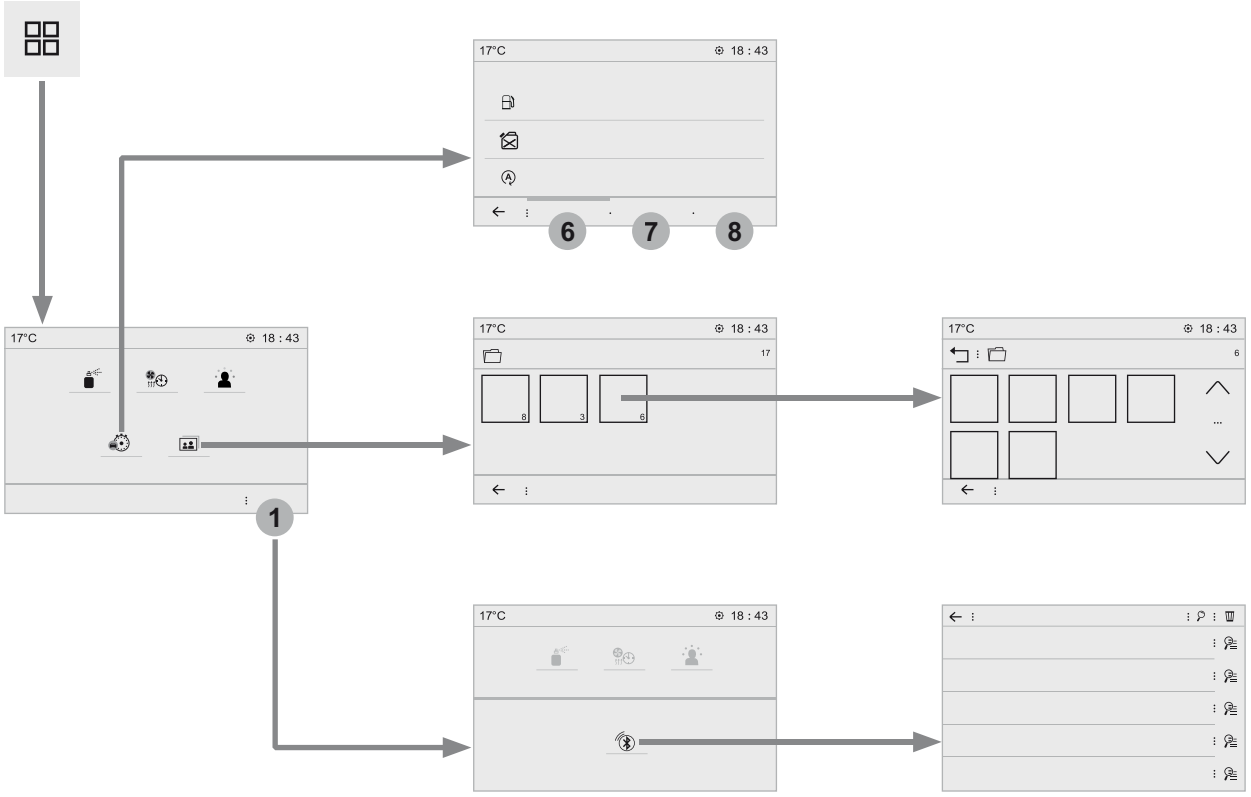
According to version / according to equipment.

Level 1	Level 2



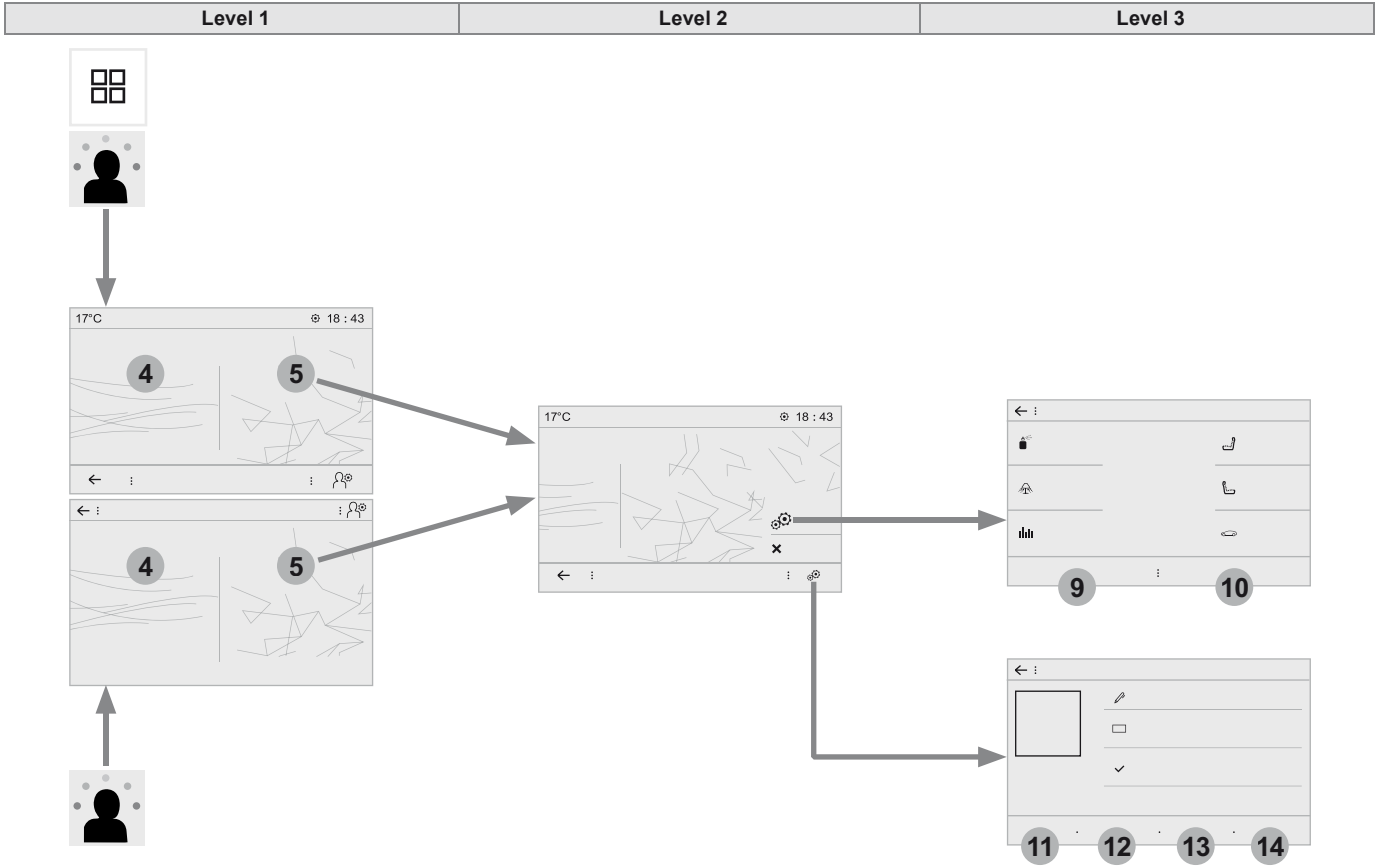
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Applications ↓ Scented air freshener			Select the fragrance.
			OFF	Deactivate the scented air freshener.
			Low	Adjust the intensity of diffusion of the fragrance.
			Medium	
			High	
		←		Confirm the selection and the settings.
	Applications ↓ Temperature conditioning	2	State	Activate/deactivate the temperature conditioning.
		3	Settings	Configure the pre-conditioning
				Save the parameters.
		←		Confirm the settings.
	Applications ↓ i-Cockpit Amplify	4	Relax	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment pre-sets and/or save it in a user profile.
		5	Boost	
			Profile management	
	i-Cockpit Amplify	4	Relax	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment pre-sets and/or save it in a user profile.
		5	Boost	
			Profile management	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

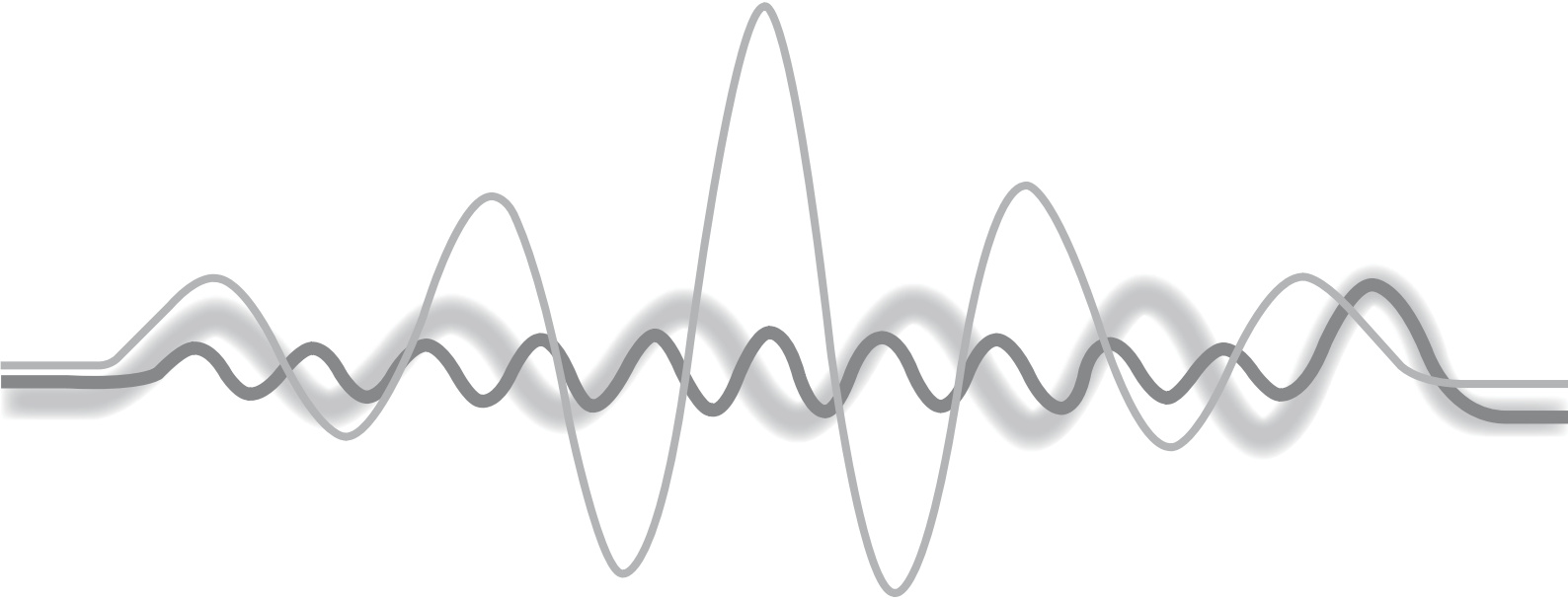


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications → Trip computer	6	Instant			System providing information about the current journey (range, consumption…).
		7	Trip 1			
		8	Trip 2			
		←				Go to the Applications page.
	Applications → Photos		Photo gallery		Photos	Go to the photo gallery.
				↰		Go back a level.
1	Applications → OPTIONS		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
					Delete	Delete one or more devices.

According to equipment



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications i-Cockpit Amplify 4 Relax 5 Boost OR i-Cockpit Amplify 4 Relax 5 Boost		Settings		Fragrance	Select a fragrance.
					Lighting	Adjust the intensity of the ambience lighting.
					Ambience	Adjust the sound ambience.
					Driver massage	Select and configure the driver massage.
					Passenger Massage	Select and configure the passenger massage.
					Dynamic	Set the driving mode.
				9	Save settings	Save the settings.
				10	Reset the mode	Reset the ambience parameters.
				←		Confirm the selections and settings.
		×	Deactivate			Deactivate the "i-Cockpit Amplify function.
			Profile management	11	Profile 1	Configure the profiles.
				12	Profile 2	
				13	Profile 3	
				14	Common profile	
				←		Save the settings.
		←				Confirm the selections and settings.



Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.

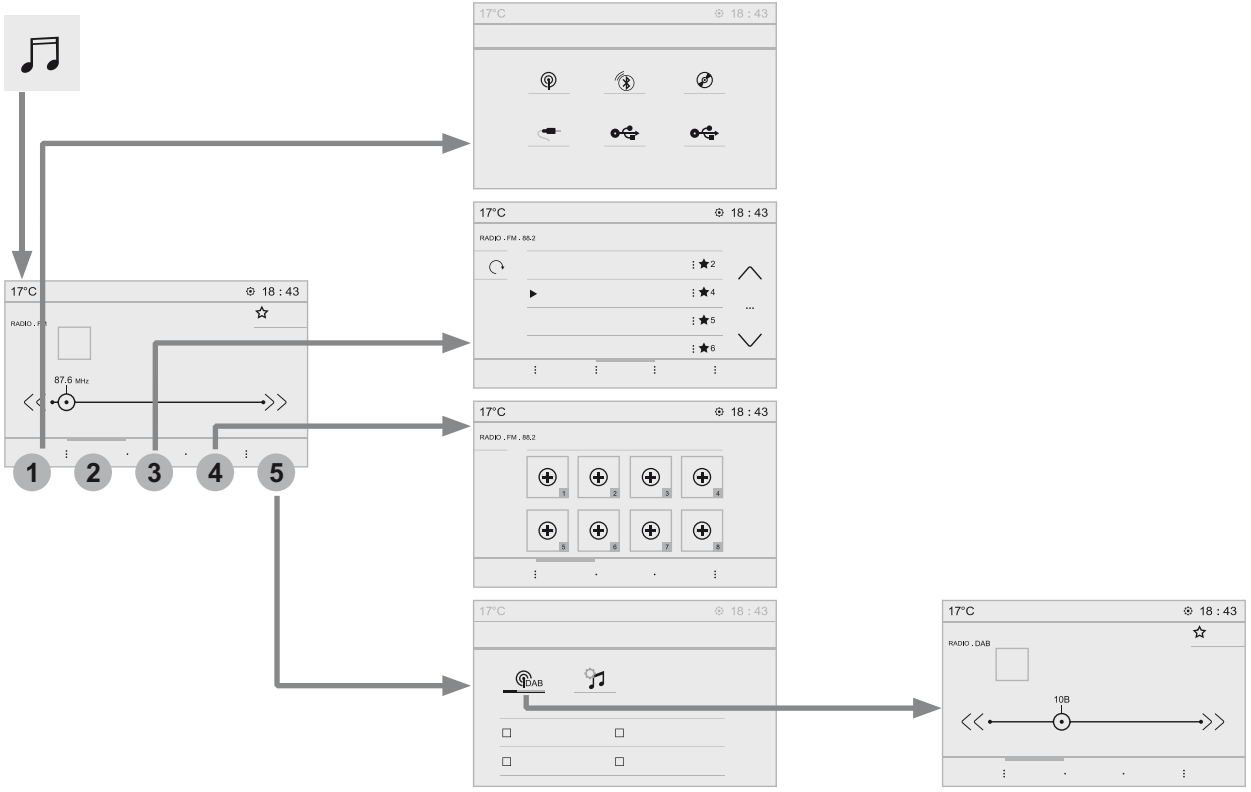


Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Radio Media

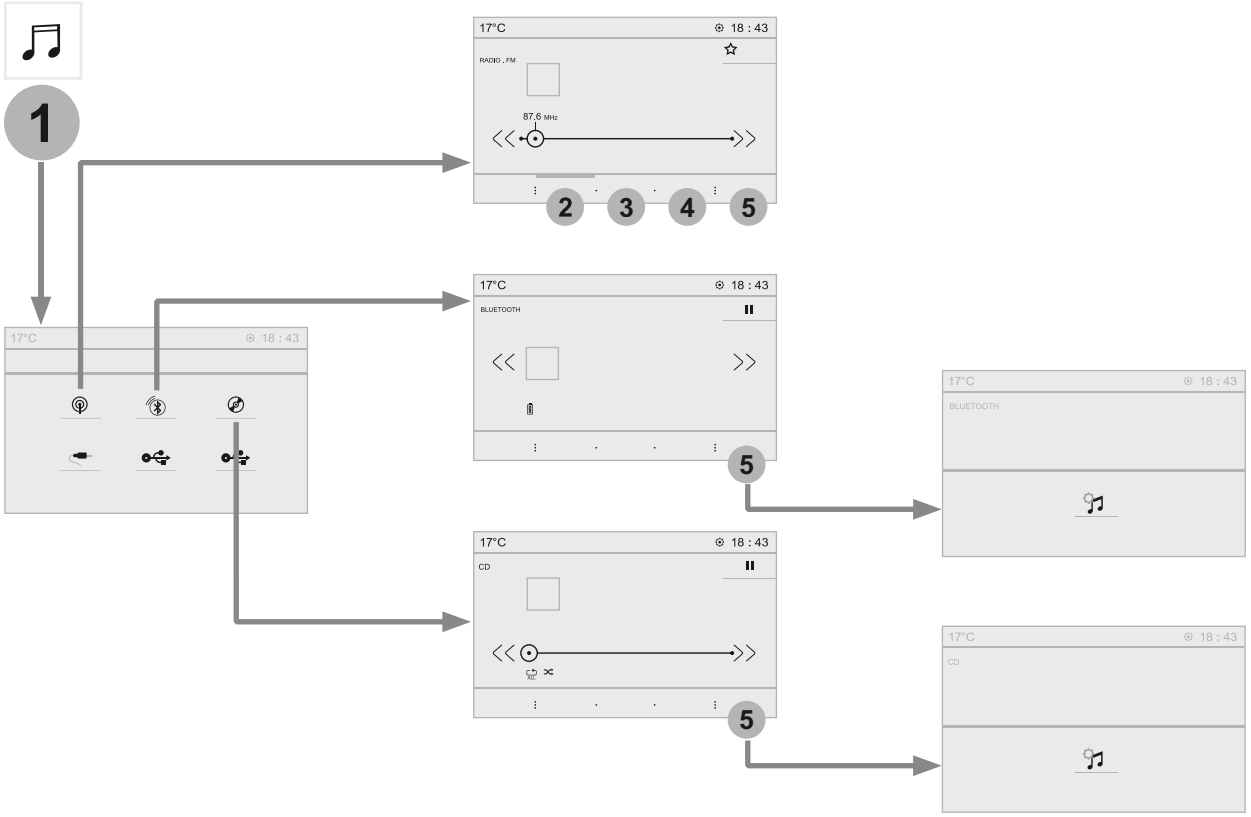
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



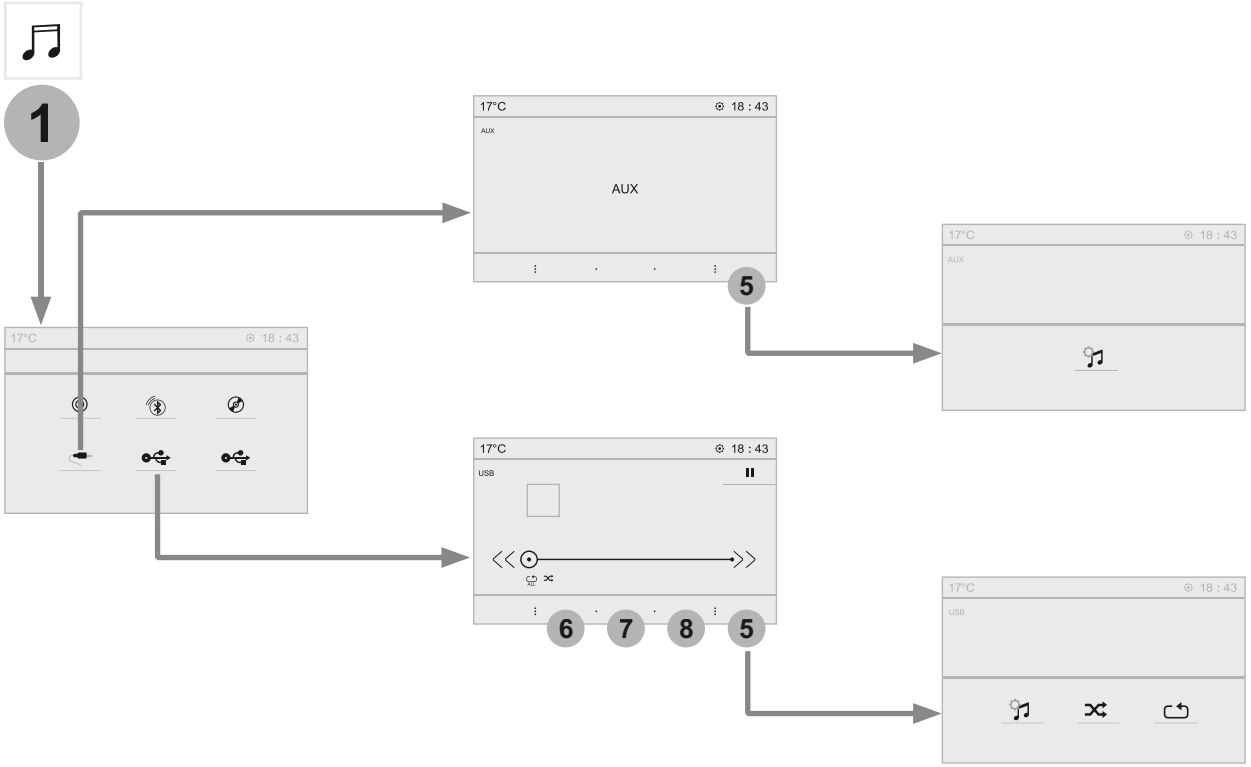
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
1	Radio Media → SOURCES		Radio	Select change of source.
			Bluetooth	
			CD	
			AUX	
			USB	
			iPod	
2	Radio Media → Frequency		FM / DAB / AM	Display the current radio station.
3	Radio Media → List			Update the list according to the stations received.
			Preset	Make a short press to preset the station.
4	Radio Media → Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
5	Radio Media → OPTIONS		AM band / DAB band / FM band	Press the Band button to change waveband.
			Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
			News	Activate or deactivate the options.
			TA	
			RDS	
			FM-DAB Follow-up	
MHz KHz	Radio Media → 87.5 MHz			Enter a frequency of the FM and AM bands on the virtual keypad.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Radio	2	Frequency			Display the current radio station.
		3	List			Display the list of stations received.
		4	Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
		5	OPTIONS	FM	FM band / DAB band / AM band	Press the band button to change band.
					Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
				☑	News	Activate or deactivate the options.
				☑	TA	
				☑	RDS	
				☑	FM-DAB Follow-up	
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Bluetooth	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → CD					Display the details of the music being played.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → AUX	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → USB	6	Player			Display the details of the music being played.
		7	Tracks list			Display the current selection.
		8	Library			Display the music library.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

> **!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.



Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**News**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TAalert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

5

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

On the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.

On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".



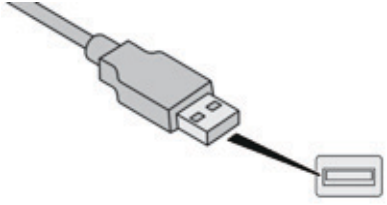
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth Streaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav, .wma, .aac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).

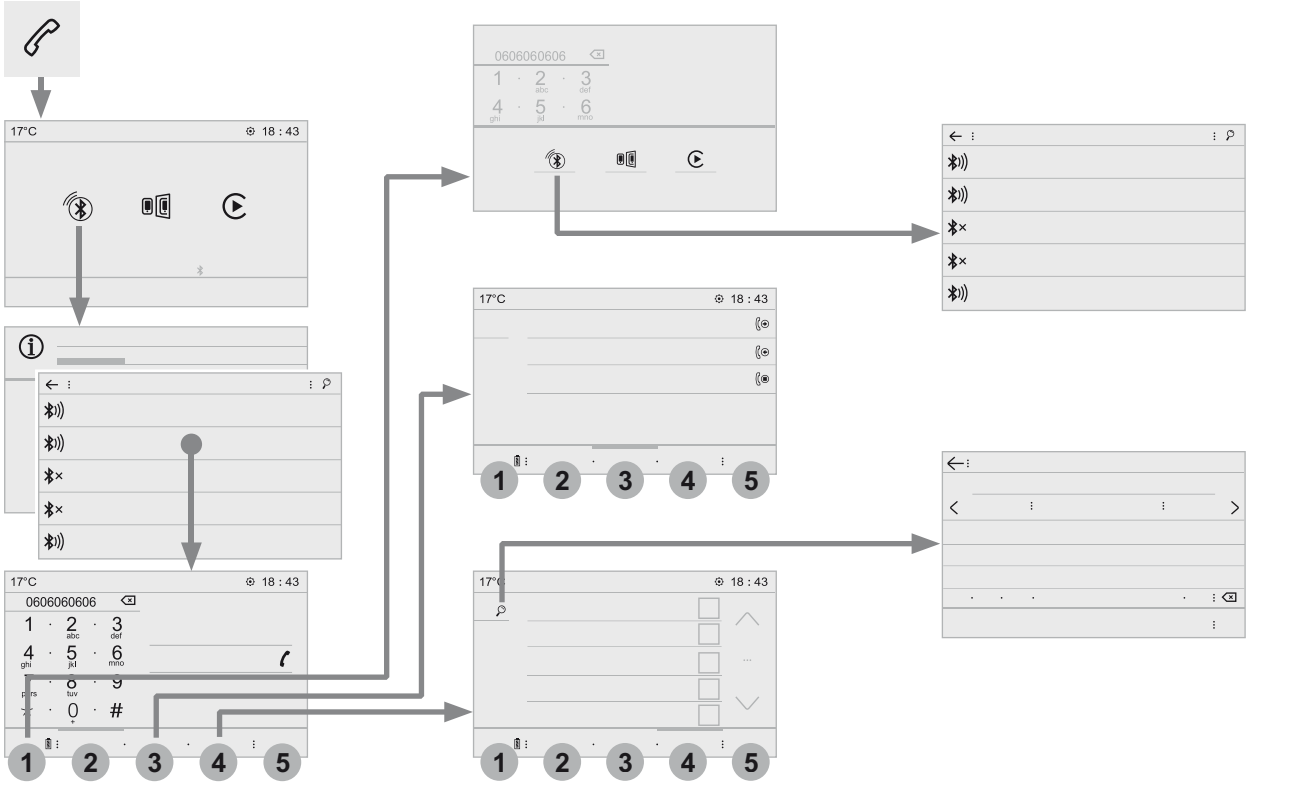
It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

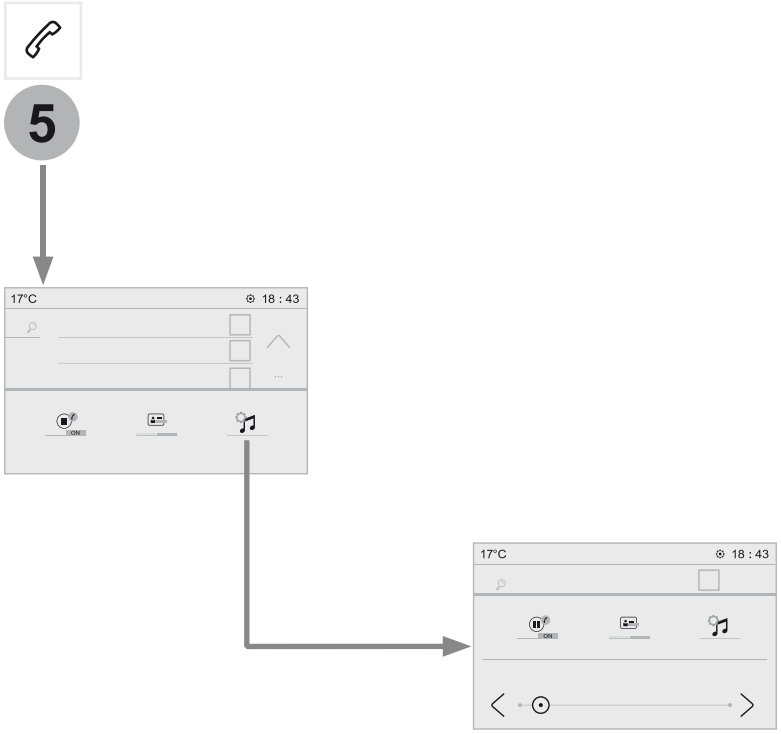
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



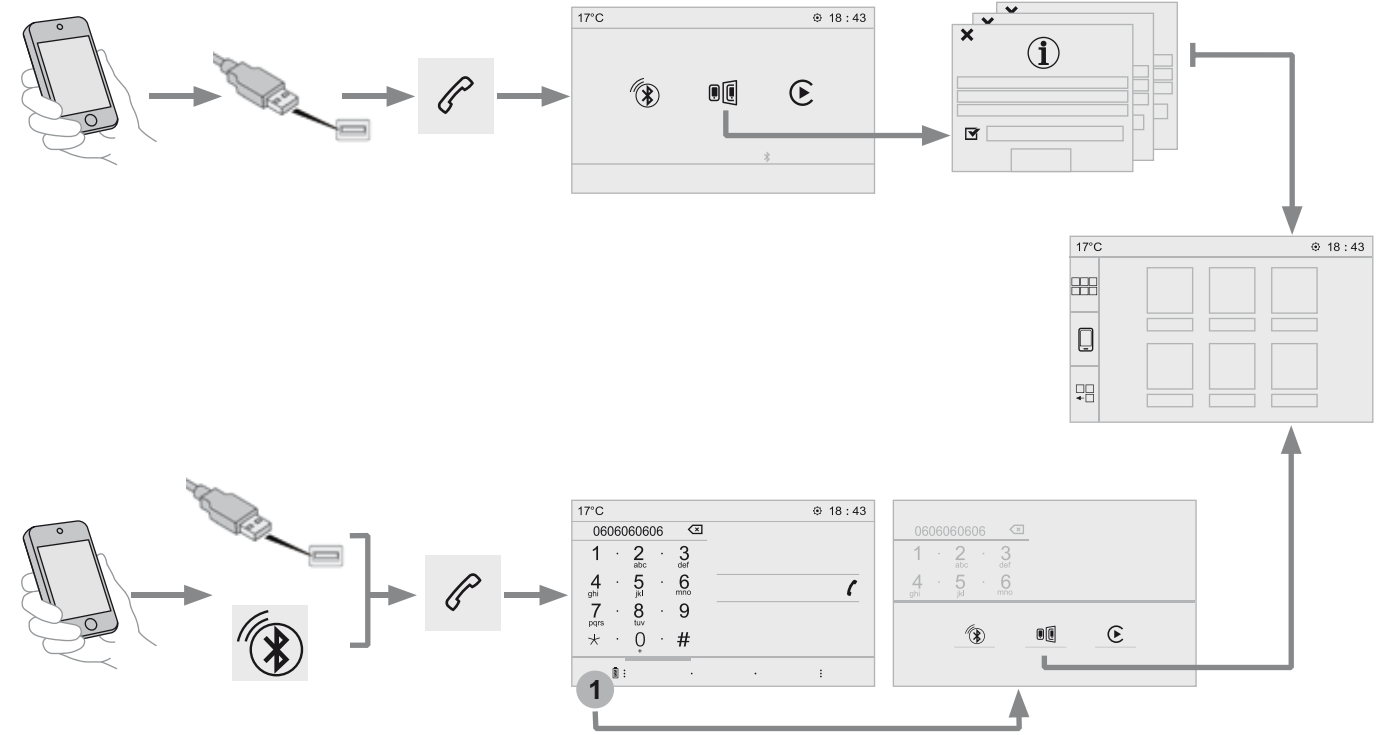
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
1	Telephone → Bluetooth search → PHONE		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
					Delete	Delete one or more devices.
			MirrorLink			Open the MirrorLink function.
			CarPlay			Open the CarPlay function.
2	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Keypad					Enter a telephone number.
3	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Recent calls		All			View the calls according to the presentation selected. Select a contact to make the call.
			Outgoing			
			Missed			
			Incoming			
4	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Contacts		Search		Confirm	Search for a contact in the contacts directory.
			Telephone			Go to the details of the contact sheet.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ On hold (auto)		ON - OFF	Activate or deactivate the automatic placing on hold of the current conversation.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Sort contacts by name Sort contacts by first name			Sort the contacts by Surname-first name or First name-surname.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Ring volume			Adjust the volume of the ringtone.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that "Bluetooth®" be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



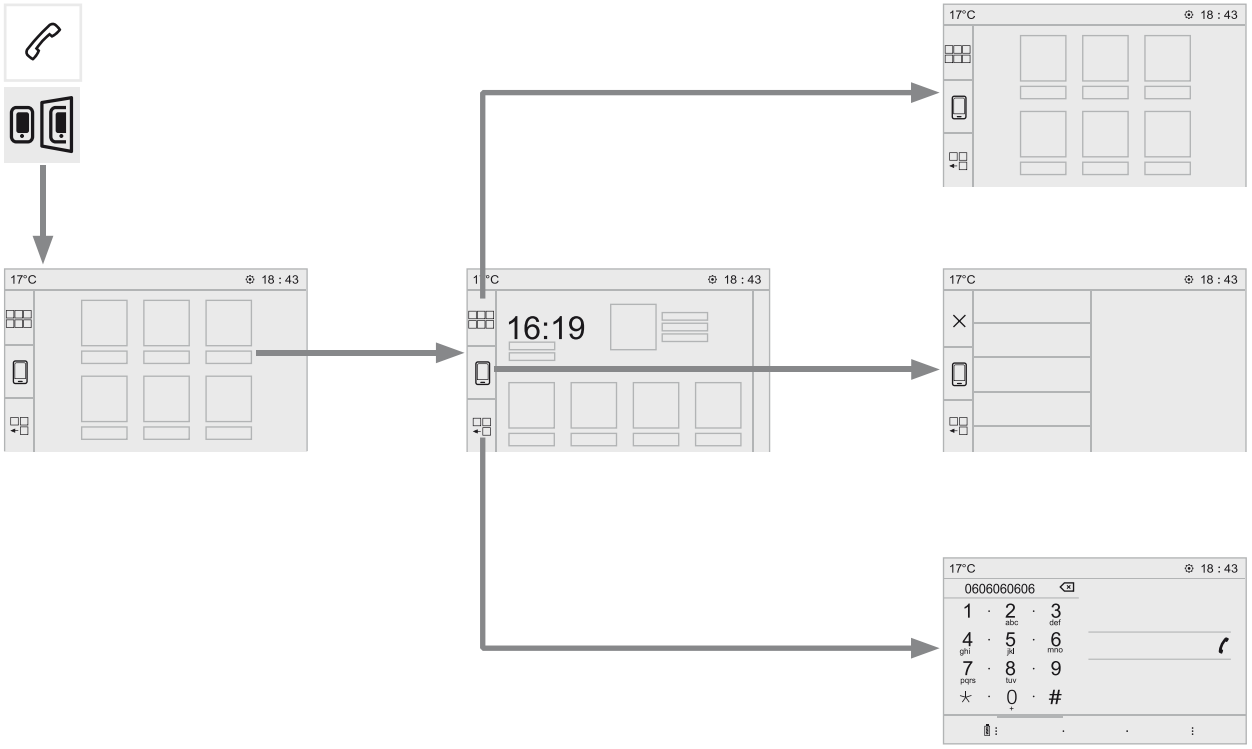
Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

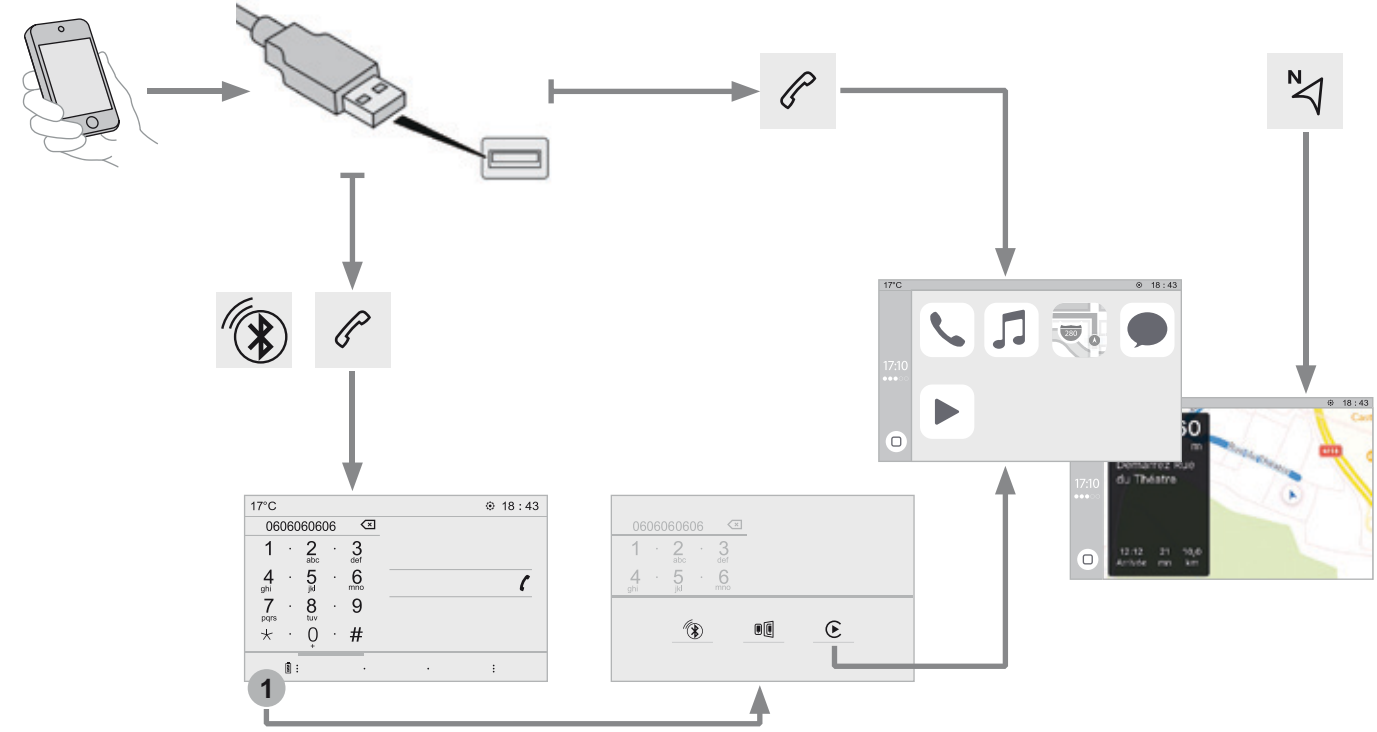
i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
					Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Telephone** ↓ **MirrorLink™**				Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
					Go to the primary page of the "Telephone" menu.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.


Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.


Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.


Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".


Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.



Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

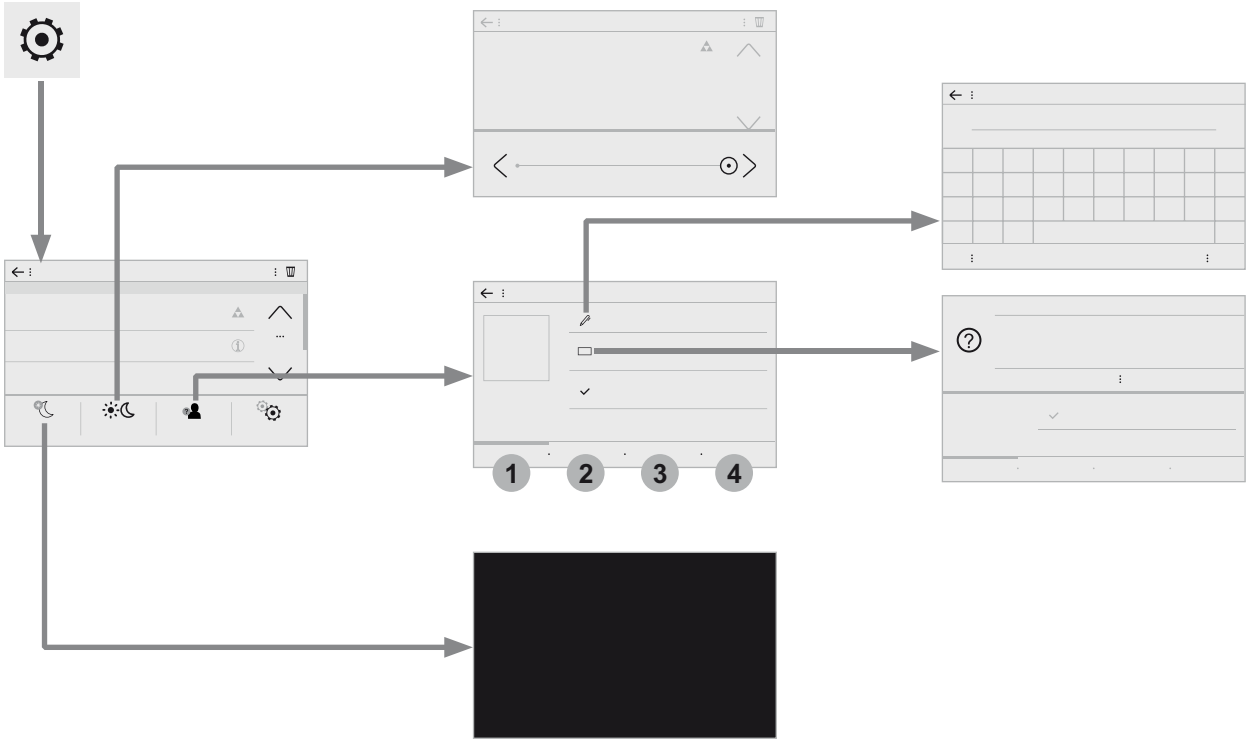


Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

According to version / according to equipment

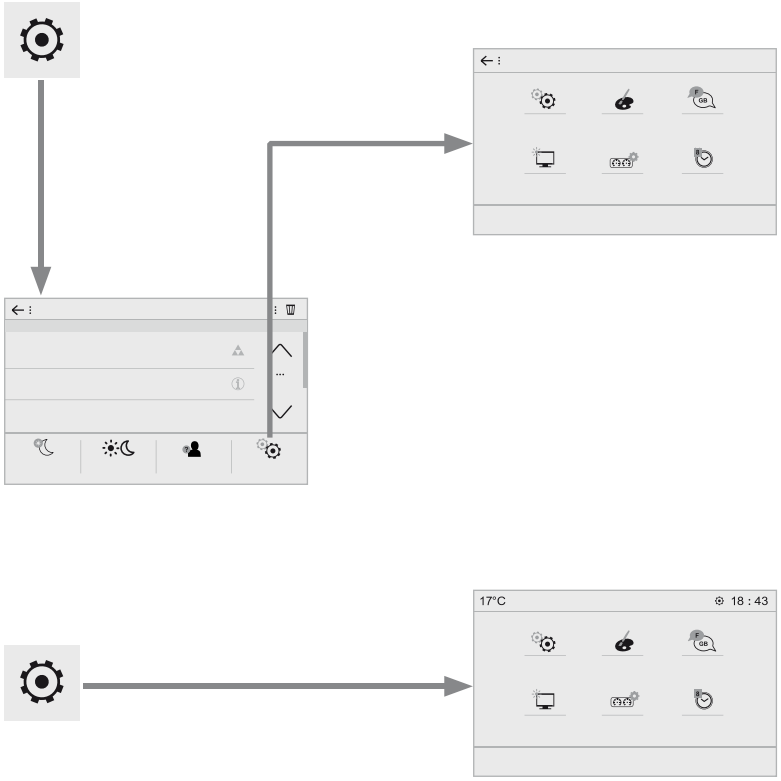
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings ↓ Brightness		Ambience			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
	Settings ↓ Profiles	1	Profile 1			Select a profile.
		2	Profile 2			
		3	Profile 3			
		4	Common profile			
			Name:		Profile name modification	Configure the profiles.
			Reset the profile		Yes / No	
		✔	Profile activated			Activate/deactivate the profile selected.
						Save the settings.
	Settings ↓ Dark					Function which switches off the lit display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.

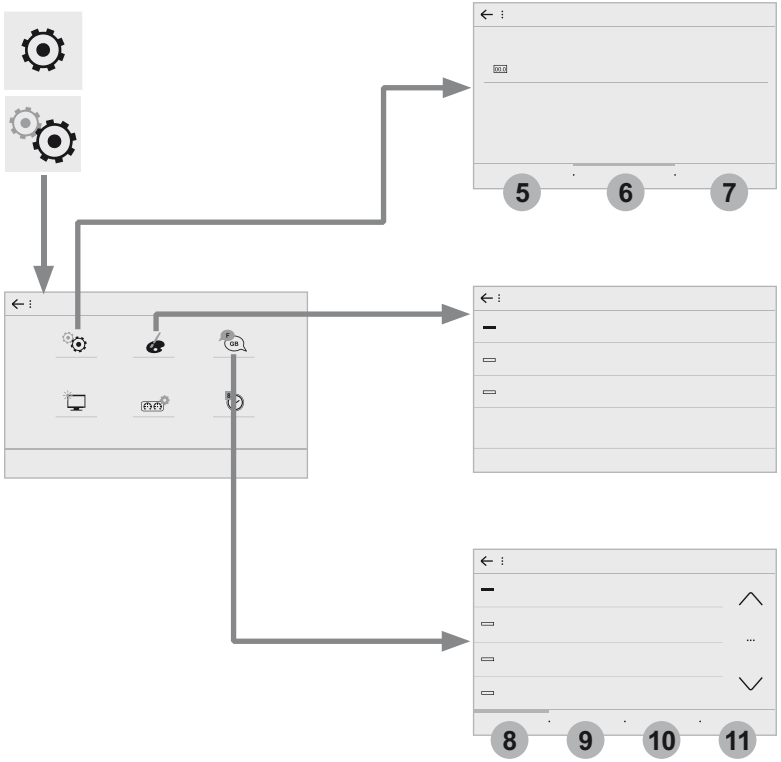
According to equipment

Level 1	Level 2

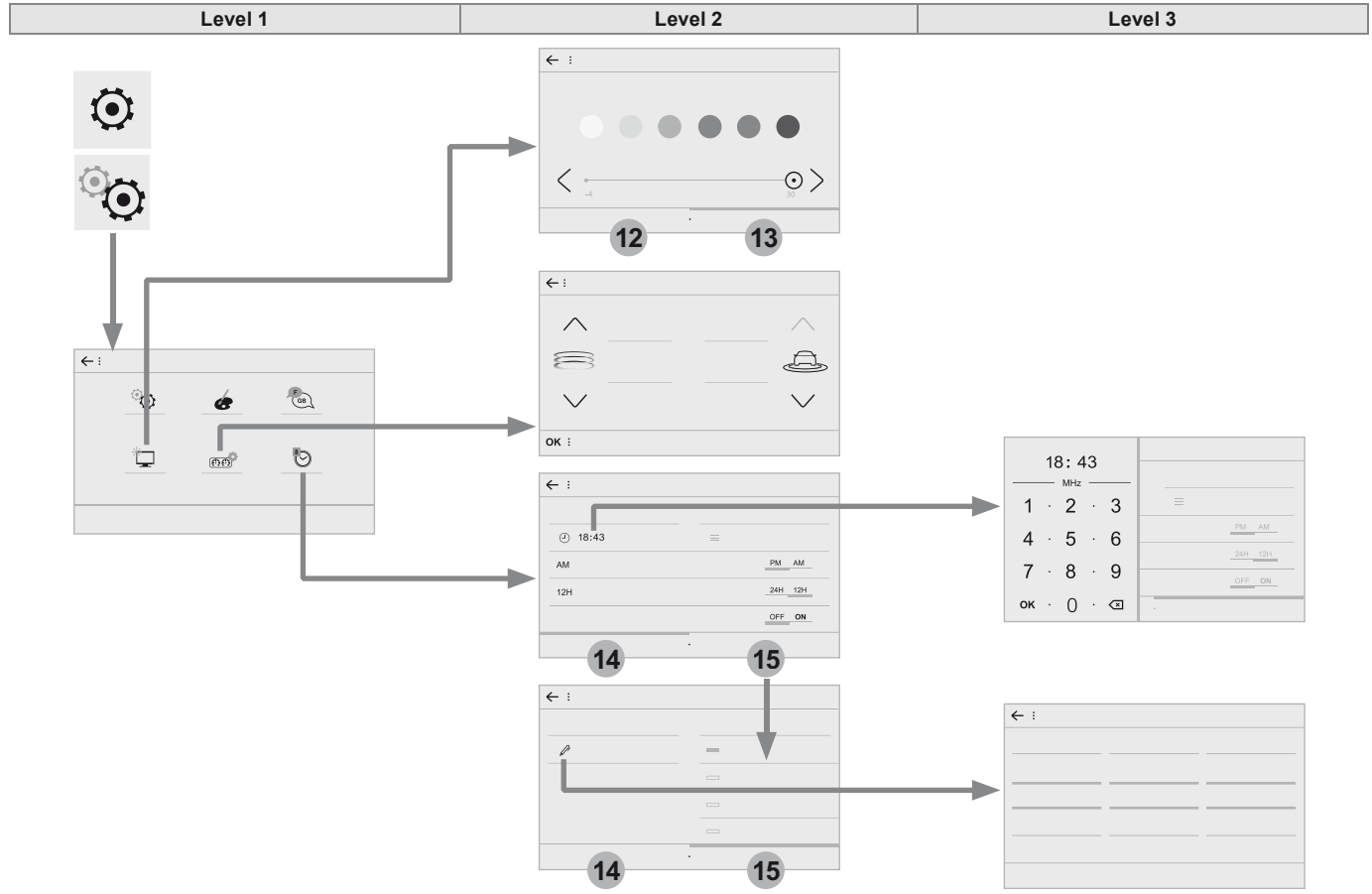


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ Configuration		**System configuration**	Configure certain system parameters.
			Ambience	Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
			Language	Select the display language for the the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Screen configuration	Set the configuration of the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Customization	Configure the instrument panel for a personalised display.
			Date and time	Set the date and time and select the display format.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → System configuration	5	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Configure the display units for the distance, consumption and temperature.
					Temperatures	
		6	Factory settings		Reset	Restore the original settings.
		7	System info		View	Consult the version of the different modules installed in the system.
						Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Ambience					Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
						
						
						Confirm the selection and start the change of ambience.
	Settings → Configuration → Language	8	All			Select the display language for the screen and/or the instrument panel.
		9	Europe			
		10	Asia			
		11	America			
						Save the parameter.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
12
13
OK
18:43
AM
12H
PM AM
24H 12H
OFF ON
14
15
18: 43
MHz
1 · 2 · 3
4 · 5 · 6
7 · 8 · 9
OK · 0 ·
14
15

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → Screen configuration	12	Brightness			Select the display brightness level.
		13	Animation	☑	Automatic scrolling	Activate or deactivate the parameters.
				☑	Animated transitions	
		←				Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Temperature conditioning		Customization			Choose and select the display information required.
		OK	Confirm			Confirm the selections.
	Settings → Configuration → Date and time	14	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Set the time zone.
				—	AM	Select the display format.
				—	12h	
				—	GPS Synchronisation	Activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the satellites.
				←		Save the settings.
		15	Date		Date	Set the date and select the display format.
					Setting the date	
				←		Save the settings.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".



Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust the brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

5 Press "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

6 Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

7 Press "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

12 Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to set the brightness of the screen and/or instrument panel (according to version).

13 Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with satellites (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

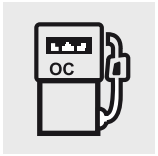
Česky [Czech]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbHerklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH seadme "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaruoja, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jiddikjara li dan "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-ħtigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott,Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozom, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadcza, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH yfir því að "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

ECE type-approval certificate No. is 057902 (concerning the type-approval of an electric/electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)	
emitted frequency range and power: Frequency band Radiated Power [EIRP] Hints / Restriction 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz WiFi < 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth < 2,6 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 & A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.	
Brazil	 "Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."
Canada	***This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:*** ***(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and*** ***(2) this device must accept any interference received,*** ***including interference that may cause undesired operation.***
Japan	R= Radio Type Approval Number: BBBBBBBBBB T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: X JJ-5NNN AAA
Mexico	**NOM-121-SCT1-2009** **La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:** **(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y** **(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.**
South Korea	해당 무선 설비는 운용 중 전파혼신 가능성이 있음.
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 1. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。
USA / Canada	This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by (Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH) may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.

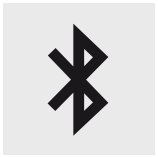
Bluetooth® audio system

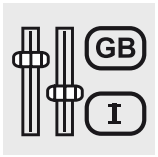












Contents

First steps	154
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	155
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	156
Menus	157
Radio	158
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	160
Media	162
Telephone	167
Frequently asked questions	172

The different functions and adjustments described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On / Off
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC

Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation / Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

1

Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a station.



Radio:
Automatic step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.



Radio:
Manual step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Select previous / next MP3 track.
Media:
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU

Access to main menu.

TA

Activate / Deactivate TA (traffic announcements)
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND

Select waveband: FM / DAB / AM.

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone calls:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

MENU

Access to the main menu.

Increase volume.

Mute / Restore sound.

Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.



"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, End call.



"**Trip computer**".



"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, ...



"Connections": Manage connections, search for devices.



"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle settings, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search for radio stations.

▲ ▼ Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**RDS**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message.
When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA — Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA traffic announcements. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

TA — Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ — Select or deselect categories.

OK — Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

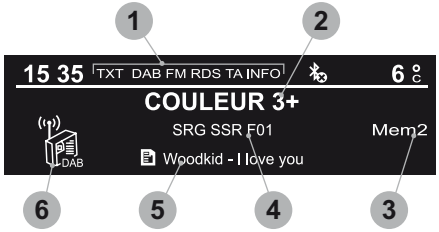
OK — With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ — Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

According to version

> If the current "DAB" radio station is not available on "FM", "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Display options:
if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display the name of the current radio station.

3 Preset radio station, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

4 Display the name of the multiplex service being used.

5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

> When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

> Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
> The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, ...)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex service".

TA Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

DAB / FM tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if there is one).
When "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.


Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.


Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

Media

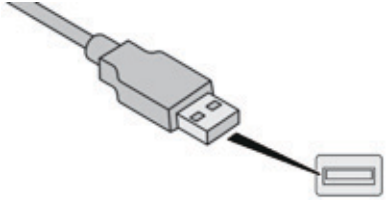
USB port

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on version.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes on the first connection. Reducing the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.



Insert a USB memory stick into the USB port or connect a USB peripheral device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

i While connected by USB, the portable device may be charged automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ Press this button to select the play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Choose by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"*.

OK

Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK

Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Press one of these buttons to go to the next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Jack auxiliary (AUX) socket



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, …) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or fast back.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC /

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).

SRC /

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE** * button.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls**. Contextual information may be displayed in the screen.

* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
** If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with .mp3, .wma, .wav and .aac file extensions, with a bit rate of of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
Other file types (mp4, ...) may be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended when recording.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3, .wma, .wav, .cbr, .vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (.mp4, ...) can be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

File names should have less than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g.: " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your a Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the v**ehicle stationary** and the ignition on

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Refer to the instructions for your telephone and to your service provider for the services available to you.

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.



Select the "**Connections**" menu.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Search for a Bluetooth device**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), check that the code displayed in the system and the telephone is the same and confirm.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**"*, "**Calls list**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

i Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands-free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Indicates that a device is connected.

A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates the audio streaming profile.

Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Then select and confirm:
- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.



During a call, press one of the buttons for more than 2 seconds.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth, you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

Hang up



In the contextual menu, select "**End call**" to end the call.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone mode



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Dual call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Directory

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.

Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

Confirm with **OK**.

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault in the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is broken.	The state of charge of the device may be too low.	Charge the battery of the portable device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The sound from the CD is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert a good quality CD and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (base, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call your voicemail box, via the telephone menu, using the number supplied by your service provider.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system **and** of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

Optional Digital tuner (DAB) (RU-9472 variant has DAB / RU9475 does not have DAB)



ADDENDUM TO USER GUIDE



PEUGEOT 3008

PEUGEOT



On-line user guide

Select one of the following means of access to view your user guide online...

Find your user guide on the Peugeot website, under "MyPeugeot".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Visiting the user guide online also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



Scan this QR code to access your user guide directly.

If the "MyPeugeot" section is not available on the Peugeot website for your country, you can find your user guide at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the publication period of your user guide corresponding to the date your vehicle went into circulation.

Interior

front seats 90-97
Multipoint massages 98
Seatbelts 168-171

Glove box 120
Front passenger airbag disabling 174, 178-181

Rear seats 130-132
Rear equipment 133-134
- 12 V point
- 230 V / 50 Hz point
- Rear armrest
- Ski door

Front equipment 119-127
- USB point
- 12 V point
- Front armrest
- Floor mat

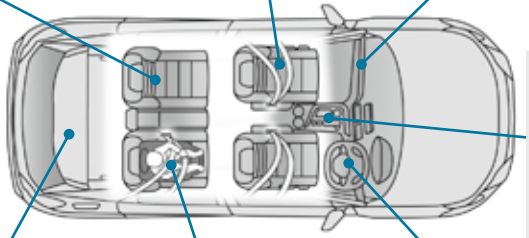
Wireless charger 122-123
Fragrance diffuser 125-126

Boot fittings 135-140
- Luggage space
- 12 V point
- Boot lighting
- Mobile boot floor
- Tie-down rings
- Retaining net for high loads

Warning triangle 307
Tool kit 309-311
Temporary tyre repair kit 312-316
Spare wheel 317-322

Airbags 172-176

Child seats 177-192
ISOFIX fastenings 186-189
i-Size child seats 190-191



Driver's cab

Privacy drape / Sunroof 84-87
Ceiling lights 128
Ambient lighting 129
Emergency or assistance call 158-159
Belt indicator display / front passenger airbag 169-170, 174
Inside mirror 101

Touch screen 48-53
Function i-Cockpit Amplify 102-103
Distress signal 157

Changing / Replacing a fuse 331
Opening the bonnet 294

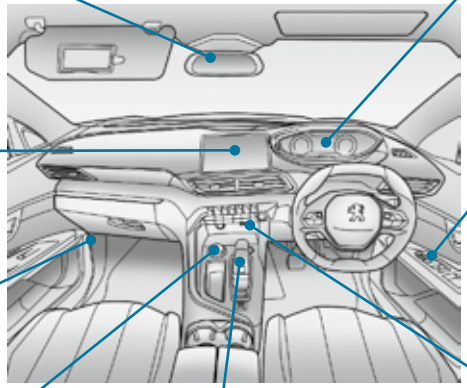
Intruder detection alarm/ Starting with knob START/STOP 200-202
Advanced Grip Control 164-165
Hill Assist Descent Control 166-167

Manual gearbox 210
Automatic gearbox 211-215
Electric parking brake 203-209

Digital instrument panel 12-15
Warning lamps 16-31
Indicators 32-40
Control knobs 40-42
- Daily odometer/CHECK
- Dimmer control/ambient lighting

Outside mirrors 99-100
Window winder 82-83

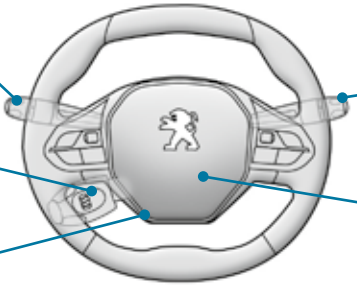
Heating / Ventilation 104-105
Monozone semi-automatic air conditioning 108-110
Bizone automatic air conditioning 111-115
Front demisting/defrosting 116
Rear demisting/defrosting 118
Heated seats 97



Driver's cab

Embedded command steering wheel

Lighting controls	141-144, 146-150
Speed memorisation	226
Speed limit recognition	227-230
Speed limiting device	231-233
Speed regulator	234-237
Dynamic cruise control with Stop function	238-246
Steering wheel adjustment	99



Wiper controls	152-155
Trip computer	43-44
Dynamic pack	217
Horn	157

Lateral control bar

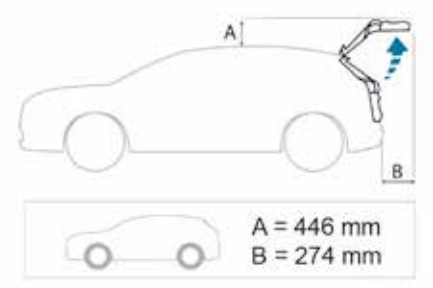


Unlocking system - Opening/closing of the hands free hatchback	76-81
Programmable heating	Addition
Headlamp main beam setting	145
Interior monitoring alarm	70-73
Childproof locks	194

Hands-free tailgate

General points

Activation and deactivation of the motorised tailgate function is done in the vehicle settings menu.
Movement requests of the tailgate should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.



! Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



! Do not insert your finger in the motorised tailgate locking system - Risk of serious injury!

Safety anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees to allow the obstacle to be cleared.
Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:
- ensure that there is no person close to the rear of the vehicle,
- watch the activity of your passengers, particularly any children.

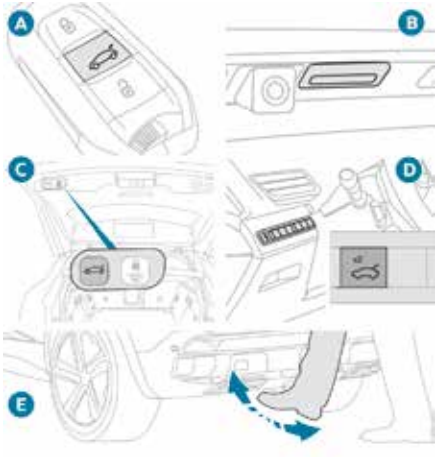
Bicycle carrier / Towbar

The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.
When installing a bicycle carrier on a towbar with connection of a cable to the towbar socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.
If using a towbar or bicycle carrier not recommended by PEUGEOT, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Motorised operation

Activation / deactivation of the motorised operation of the tailgate is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.



There are several ways of operating the motorised tailgate:

A. using the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system,
B. using the exterior control on the tailgate,
C. using the interior tailgate control,
D. using the control on the dashboard,
E. using the "hands-free access" procedure below the rear bumper.

Opening / Closing

☞ Press and hold the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

☞ Press the exterior control **B** of the tailgate with the electronic key on your person.

or

☞ Press the interior tailgate control **C** (closing only).

or

☞ Press control **D** on the dashboard twice repeatedly.

or

☞ With the electronic key on you, use the "hands-free" access **E** by performing a "kicking" movement below the rear bumper.

The command is confirmed by an audible signal.

The tailgate opens, either completely by

default, or to the position memorised beforehand.
If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate.
The request to open the tailgate with one of the controls **A**, **B** or **E** enables you to unlock the vehicle or the tailgate alone beforehand, if selective unlocking of the boot is activated.
Closing the tailgate with the "hands-free" access function enables you to lock the vehicle.

At any point, It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate.
Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement in progress.
Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again resumes the movement.

Hands-Free Access

Activation and deactivation of the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" system is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.

Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the quick foot movement.
Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot - Risk of burns!

Automatic locking using "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function



To activate automatic locking of the vehicle when closing the tailgate using the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function:



☞ Press this button. The indicator lamp will light up.
Pressing this button again deactivates the function. The indicator lamp turns off.

Memorising an opening position

To limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:

- ☞ open the tailgate to the desired position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Memorisation of the maximum opening position of the tailgate is confirmed by an audible signal.

To cancel the memorised position:

- ☞ stop the tailgate in an intermediate position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Cancellation of the memorised position is confirmed by an audible signal.

Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.
The tailgate must be immobile.
When opening and closing a motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

Repeatedly opening and closing of the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.
Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Reinitialising the motorised tailgate

This operation is necessary where there is no movement - after detection of an obstacle, connecting or recharging the battery, etc.

- ☞ Open the tailgate manually, if necessary.
- ☞ Fully close the tailgate manually.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Precautions in use

In wintry conditions
In the event of an accumulation of snow on the tailgate, clear the snow before commanding a motorised opening of the tailgate.
The formation of ice can block the tailgate and prevent its opening: wait until the ice melts with the heating of the passenger compartment.

When washing
When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

Recommendations related to the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function

If several kicking movements to operate the tailgate have no effect, wait a few seconds before trying again.

The function automatically deactivates in heavy rain or following a build-up of snow.

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic pollution (smartphone etc.).

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

The function may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly if:

- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,
- you are washing your vehicle,
- your vehicle is being serviced,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the sensor zone or deactivate the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function.

Programmable heating

The programmable heating operates independently from the engine.
With the engine off, it preheats the coolant circuit to ensure optimal engine operating temperature as soon as it is started up.
The programmable heating is switched on by the long range remote control. It may be immediate or deferred thanks to a programming function.



Always switch off the programmable heating when refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.
The programmable heating is powered by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, ensure that the remaining quantity of fuel is sufficient. If the fuel tank is in its reserve, we strongly recommend you do not programme the heating.
To avoid the risks of intoxication or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which are not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - risk of fire!

The volumetric alarm movement detector may be disrupted by the programmable heating air flows when it is operating.
To avoid any untimely triggering of the alarm when using the programmable heating, it is advisable that the volumetric monitoring is deactivated.

Adapting the programmable heating enables you to use it to preheat the passenger compartment of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Presentation

Remote control



The heating programming remote control has the following buttons and displays:

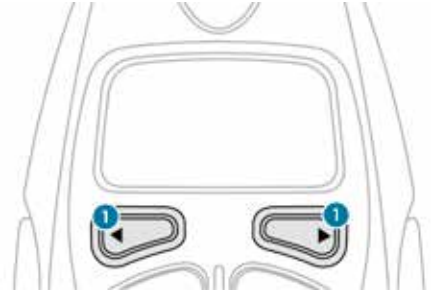
1. Buttons for functions scroll-down menu.
2. Function symbols:
   clock, temperature, operating time, programmed time, heater operation, heating management.
3. Digital displays:
   time, temperature, operating time, programmed time or heating level.
4. Off button.
5. On button.

Operating indicator light



lit up: deferred programmed start-up.
flashing: heating on.
turned off: heating off.

Function display



☞ Press button **1** several times to display the functions.

The first press on the left or right button displays the time.
Then, the left button is used to scroll to the programmed time then the heating level ("**C1**" to "**C5**").
The right button is used to scroll to the passenger compartment temperature then the heater operating time when immediately switched on.

The passenger compartment temperature information is only available when the engine is off.

Setting the time



☞ After having displayed the time, using button **1**, press on buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol will flash.

☞ Set the time with button **1**.
☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save it.



This symbol will be displayed.

Immediate switching on



☞ Press on button **5** until the message "**OK**" appears.
When the signal has been received, the message "**OK**" is displayed along with the operating time.

The heater starts and this symbol is displayed.

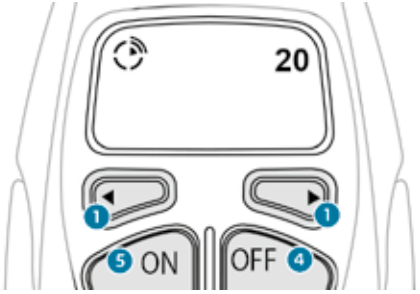
This indicator light flashes during heating.

☞ To deactivate the function, press on button **4** until the message "**OK**" appears.

This symbol and the indicator light will turn off.

i During these operations, if the message "**FAIL**" appears, it means that the signal has not been received. Follow the procedure again after having changed position.

Adjusting the operating time



☞ Press on button **1** to display the operating time

This symbol will be displayed.

☞ After having displayed the operating time, press on buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.

This symbol will flash.

☞ Adjust the time by pressing on the buttons **1**: by 10 min increment and maximum value of 30 mins.

☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save the operating time.



This symbol will be displayed.

The factory value setting is 30 minutes.

Deferred switching on

You must programme your start time for the system to automatically calculate the optimal time to start the heater.



Programming the start time

☞ Press on button **1** to display the programming time.



This symbol will be displayed.

☞ After having displayed the programming time, press on buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol will flash.

☞ Set the time by pressing on button **1**.
☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save it.



This symbol will be displayed.

Activation / Deactivation

☞ After having displayed the programming time using button **1**, press on button **5** until the message "**OK**" appears.



When the signal has been received, the message "**OK**" is displayed along with this symbol.



This indicator lights up until the heater starts.



This symbol is displayed when the heater starts.

HTM: Heat Thermo Management

☞ To deactivate the programming, press on button **4** until the message "**OK**" appears.



This symbol will disappear.

During these operations, if the message "**FAIL**" appears, it means that the signal has not been received. Follow the procedure again after having changed position.

Stopping the heating

☞ Press button **5**.



This symbol will remain displayed.



This indicator light turns off.

Changing the heating level

The system has 5 heating levels: **C1** (lowest level) to **C5** (highest level).

☞ After having displayed the heating level using button **1**, press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5**.
The letter "**C**" will flash.

☞ Adjust the heating level by pressing on button **1**.

☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save the selected level.
The letter "**C**" will be displayed.

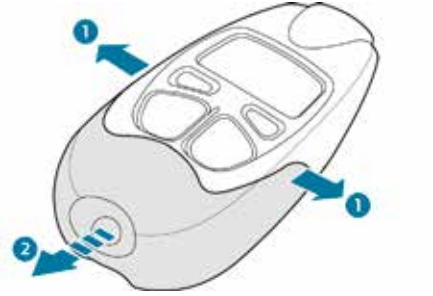
The presets are replaced by the new entries. The programmed times are memorised until the next change.
When the start time is activated, it is not possible to change the heating level. You must first deactivate the start time.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the programmable heating, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing the battery

The remote control is powered by a 6V-28L battery which is provided.
Information on the screen indicates when this battery needs to be changed.



- ☞ Unclip the case.
- ☞ Replace the battery observing the polarities.
- ☞ Reset the remote control.

Do not throw away used batteries, take them to an approved collection point.

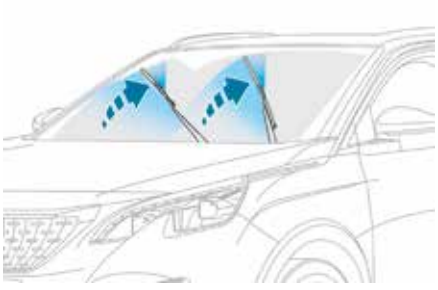
Resetting the remote control

If the battery is disconnected or when changing the battery, the remote control must be reset.

- ☞ After turning on the power, within the next 5 seconds, press button **4** for 1 second.
  If the operation is successful, the message "**OK**" will be displayed on the remote control's screen.
  If there is a fault, the message "**FAIL**" will appear.
- ☞ Start the operation again.

Wiper control stalk

Windscreen wash



☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you. The windscreen wash and then the wiper will operate for a fixed period.

The windscreen wash includes a wiper blade system with integral washer jets. The screenwash fluid is sprayed from along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid. In some cases, depending on the composition or the colour of the liquid and the outside lighting, the liquid spray may be hardly perceptible.

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the windscreen washer if the windscreen washer reservoir is empty. Only operate the windscreen washer if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use windscreen washer fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

Trailer stability assist

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability programme (ESC) must not have any faults.
Between 36 and 100 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detects swaying movements in the trailer, it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of the indicator lamp in the instrument panel and activation of the brake lights.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle.
For advice on driving safely when **Towing a trailer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving conditions, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It must not encourage the driver to take additional risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or drive at too high a speed.
In certain cases, the swaying of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden swaying of the trailer.

Consultez la législation en vigueur dans votre pays, avant d'installer votre enfant à cette place.

“Rearwards-facing”



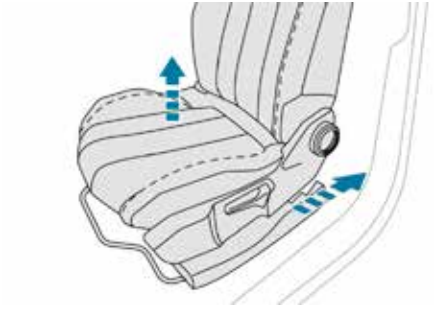
If a “rearwards-facing” child seat is installed in the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat in the maximum rear longitudinal position, which is the highest position, with the back straightened up.
The passenger airbag should be neutralised, otherwise **there is a danger that the child will be seriously injured or killed when the airbag opens**.

“Forward-facing”



If a “forward-facing” child seat is installed in the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat in the maximum rear longitudinal position, which is the highest position, with the back straightened up. Leave the passenger airbag active.

! Ensure that the seatbelt is taut.
For child seats with a stay, ensure that this has stable contact with the ground. If necessary adjust the passenger seat.



Passenger seat adjusted in the highest position and the maximum rear longitudinal position.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

! Never install a “rearwards-facing” child restraining system on a protected seat with an activated front airbag. This can cause death or serious injury to the child.





The warning label, located on each site of the passenger sun visor repeats this order.
In accordance with current regulations, you will find this warning in all the required languages in the following tables.

Passenger airbag OFF





i For more information on the **Airbags**, particularly on neutralising the front passenger airbag, please refer to the corresponding column.

Location of child seats attached with the seat belt

In accordance with European legislation, this table indicates the installation options for child seats fixed with the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** depending on the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat			**Front passenger airbag**	**Weight of the child**/ indicative age			
				Less than 13 kg (Groups 0 **(b)** and 0+ Up to around 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (Group 1) From around 1 to 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (Group 2) From around 3 to 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (Group 3) From around 6 to 10 years
Row 1 **(c)**	Passenger seat With vertical adjustment*		"OFF" deactivated	U	U	U	U
			"ON" activated	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 **(d)**	Rear seat behind the driver			U	U	U	U
	Rear seat behind the passenger			U	U	U	U
	Central rear seat **(e)**			U	U	U	U

* maximum vertical position.

U: Seat adapted to installation of a child seat attached with a seat belt and universal approved “rearward-facing” and/or “forward-facing”.

UF: Seat adapted to installation of a child seat attached with a seat belt and universal approved “rearward-facing”.

X: Seat not adapted to installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles with a seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and “car” beds cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

(c) Check the current legislation in your country before installing your child in this seat.

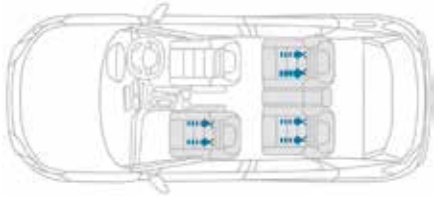
(d) To install a child seat in a rear seat rearward-facing or forward-facing, bring forward the front seat, then raise the back to allow enough space to the child seat and the child's legs.

(e) A child seat with stay should never be installed in this place.

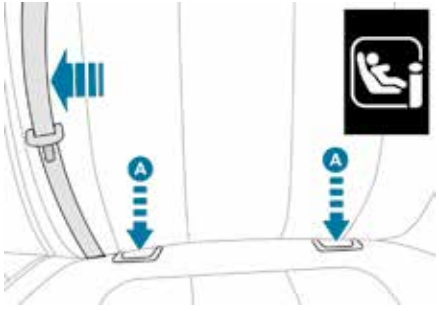
! Remove and arrange the headrest before installing a child seat with back to a passenger seat.
Replace the headrest once the child seat has been removed.

“ISOFIX” fastenings

Your vehicle has been approved according to the **latest** ISOFIX **regulations.**
The seats, shown below are equipped with regulation ISOFIX anchoring:



There are three rings for each seat:



- Two **A** rings located between the back and seat of the vehicle's, marked by a label.



- A B ring, located behind the seat and marked by a label called **Top Tether** to fasten the top strap.**Top Tether**

This ISOFIX fastening provides you with a reliable, solid and rapid assembly of the child seat in your vehicle.
ISOFIX child seats are equipped with two locks anchored to the two **A** rings.
Some seats also have a **top strap** attached to the **B** ring.

To see the ISOFIX seat installation options in your vehicle, check the summary table.

To attach the child seat to the **TOP TETHER:**

- Remove and arrange the head rest before installing the child seat in this place (replace it once the child seat has been removed),
- Pass the strap of the child seat behind the back of the seat by centring it between the gaps of the headrest pins,
- Fix the clip to the high strap of **B** ring
- Tighten the top strap.

When installing an ISOFIX child seat on the rear left of the bench seat, before fixing the seat, remove the central rear seat belt beforehand to the centre of the vehicle, so as not to hinder the operation of the belt.

Incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle will compromise the protection of the child in the event of collision.
Follow the assembly notes shown in the installation instructions delivered with the child seat.

Summary table for the location of i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats are equipped with two locks anchored to the two **A** rings.
These i-Size child seats also have:
- either a top strap attached to the **B** ring
- or a stay resting on the vehicle's floor, which is compatible with the i-Size approved seat

whose role is to prevent the child seat from toppling over in the event of collision.
For more information on **ISOFIX fastening** please refer to the corresponding column.

In accordance with European regulations, this table shows you the installation options for i-Size child seats for seats in the vehicle equipped with i-Size approved ISOFIX fastenings.

Seat			**Front passenger airbag**	**i-Size restraint system**
Row 1 **(a)**	Passenger seat		"OFF" deactivated	i-U
			"ON" activated	i-UF
Row 2	Rear seat behind the driver			i-U
	Rear seat behind the passenger			i-U
	Central rear seat			Non i-Size

i-U: suitable for “universal” category i-Size restraint systems facing forwards and backwards.

i-UF: suitable only for “universal” category i-Size restraint systems facing forwards.

X: seating place not suitable for “universal” category i-Size restraint systems.

(a) Check the current legislation in your country before installing a child in this seat.

! Remove and arrange the head rest before installing a child seat with back in a passenger seat.
Replace the headrest once the child seat has been removed.

Distance alert and Active Safety Brake

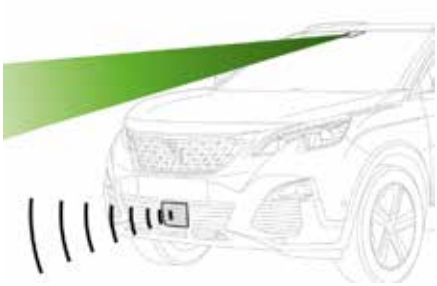


This system includes three functions:
- Distance alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

Distance alert: it warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.
Intelligent emergency braking assistance: it supplements the braking action taken by the driver if this is inadequate.
Active Safety Brake: it intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
If the driver fails to act, it contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.

Activation and operating conditions

The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen, and depending on the version, a radar located in the front bumpers.



The system is activated from about 4 mph (7 km/h) and is deactivated below about 3 mph (5 km/h).
It takes account of:
- registered vehicles running in the same direction or stationary,
- pedestrians in the traffic lane (bicycles, motorcycles, animals and objects on the road are not necessarily detected).

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.
This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Operating limits

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended:

- when towing a trailer,
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version),
- following impact damage to the windscreen close to the detection camera,
- if the front bumper has been damaged,
- if the brake lamps are not working.

! Because of limits in the operation of the system, it is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
Consequently, the driver must always remain attentive and able to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Distance alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.



Level 1: visual alert only, signalling that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operating conditions of the vehicle (on a curve, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the relevant moment.

Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: alert level 1 is never displayed when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.
The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu.
You can select one of three thresholds:

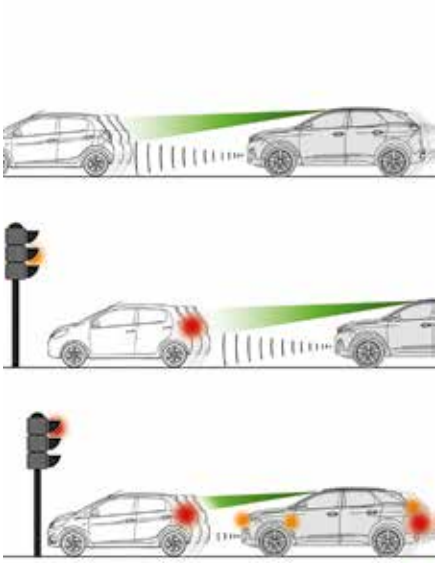
- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision with your vehicle where the driver fails to react.
Using a radar and a camera, depending on the version, this function acts on the vehicle's braking system.



If the camera and/or radar have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.



Important: if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you must take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to supplement or finish the automatic braking action.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

The point at which braking is triggered may be adjusted according to the reaction from the driver, such as movement of the steering wheel or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

With a manual gear box, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.
With an automatic gear box, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, maintain the brake pedal down to stop the vehicle from starting off again.

Specific conditions for operation

The vehicle's speed must be between 3 mph and 53 mph (5km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.
The vehicle's speed must not exceed 50 mph (80km/h) when a stopped vehicle is detected.
The vehicle's speed must not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
The ESC system must not be defective.
The CDS must not be deactivated.
All passengers seatbelts must be fastened.
Driving at steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Deactivation / Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start-up.
The system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the tell-tale lighting up, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Check that the sensors (camera and radar) are not covered by dirt, mud, frost, snow, etc.
If the fault persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The camera my be disrupted or not work in the following situations:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- obstruction of the camera or radar (mud, frost, snow, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.
Clean the front bumper, removing mud, snow, etc.

If the front bumper is to be repainted or retouched, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

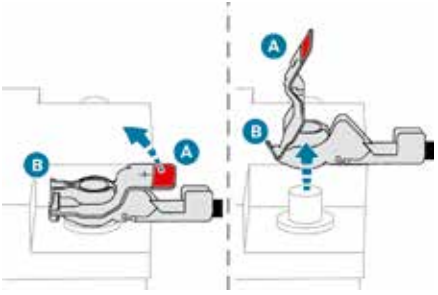
Before disconnecting the battery:

- close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, sunroof),
- switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

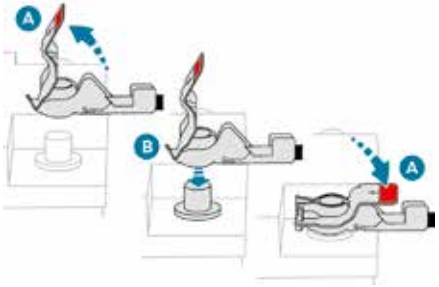
Rapid lock lug

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise palette **A** as much as possible to unlock clamp **B**.
- Remove clamp **B** by raising it.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise palette **A** as much as possible.
- Replace clamp **B** open on the **(+)** terminal
- Press clamp **B** up to the stop.
- Lower palette **A** to lock clamp **B**.

! Do not press too hard on the palette because if the clamp is badly positioned it will then be impossible to lock; restart the procedure.

After re-connection

After reconnecting the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to allow the electronic systems to initialise.

i For versions with right-hand drive, when the odometer reaches 100 km (65 miles), you should wait 15 minutes before starting the engine.

However, if slight perturbations persist after this, check with your PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When referring to the corresponding column, your should reinitialise some equipment such as:

- The remote control key or electronic key (depending on the version)
- The sunroof and its electric privacy drape
- The electric window winder
- The date and time
- The memorised radio stations

i During the trip following the initial starting of the engine, the Stop & Start may not be operational.
In this case, the function will only be available after the vehicle has been continuously immobile, the duration of which will depend on the ambient temperature and the battery charge state (up to around 8 hours)

Characteristics of engines and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are detailed on the vehicle's registration certificate, and in the sales documentation.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, according to the conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are stated in the registration certificate, and in the sales documentation.

These values are also shown on the manufacturer's nameplate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude. The recommended nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towbar (dismantlable with or without a tool).

GTW: Gross train weight

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. If the ambient temperature is above 37°C, limit the towed load.

Towing with a towing vehicle which is only slightly laden may negatively affect its handling.
Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.
With a towing vehicle, never exceed the speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

When the ambient temperature is high, leaving the engine running for 1 to 2 minutes after stopping the vehicle to allow it to cool is recommended.

Petrol engines and towed loads

Engines	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.6 litre THP 150	1.6 litre THP 160	1.6 litre THP 165 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)
Codes	EB2DTS MCM STT	EB2DTS AT6III STT	EP6FDTM AT6III	EP6FDTMD AT6III	EP6FDT AT6III STT
Model codes MR... M4...	HNYH/C1B HNYH/C1F - HNYH/C1K	HNYW/C1B HNYW/C1F	5GYW/C1A	5GXV/C1A	5GZW/C1B 5GZW/C1F
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,199	1,199	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max power: EU standard (kW)	96	96	110	120	121.4
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400 - 1,300	1,200	600	600	1,550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	660	670	600	600	685
Recommended nose weight (kg)	80	80	70	70	80

Diesel engines and towed loads

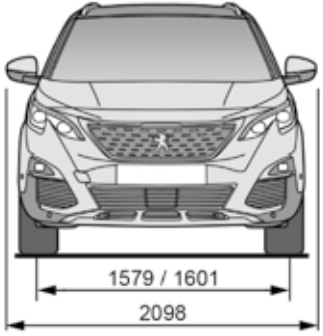
Engines	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)
Codes	DV6FD BE4 STT	DV6FC ML6C STT	DV6FC AT6III STT	DV6FC ML6C STT	DV6FC AT6III STT
Model codes MC...	BHYB/C2B BHYB/C2F	BHXH/C2B BHXH/C2F	BHXW/C2B BHXW/C2F	BHZH/C2B BHZH/C2F - BHZH/C2K	BHZW/C2B BHZW/C2F
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max power: EU standard (kW)	73	85	85	88	88
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300	1,500	1,300	1,500 - 1,400	1,300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	680	685	695	685	695
Recommended nose weight (kg)	80	80	80	80	80

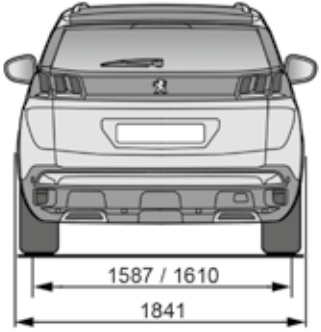
Diesel engines and towed loads

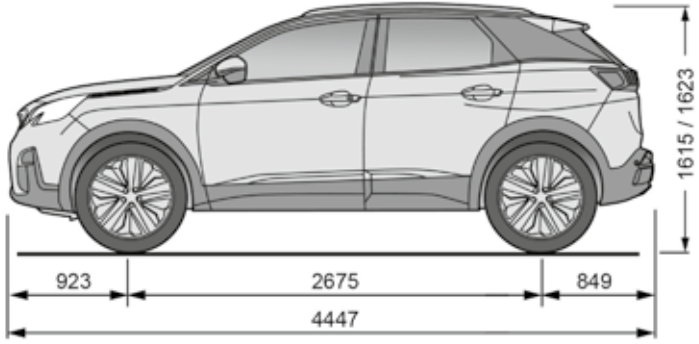
Engines	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S	2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)
Codes	DW10FD ML6C	DW10FD AM6III	DW10FD ML6C STT	DW10FC AM6III STT
Model codes MR... M9...	AHXG/C2A	AHXV/C2A	AHRH/C2B AHRH/C2F AHSH/C2B AHSH/C2F AHXH/C2B AHXH/C2F	AHWW/C2B AHWW/C2F
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,997	1,997	1,997	1,997
Max power: EU standard (kW)	110	110	110	133
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600	2,000	1,700
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600	745	750
Recommended nose weight (kg)	70	70	80	80

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

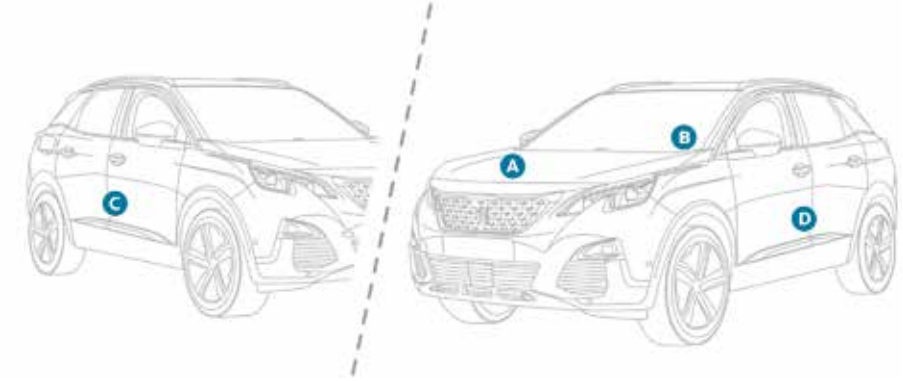






Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.
The number is engraved on the body structure.

B. Vehicle identification number (VIN), on the dashboard.
The number is recorded on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
This self-destructing label is affixed near to the right-hand door.
It bears the following information:
- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised train weight (GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres / paint code label.
This label is affixed near to the driver's door.
It bears the following information about the tyres:
- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Checking tyre pressures
The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.
The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm. In this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

PEUGEOT Cars certifies, by application of the provisions of European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to off-road vehicles, that it has satisfied the targets set by the EU and that recycled materials are used in manufacturing the products it markets.

Even partial copies and translations of this document are forbidden without the written consent of PEUGEOT Cars.

Printed in the EU.
Anglais DAD

07-16

PEUGEOT

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax : +33 (0)1 40 66 54 14 - Télex : 645 700 F
http://www.peugeot.com
Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S. : 552 144 503 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 552 144 503 00018 - APE : 2910Z

www.peugeot.com

Anglais DAD
16P84.A030

PEUGEOT Connect Nav

GPS satellite navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	5
Menus	6
Voice commands	8
Navigation	14
Connected navigation	30
Applications	40
Radio Media	56
Telephone	68
Settings	80
Frequently asked questions	90

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. Displaying of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

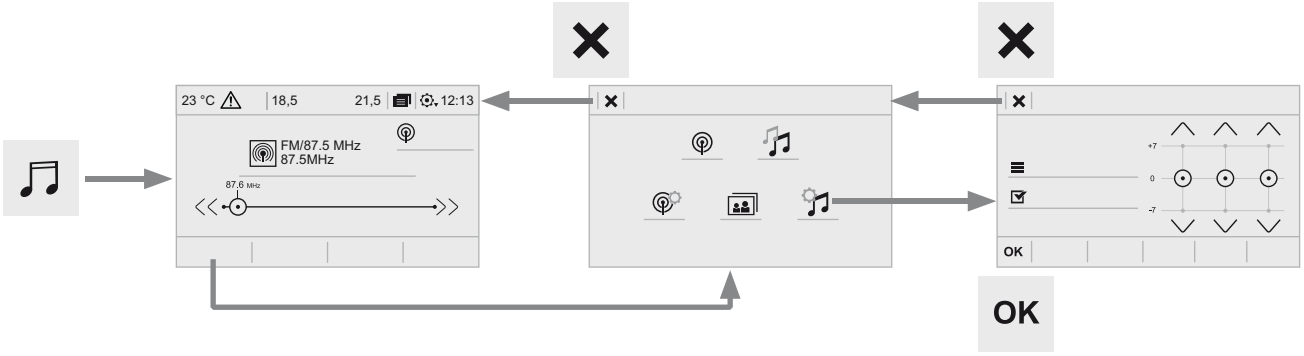
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



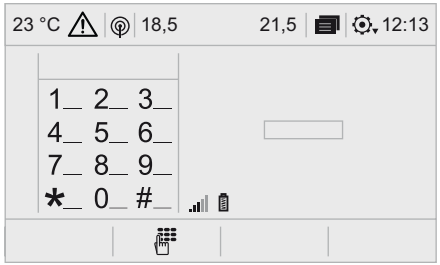
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

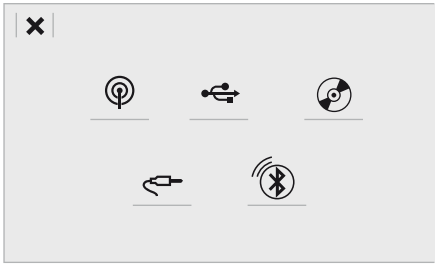
- Reminder of the air conditioning information and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* using Bluetooth* audio streaming.

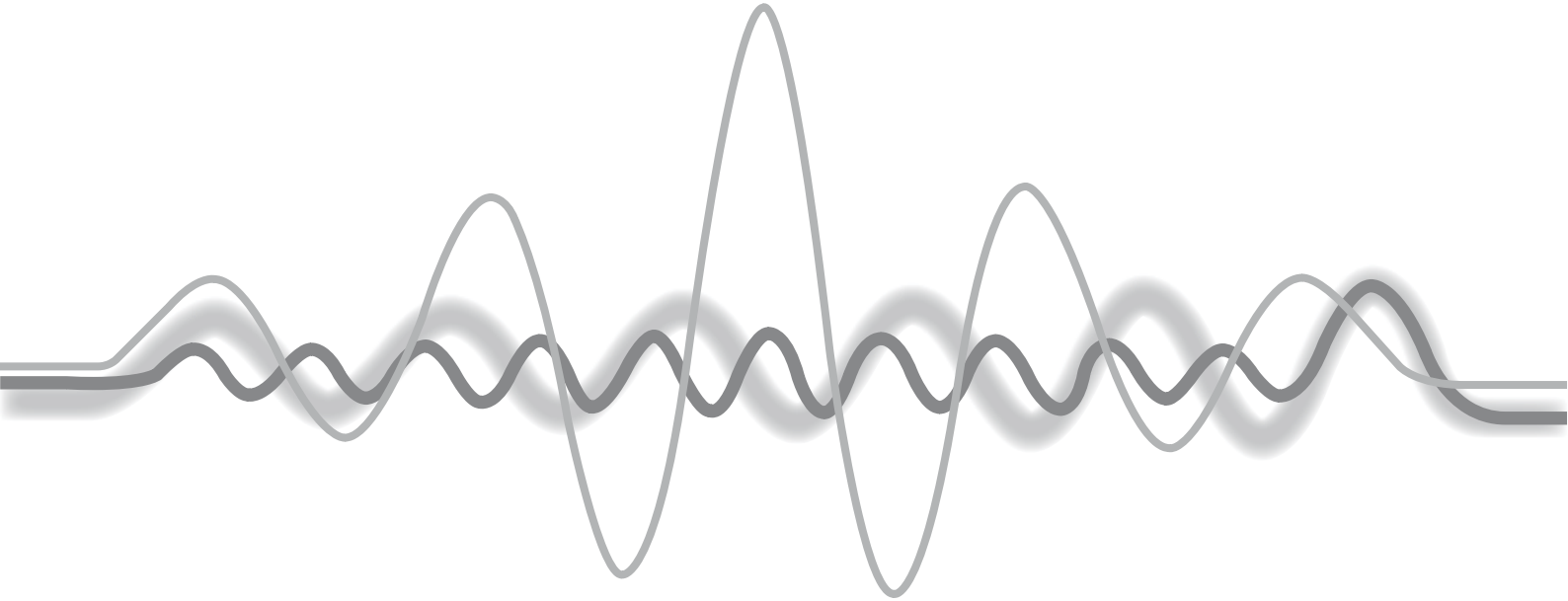
In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.



Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.
Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.

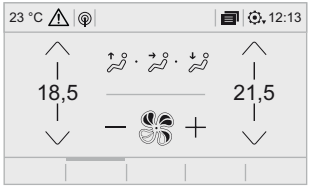


Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

According to version

Air conditioning



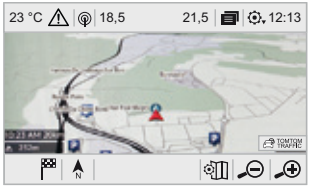
Manage the various temperature and air flow settings.

Driving



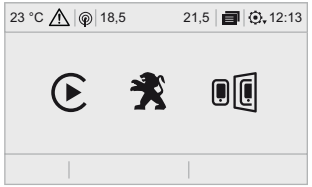
Activate, deactivate and configure certain vehicle functions.

Connected navigation



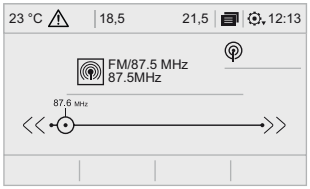
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

Applications



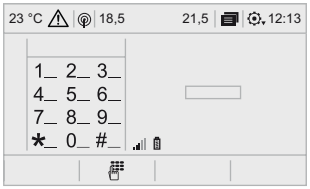
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or MirrorLink™.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



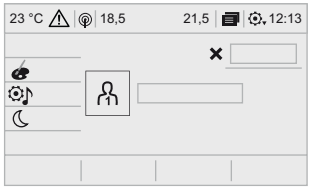
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna" .

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.

Alternative synonyms can be used for some voice commands.
E.g. Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...

The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

i 

Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Select "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box | voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Test message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If no telephone has been connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.
Listen to most recent message*	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".

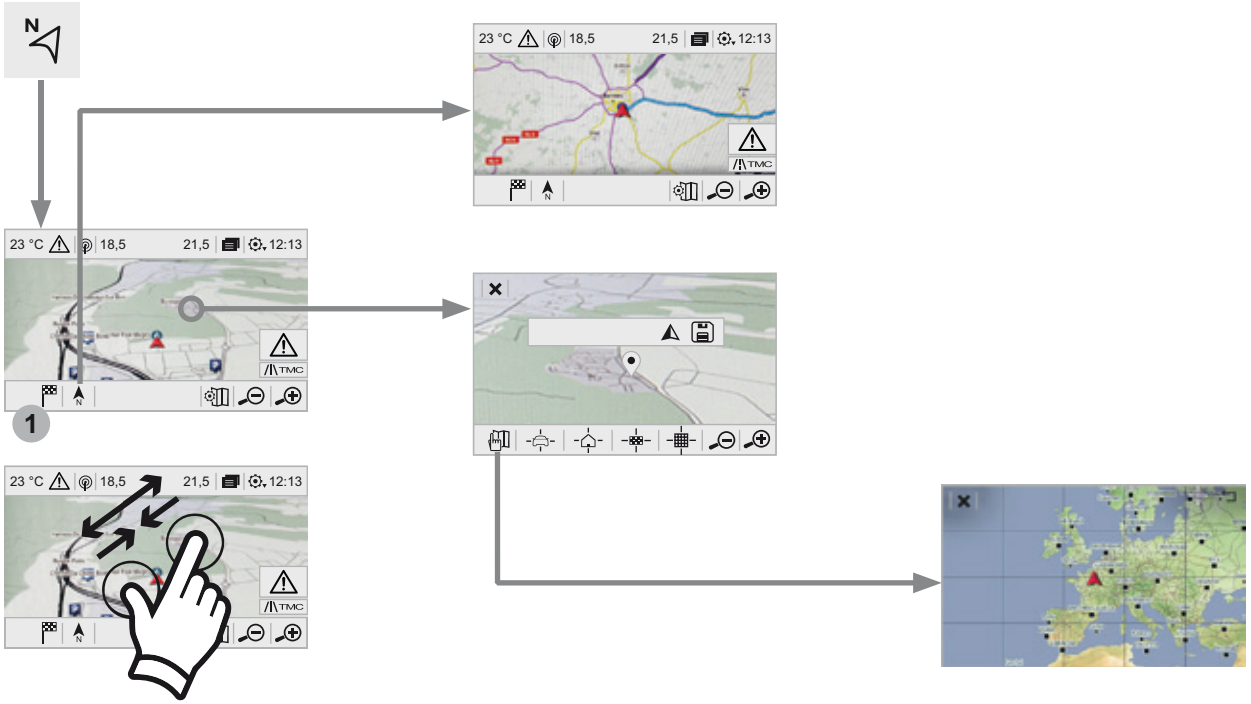
The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

* This function is only available if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

Navigation

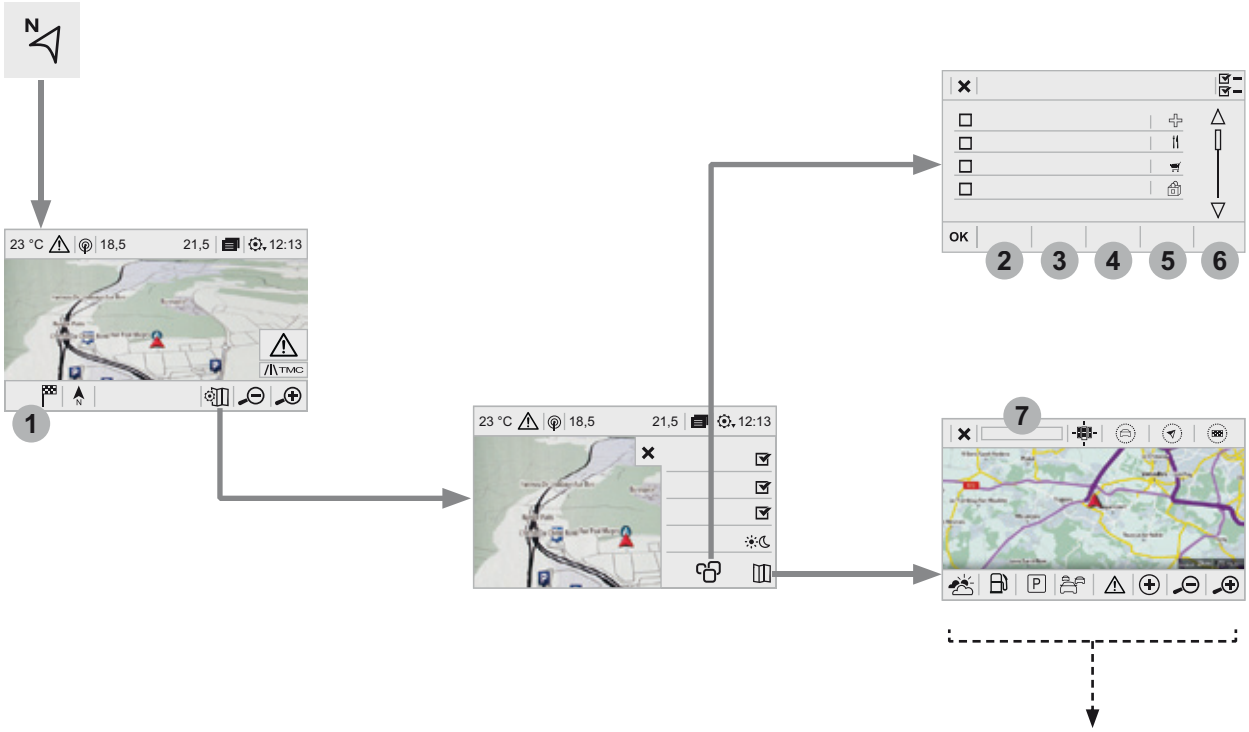
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



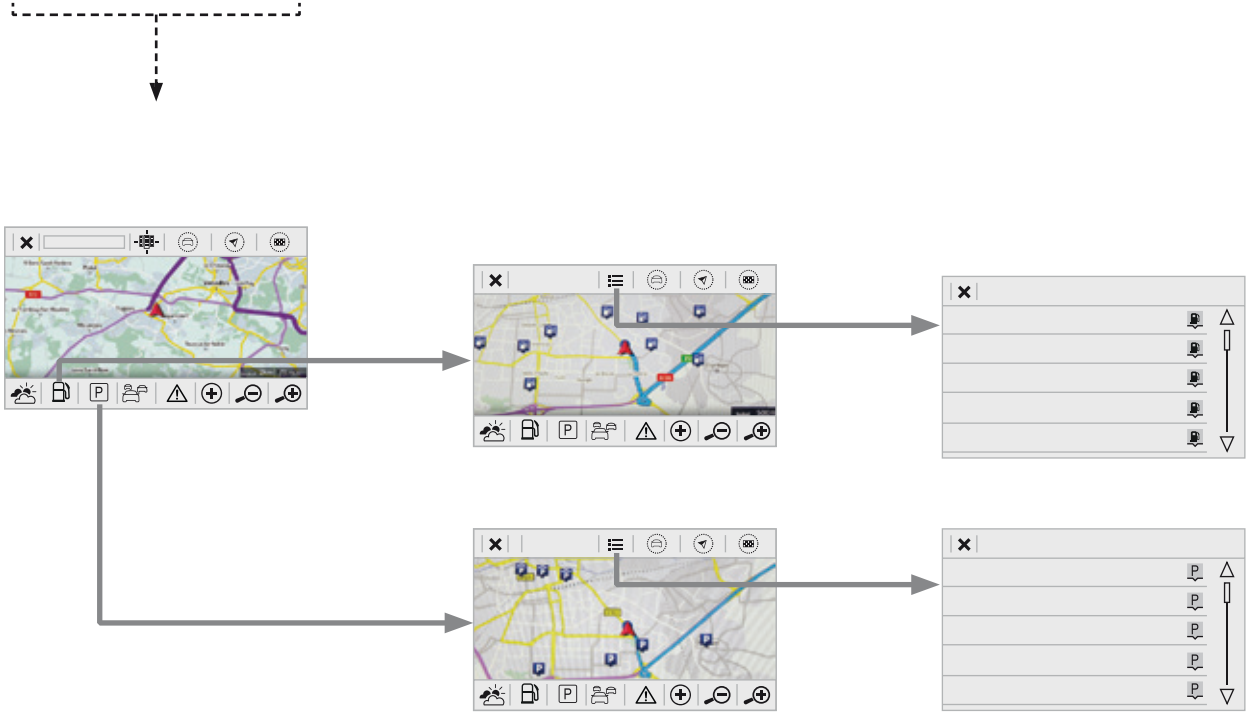
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation					Display the traffic information available.
	Navigation		World map			Manually locate an area on the world map or enter the latitude and longitude coordinates.
			Around the vehicle			Display the location criteria selected.
			Around home			
			Around the destination			
			2D mode			Switch to a 2D map.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.
						Start navigation to the current address.
						Save the current address.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

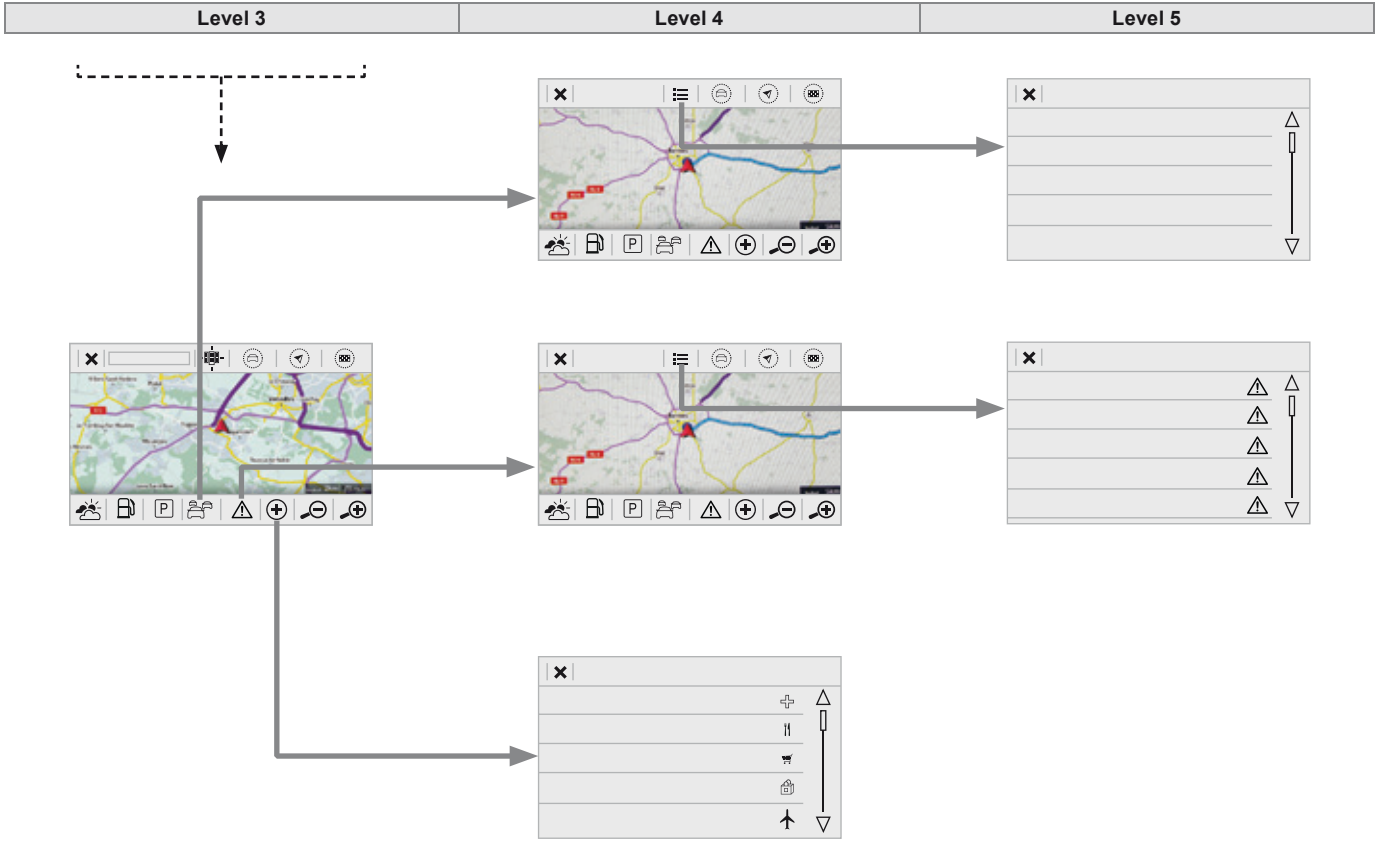


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
			Stations			Activate or deactivate the content available (stations, car parks, risk areas and danger areas).
			Car park			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select day or night mode for display of the map.
			POI on map	2	Travel	Select the POIs available.
				3	Active life	
				4	Commercial	
				5	Public	
				6	Geographic	
	Navigation				Select all	Select or deselect all.
				OK		Save your choice or selection.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or modify a city.
					Weather	Display on the map the content available in non-connected mode.
					Petrol Station	
					Car park	
					Traffic	
					Danger area	
					Select POI	Select from the POIs available.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5

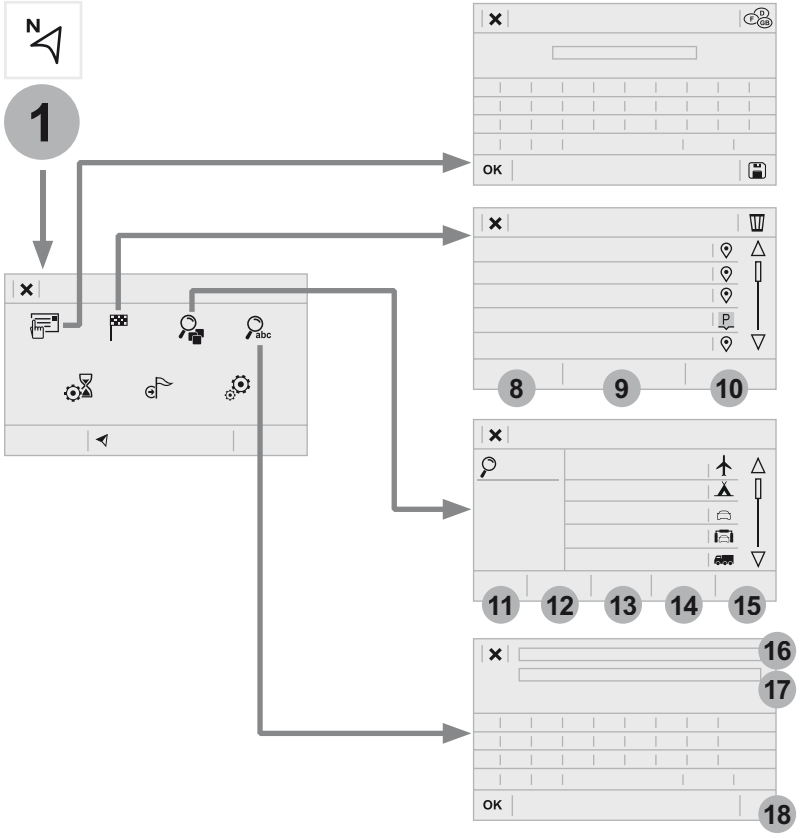


Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Zoom in	OK				Zoom in around the city selected.
	Around the vehicle					Select a location option.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather					Weather information transmitted in TMC mode.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of POIs.
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

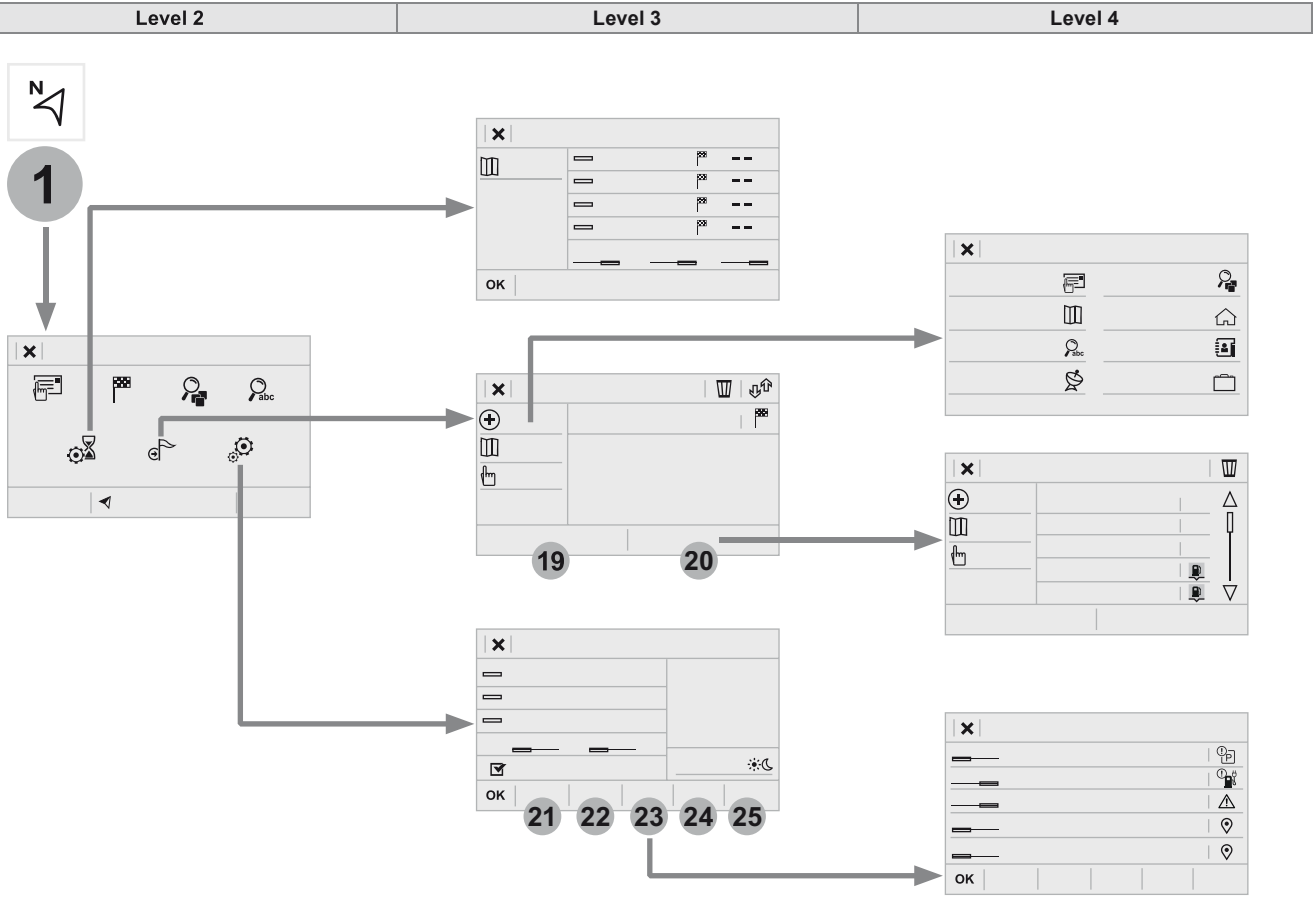

Level 3
Level 4
Level 5

Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Traffic information sent in real time.
	Danger area				List of danger areas	Display the list of danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...).
	Select POI					Configure a category of POI to display.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Enter address					Select the country.
						Save the current address.
		OK				Confirm the current address.
1	Navigation → MENU → My destinations	8	Recent			Display the lists of destinations and start navigation.
		9	Preferred		My home	
					My work	
		10	Contact			
						Delete one or more destinations.
1	Navigation → MENU → Points of interest	11	Travel			List of categories available. After selection of category, select the point of interest.
		12	Active life			
		13	Commercial			
		14	Public			
		15	Geographic			
			Search			Search for a point of interest.
1	Navigation → MENU → Search	16	Point of interest			Enter a point of interest.
		17	Address			Enter the address of a point of interest.
		18	Local / Connected			Enter settings for the POI search mode in a local or connected database depending on the services subscribed to.
		OK				Confirm the entry.


Level 2
Level 3
Level 4
1
OK
19
20
OK
21
22
23
24
25
OK

Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Guidance criteria		Fast			Select the guidance criteria (motorways, tolls and how traffic is taken into account).
			Short			
			Compromise			
			Ecological			
			See on map			Display the route selected using the criteria.
		OK				Save your selections.
1	Navigation → MENU → Routes / waypoints	19	Waypoints			Display the waypoints saved.
		20	Route			Display details of the route.
			Add waypoint		Add a waypoint	Add a waypoint from a list offered.
			Preview			Display the map.
			Finish			Press to calculate the route.
						Delete one or more waypoints.
						Move a waypoint in the list.
1	Navigation → MENU → Settings	21	Aspects			Enter choices and select the volume for the voice and stating the names of streets.
		22	Options			
		23	Alerts			
		24	Vocal			
		25	Mapping			
		OK				Save the selections adopted.

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.



Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

To use the navigation system, it is necessary to enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or to take them from the list of "**Contacts**" or from the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

Towards a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival geographically.

Towards "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a previously saved favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list offered to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

Towards a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed

i A long press on a point opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

Or



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

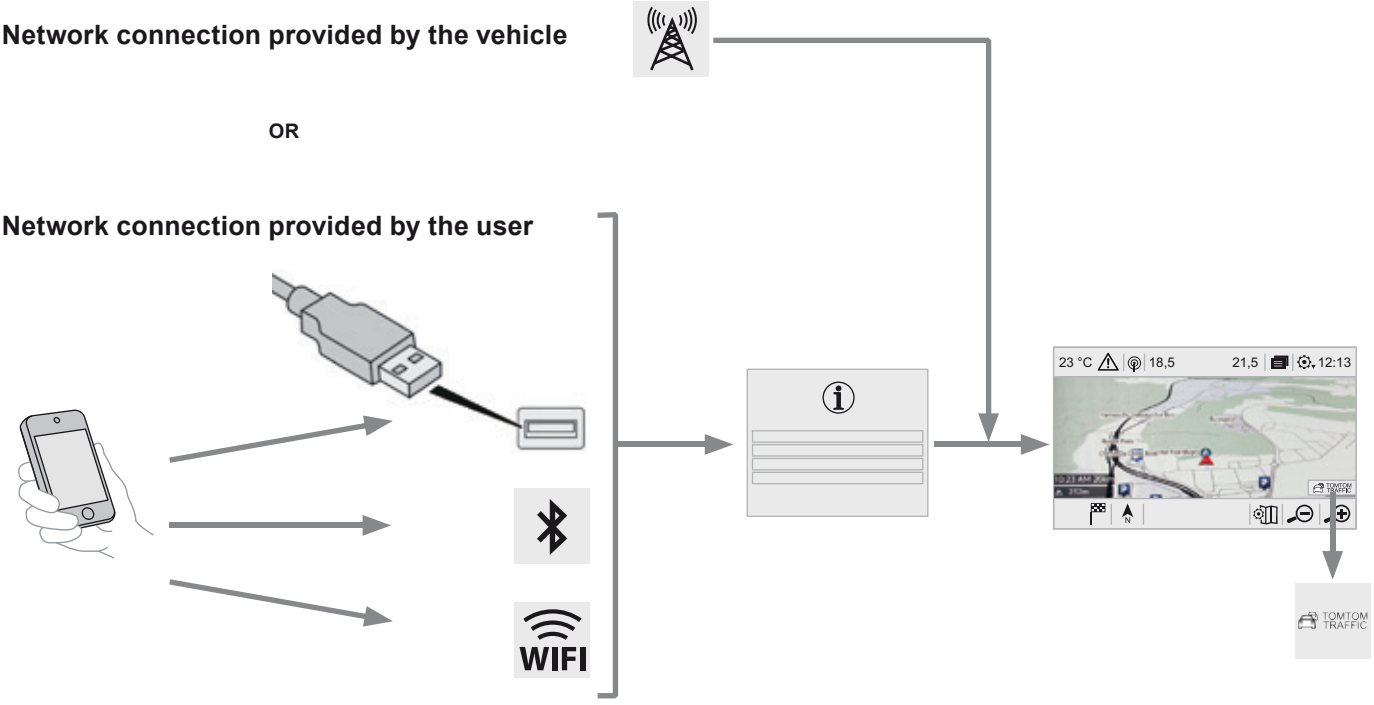
According to version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle

OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone is in charge mode when connected by USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi connection found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

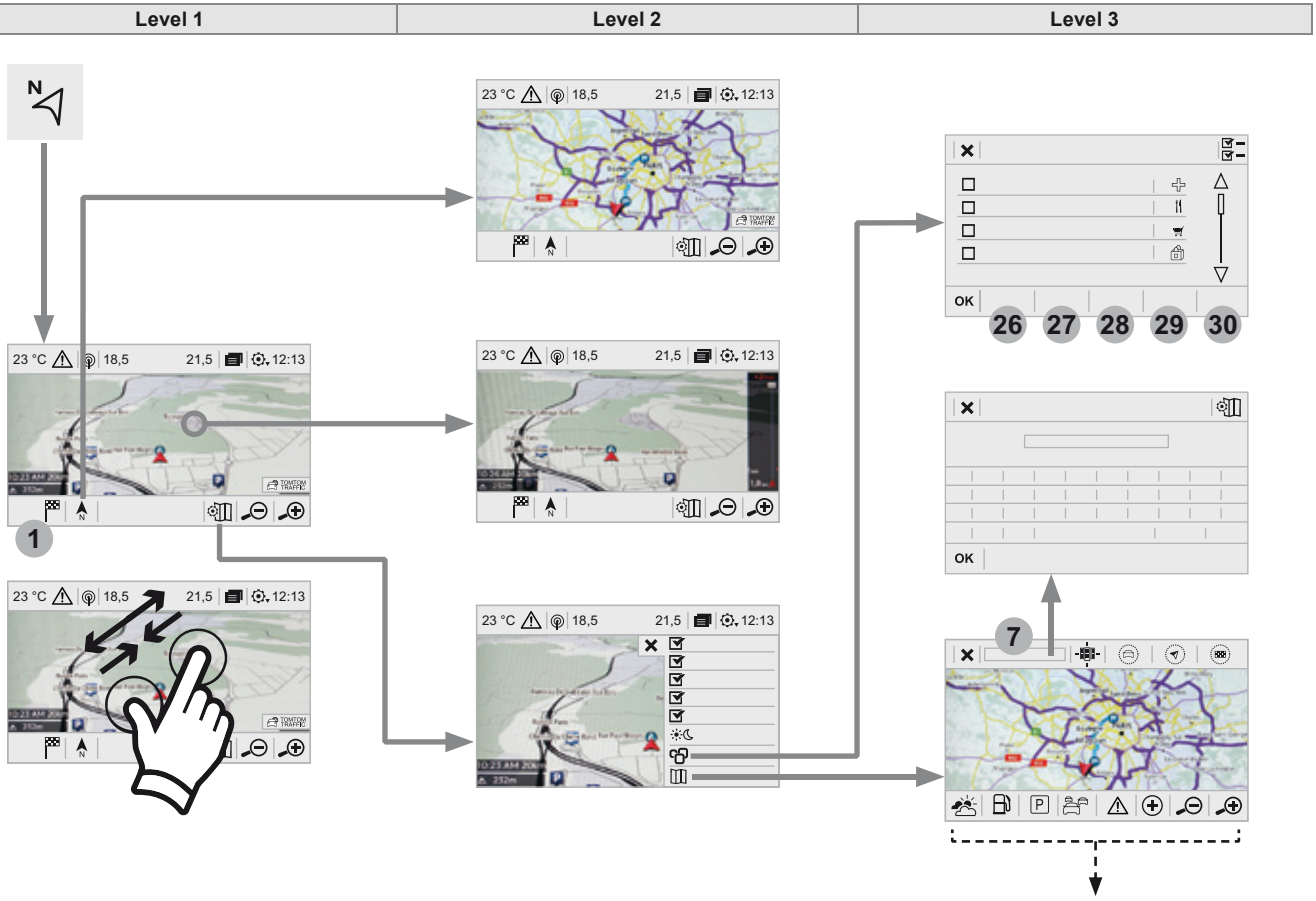


On the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

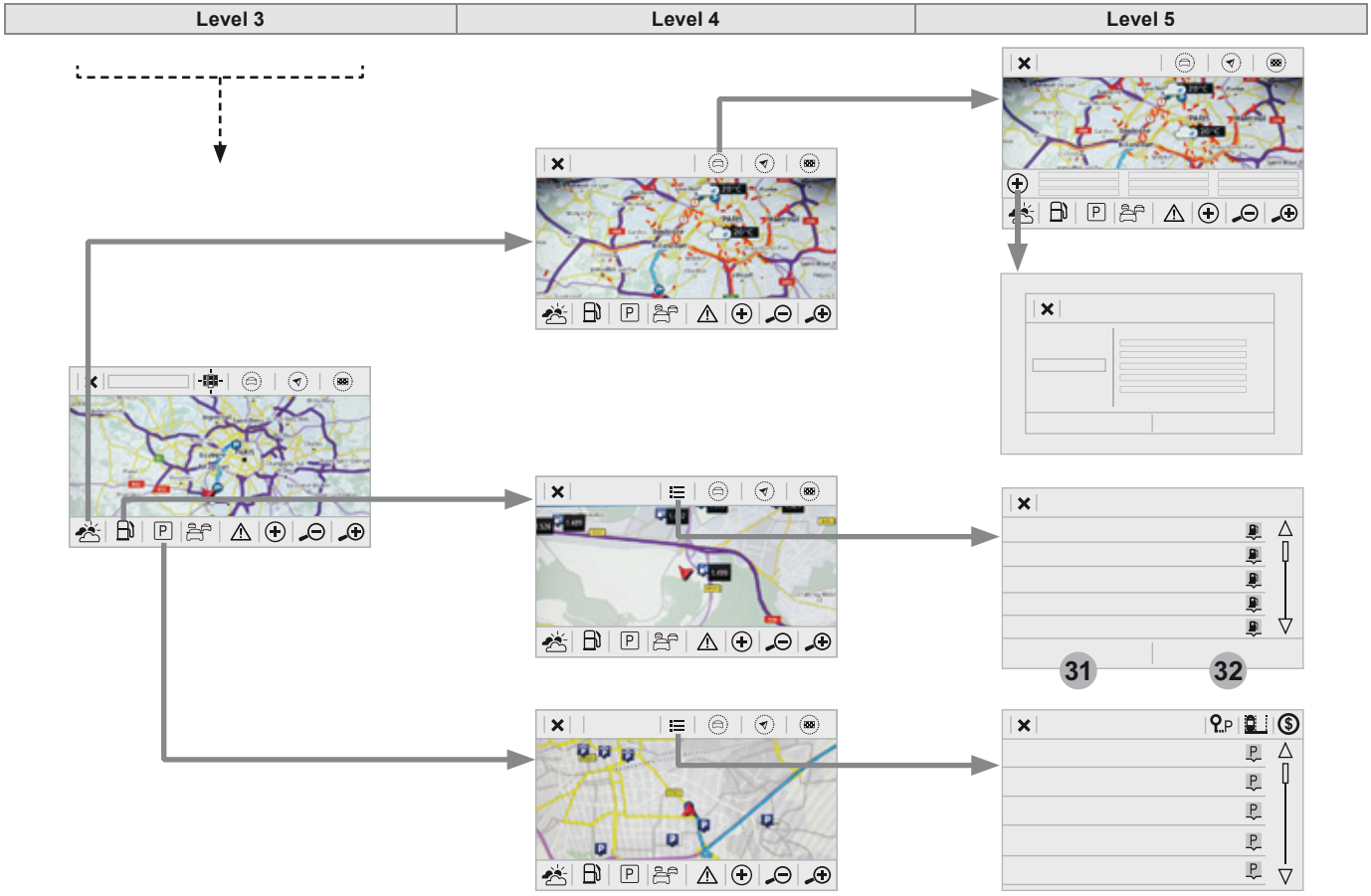
The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI, local search.

A Danger area pack (option).

The principles and standards are constantly changing. For communication between your smartphone and the system to operate correctly, we recommend that you **keep your smartphone's operating system up to date, and the time and date on your smartphone and the system correct.**

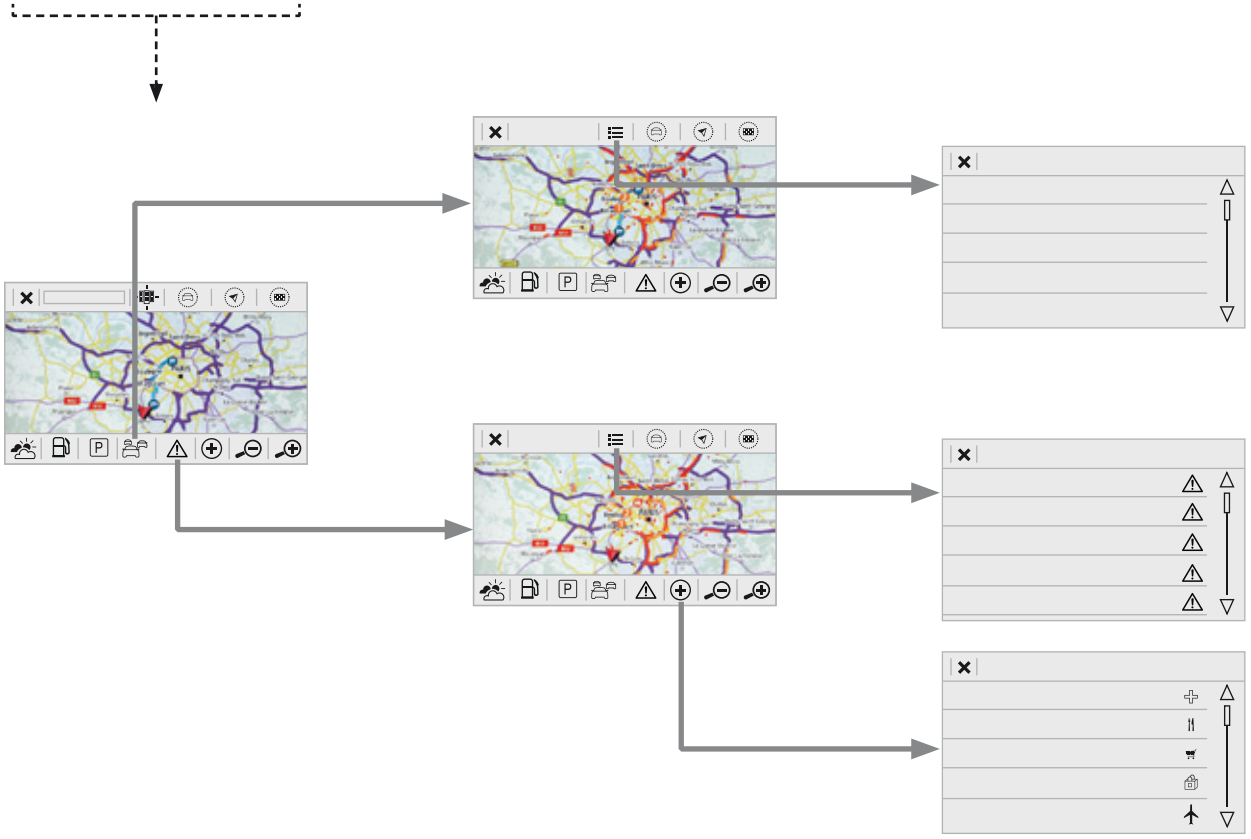

Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
N
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
OK
26
27
28
29
30
7

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation → **TOMTOM TRAFFIC**					On connection of the system to a network, "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" is displayed instead of "TMC", for use of all of the options available, in real time.
	Navigation		**Weather**			Select the options. The map display the route chosen, depending on options.
			Stations			
			Car park			
			Traffic			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select the display mode for the map.
			POI on map	26	Commercial	Select the POIs available.
				27	Geographic	
				28	Leisure	
				29	Public	
				30	Travel	
				OK		Save the options.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or change a city.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.


Level 3
Level 4
Level 5
31
32

Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Select city	OK				Select or change a city.
	Around the vehicle					Select or change a city.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather				**Weather information**	Display the weather forecast for the day or the following days.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of filling stations and the associated information (address, prices, fuels, ...).
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
				31	**By distance**	
				32	**By price**	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	Display the list of car parks and the associated information (address, distance, spaces available, price, ...).
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
					Sort by distance	
					Sort by spaces	
					Sort by price	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Display traffic information in real time: type, description and duration (in minutes).
	Danger areas				List of danger areas	Display danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...) in real time.
	Points of interest		Points of interest		Select POI	Display the list of POIs for the location selected.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display the first level of information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the morning will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the evening will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Options**".



Activate or deactivate:

- "**Allow declaration of danger areas**"
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Authorise sending information**"



Select "**Alerts**".



Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".

The display of danger zones is conditioned by the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger areas"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger areas**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**Declare a new danger area**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen.



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger areas" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to view the version of the various modules installed in the system.



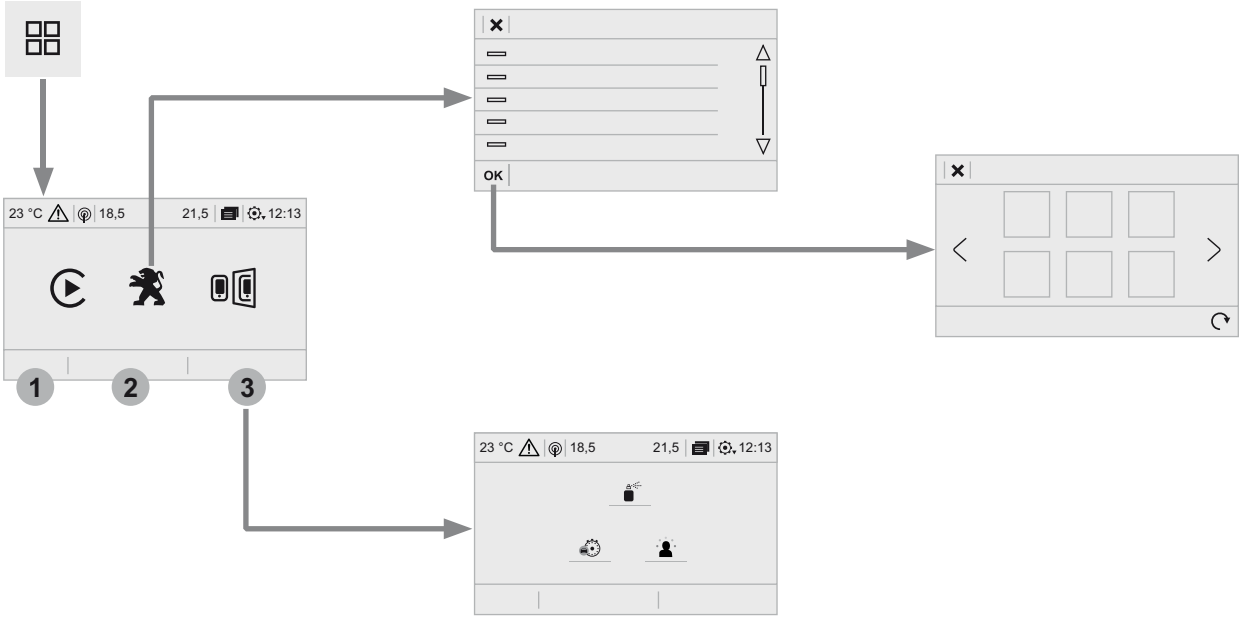
Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Applications

According to version / according to equipment

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.



Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.



Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**® or **MirrorLink**™ function.

Applications

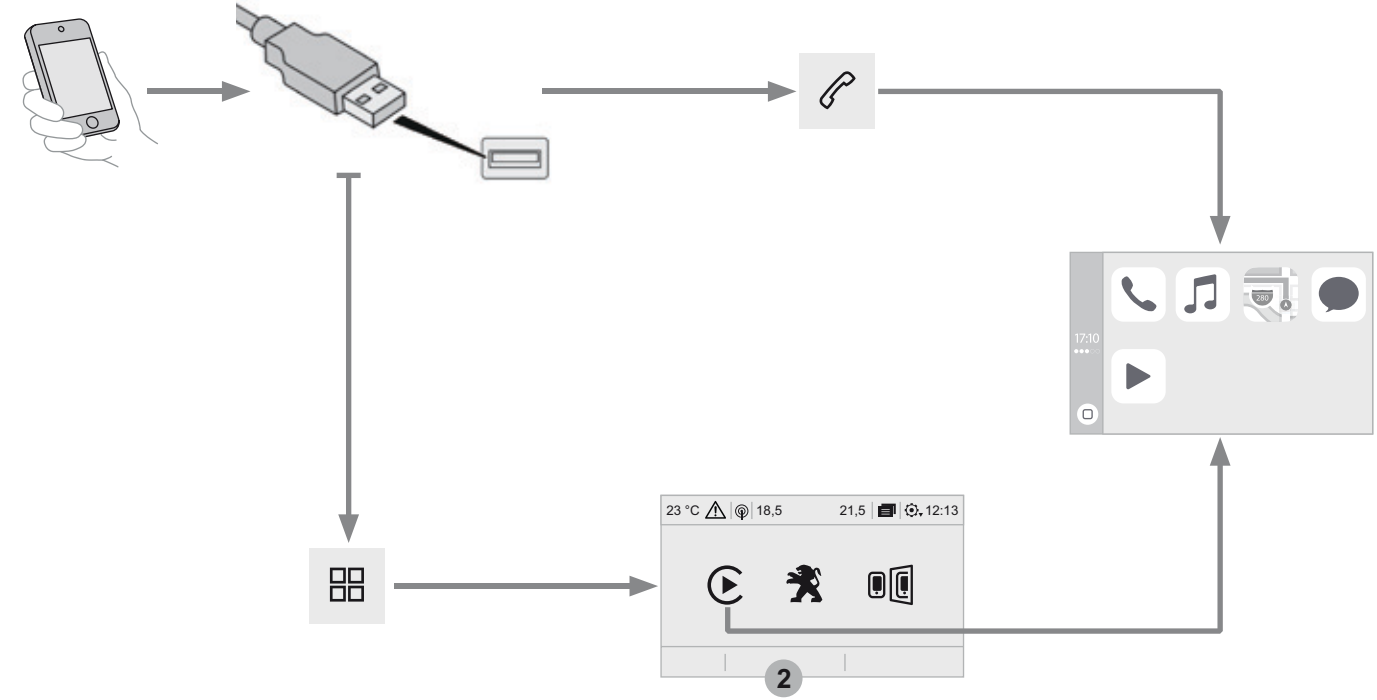


Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connecte d by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



In the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

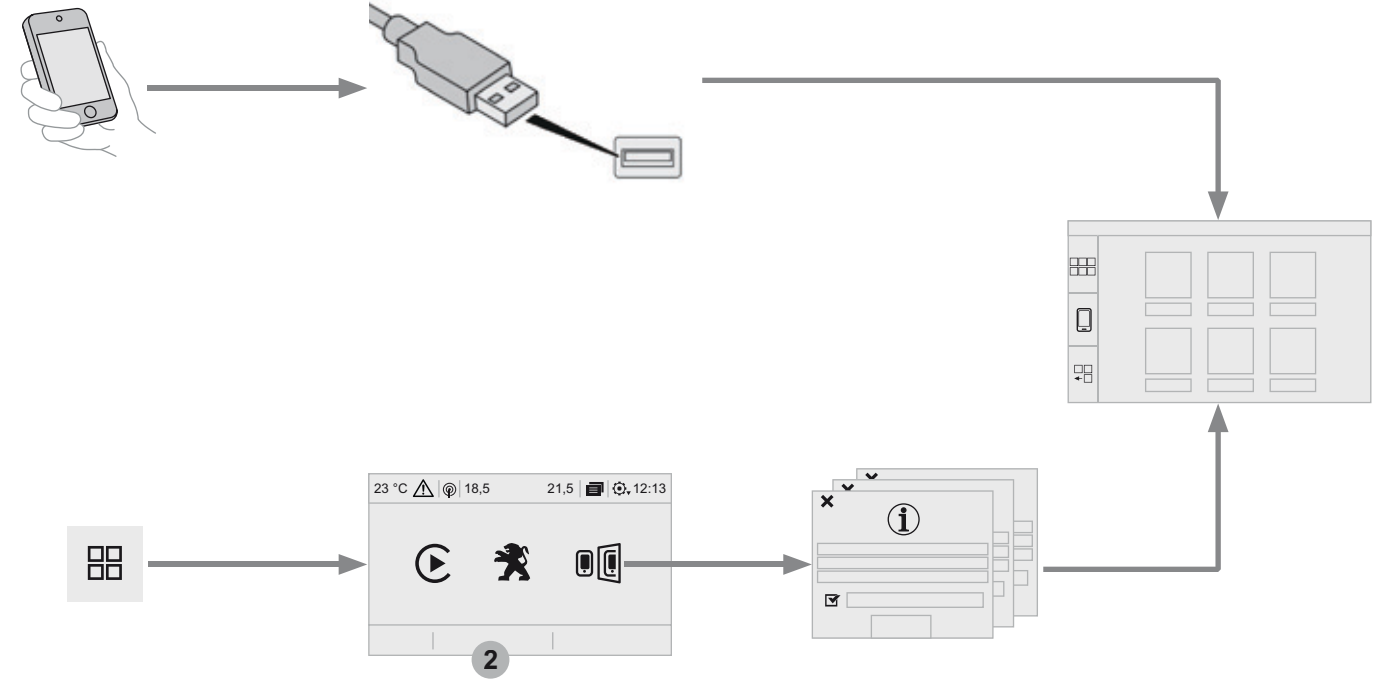
2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.


When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone


Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.


From the system, press on "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.


Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the system's application.

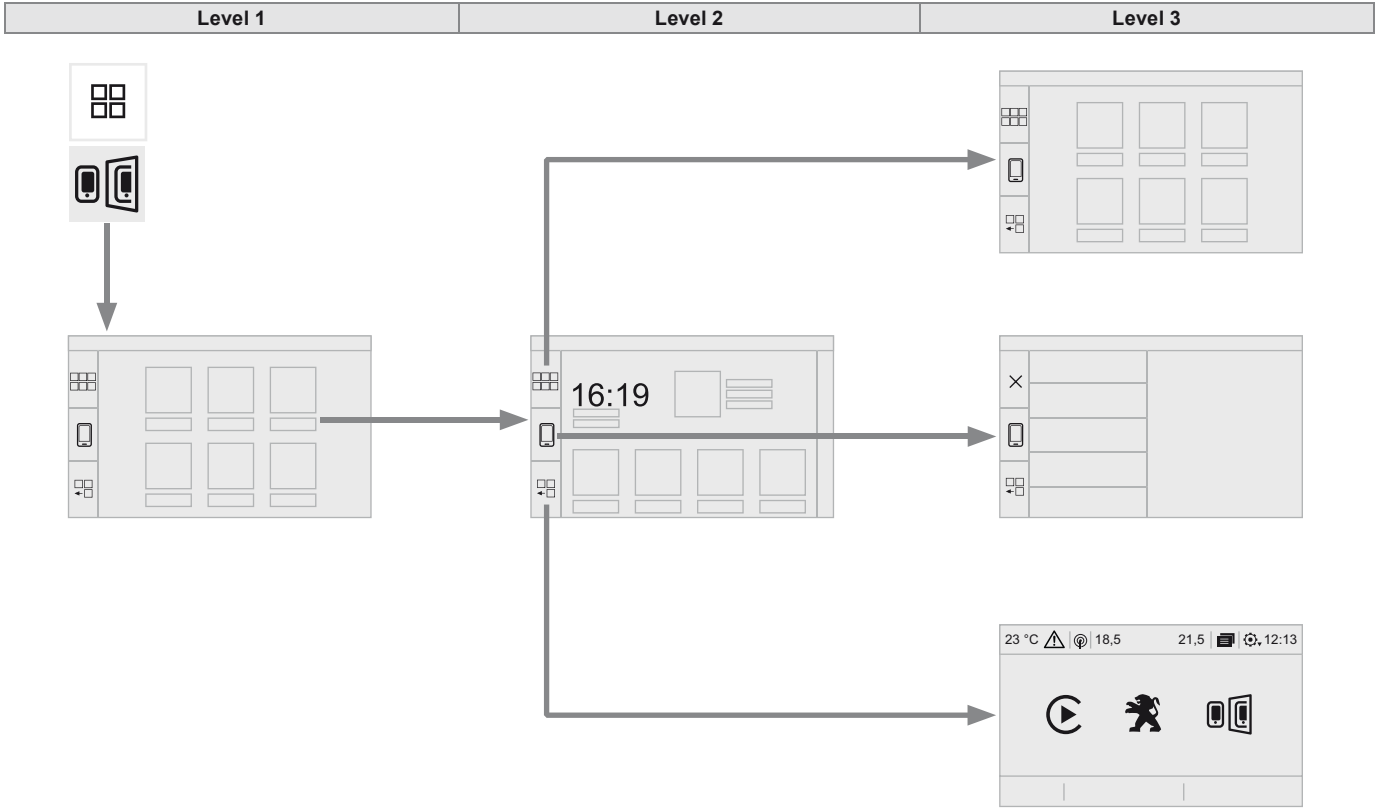
Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

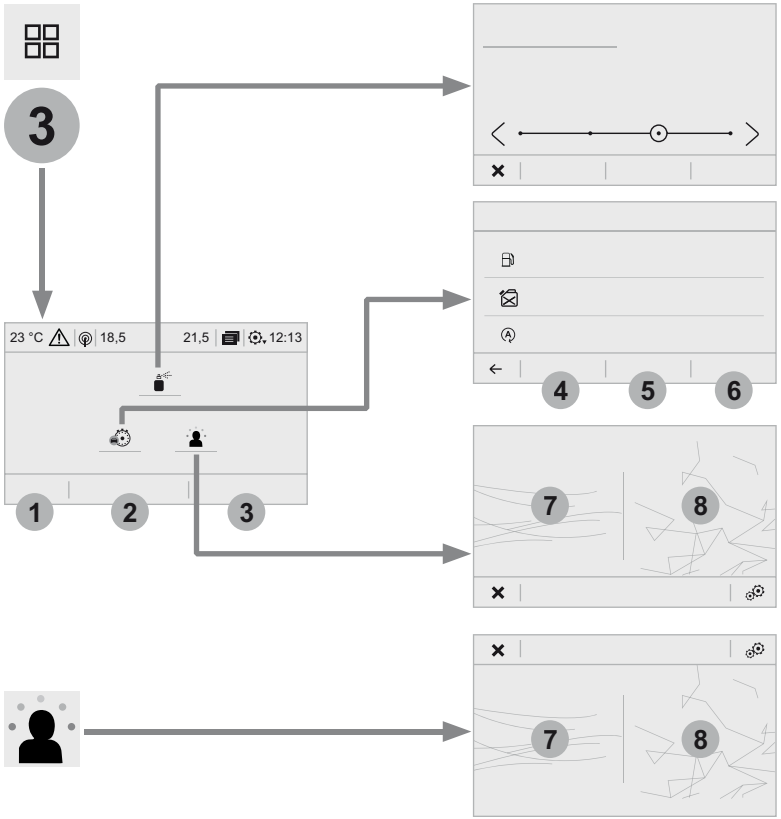
i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
16:19
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
						Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Applications** ↓ **MirrorLink™**					Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
						Go to the primary page of the "Applications" menu.

According to equipment

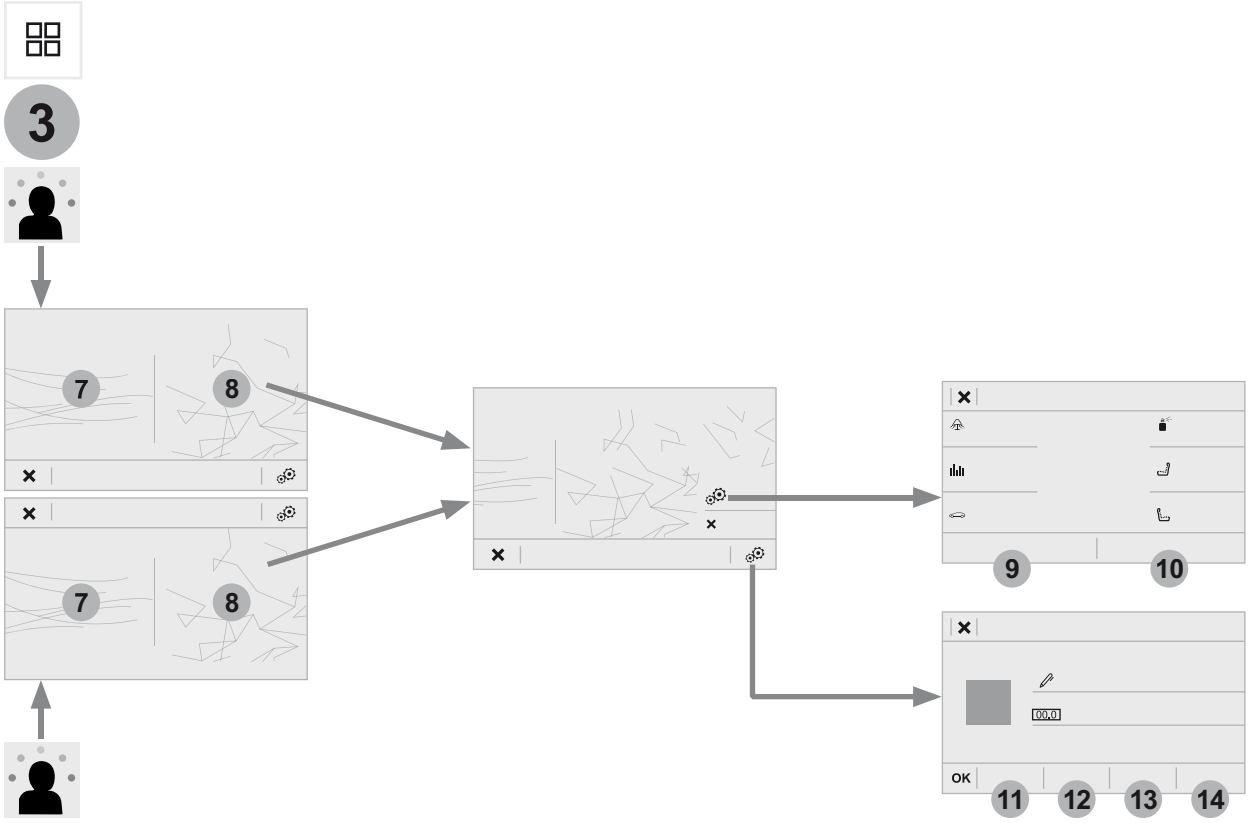
Level 2	Level 3



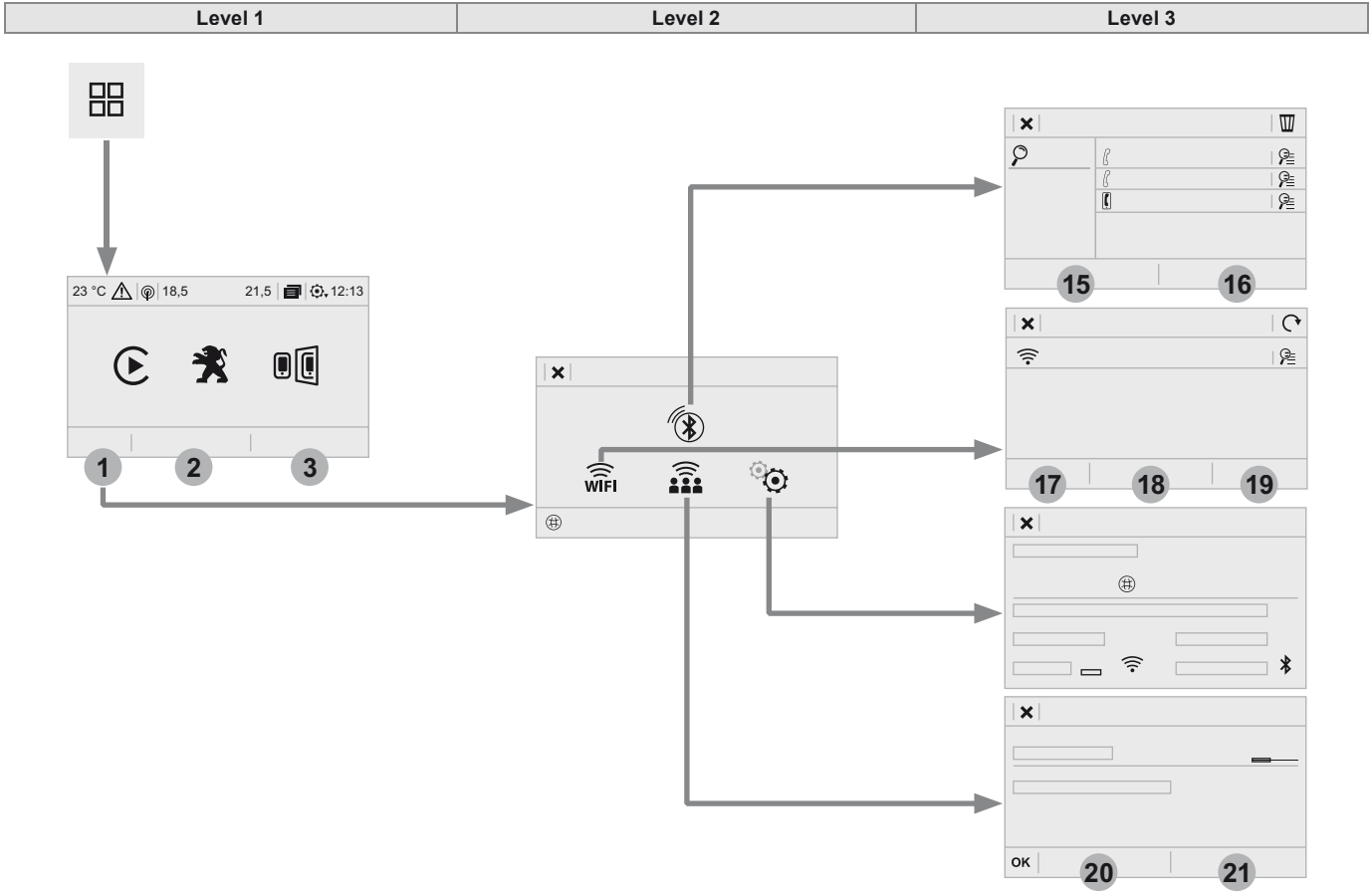
Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications ↓ Scented air freshener			Select the fragrance.
			Off	Switch off the scented air freshener.
			Low	Adjust the intensity of diffusion of the fragrance.
			Medium	
			High	
		✕		Confirm the selection and settings.
	Applications ↓ Trip computer	4	**Instant**	System providing information about the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).
		5	**Trip 1**	
		6	**Trip 2**	
		←		Back to the Applications page.
	Applications ↓ i-Cockpit Amplify	7	**Relax**	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment presets and/or save it in a user profile.
		8	**Boost**	
			Profile management	
	i-Cockpit Amplify	7	**Relax**	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment presets and/or save it in a user profile.
		8	**Boost**	
			Profile management	

According to equipment

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Applications i-Cockpit Amplify Relax Boost OR		Settings		Lighting	Adjust the intensity of the ambience lighting.
					Ambience	Adjust the sound ambience.
					Dynamic	Set the driving mode.
					Fragrance	Select a fragrance.
					Driver massage	Select and configure the driver massage.
					Passenger Massage	Select and configure the passenger massage.
7 8				9	Save settings	Save the settings.
				10	Reset the mode	Reset the parameters of the ambience.
				×		Confirm the selections and settings.
		×	Deactivate			Deactivate the "i-Cockpit Amplify" function.
	i-Cockpit Amplify Relax Boost		Profile management	11	Profile 1	Configure the profiles.
7 8				12	Profile 2	
				13	Profile 3	
				14	Common profile	
				OK		Save the settings.
		OK				Confirm the selections and settings.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
2
3
WIFI
15
16
17
18
19
OK
20
21

Level 2		Level 3		Comments
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection		15	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		16	Connected	Display all telephones connected.
			Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Wi-Fi network connection		17	Secured	Display the secured Wi-Fi networks.
		18	Not secured	Display the not secured Wi-Fi networks.
		19	Stored	Display the stored Wi-Fi networks.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Manage connection				Display the status of the subscription to the connected services, the status of the network connection and the connection mode.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Share Wi-Fi connection		20	Activation	Activate or deactivate the Wi-Fi connection sharing.
		21	Settings	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.
		OK		Save the settings.

Bluetooth® connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.

Press "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Sharing the Wi-Fi connection

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

20 Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

21 Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect from any piracy and provide maximum security for your systems, it is recommended that you use a security code or a complex password.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

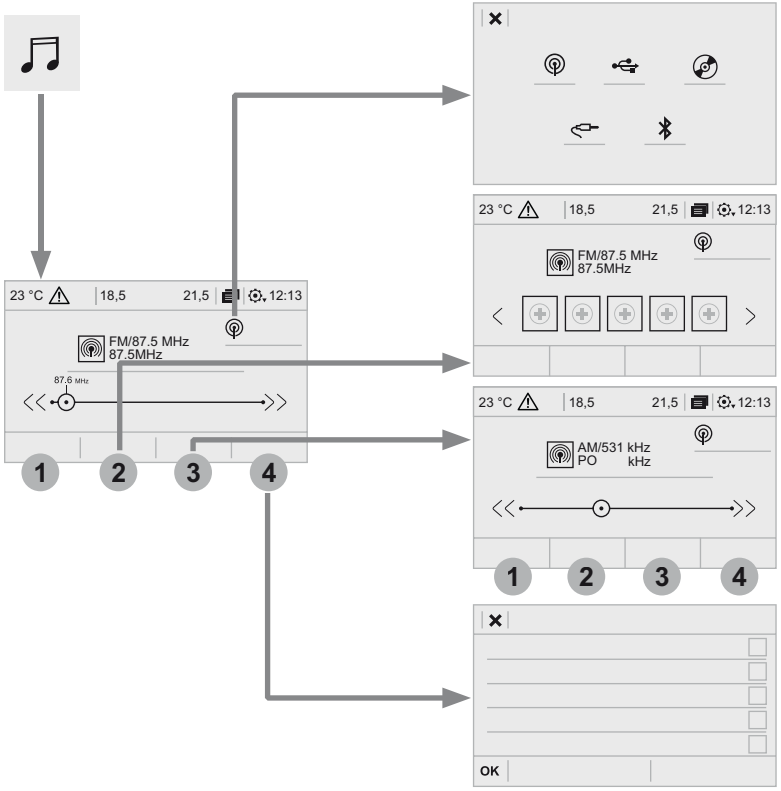
Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio Media

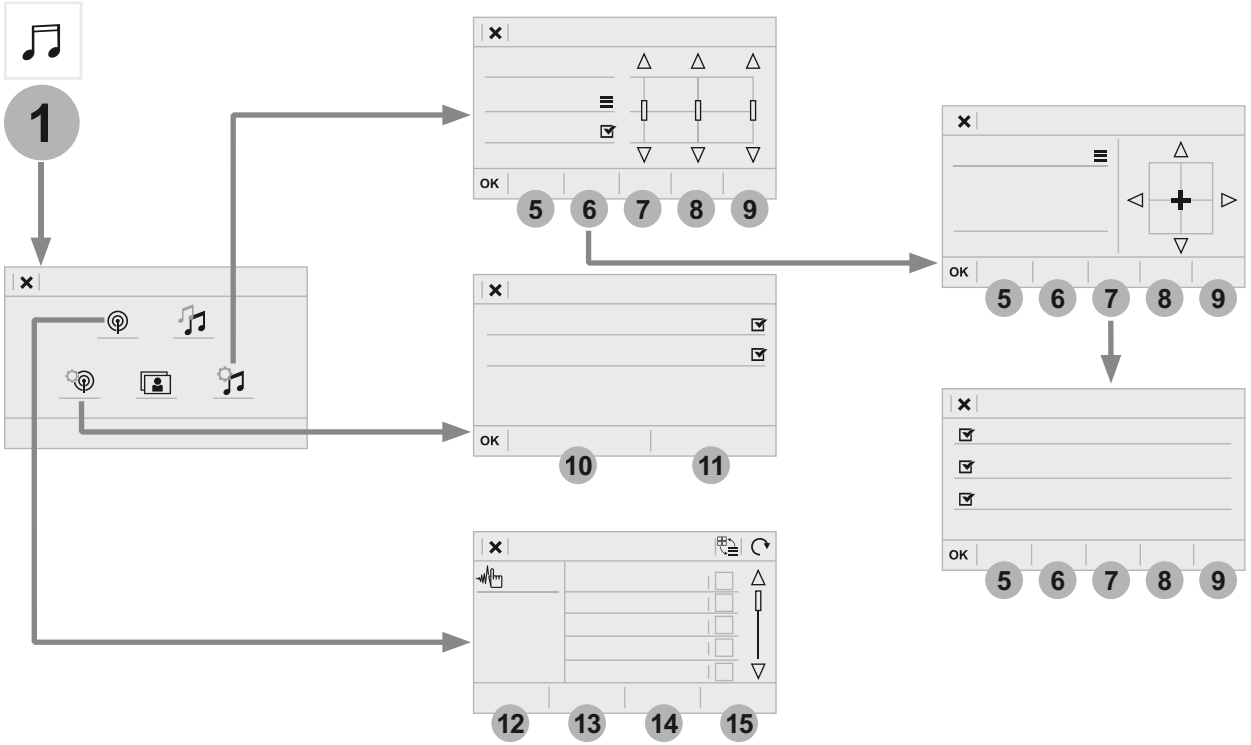
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



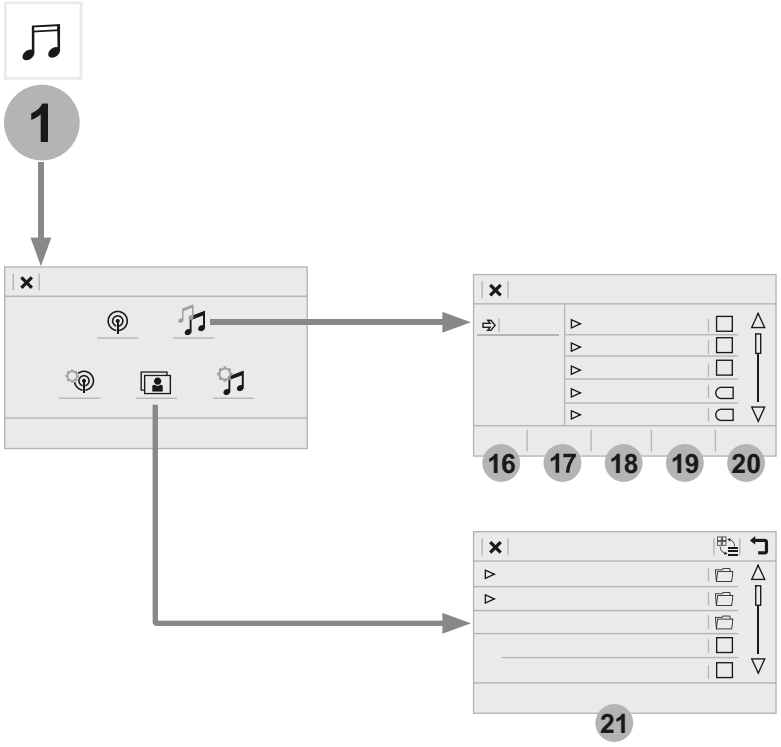
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
♫ /	Radio Media → Source		Radio	Select change of source.
			USB	
			iPod	
			CD	
			AUX	
			Bluetooth	
♫	Radio Media → Frequency / Presets		Frequency	Carry out an automatic or manual search for radio stations.
2			Presets	Make a long press on an empty location to preset a station.
♫	Radio Media → Band		FM	Press the Band button to change waveband.
3			DAB	
			AM	
♫	Radio Media → List		Radio stations	Open the list and press a radio station to select it.
4				

Level 2	Level 3

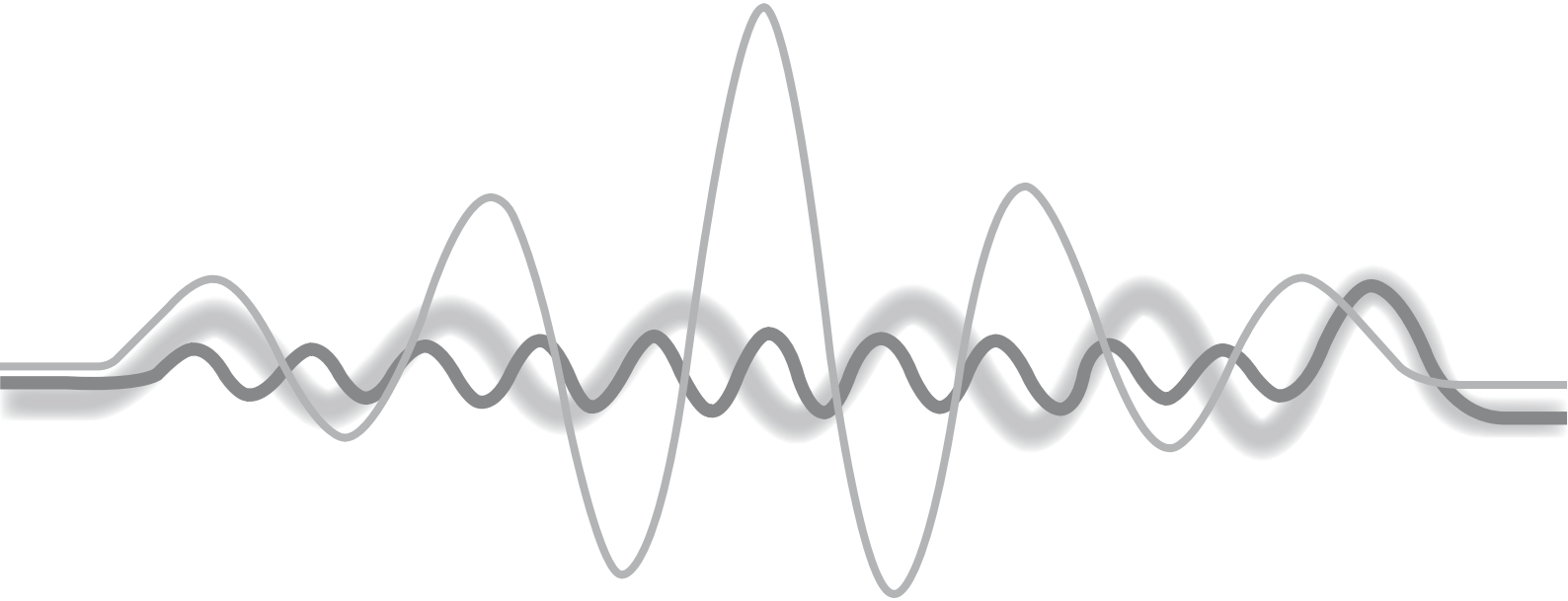


Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Audio settings	5	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		6	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys® system.
		7	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate volume linked to speed.
		8	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		9	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio settings	10	General	Activate or deactivate settings.
		11	Announcements	
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio stations	12	FM	Display the list of radio stations for the band selected.
		13	DAB	
		14	AM	
		15	Presets	Select a preset radio station.
			Frequency	Enter a frequency manually.
				Change the screen display mode.
				Update the list according to reception.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1 ♫	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Music files	16	Albums	Choose a selection mode.
		17	Artists	
		18	Genres	
		19	Playlists	
		20	Folders	
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Managing photos	21	USB	Display photos. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .bmp, .png, .raw and .tiff with a maximum file size of 10 Mb per image.



Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station, relating to the station or the song playing, to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select the audio source.

3 Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

10 Select "**General**".

Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

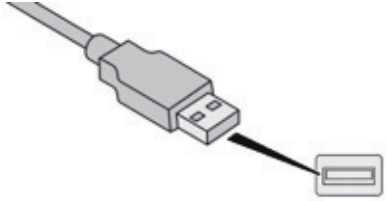
OK Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



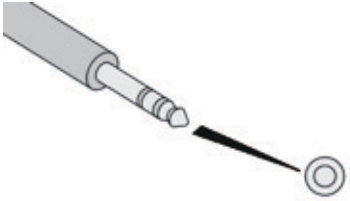
Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary (AUX) socket

(depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on equipment)
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4,...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

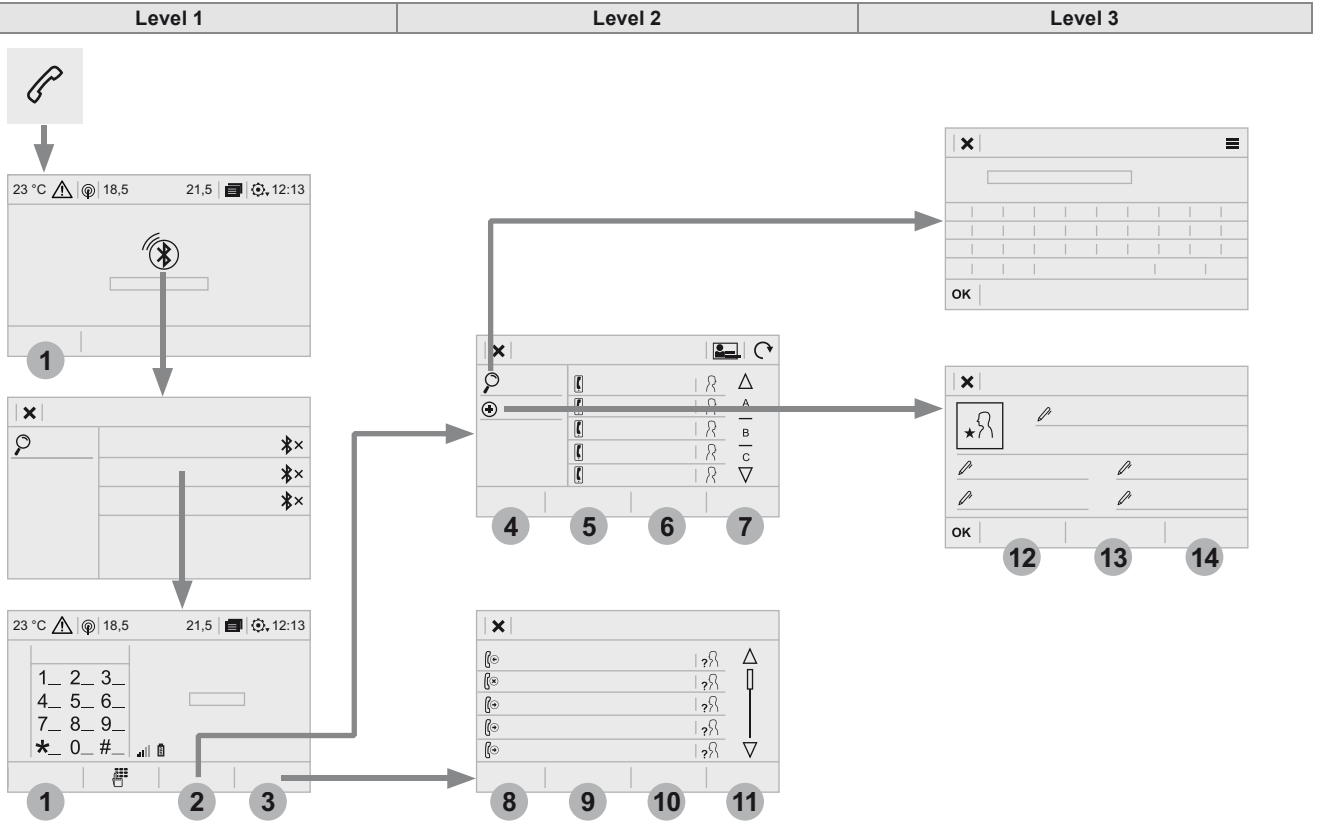
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, when burning it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for the best sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

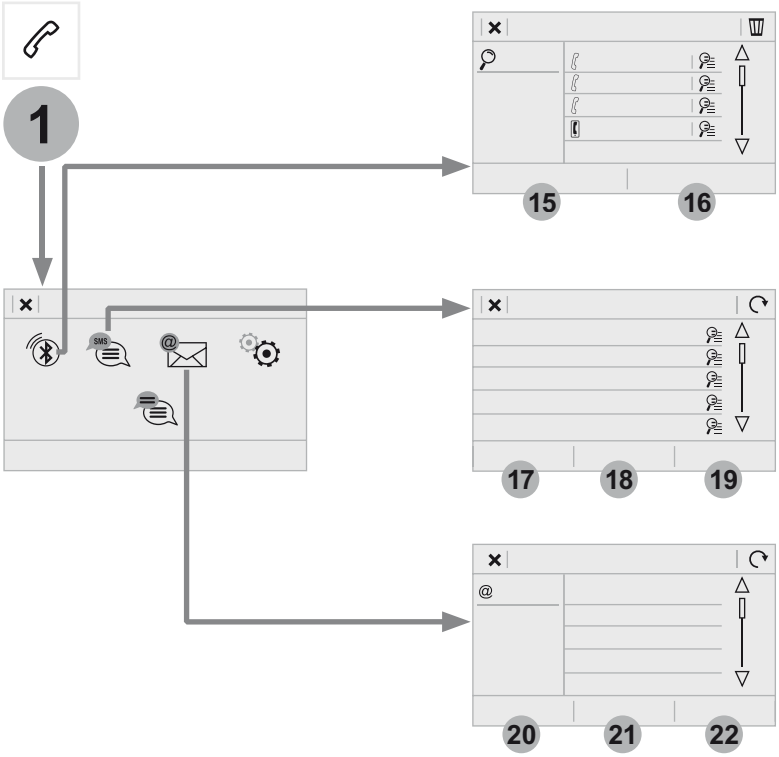
Telephone

According to version



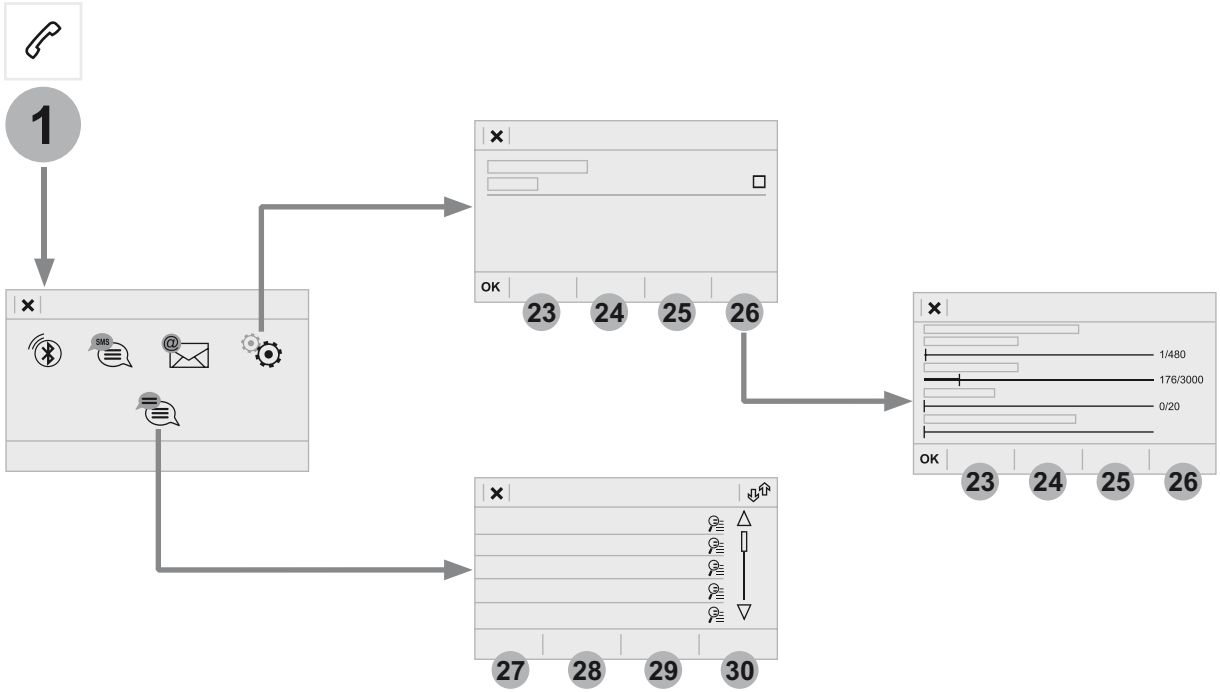
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
2	Telephone → Bluetooth → Contact	4	All			View contacts according to presentation choices. Select a contact or a favourite saved in the system via the profile selected to start the call.
		5	Telephone			
		6	Address			
		7	Favourites			
						Sort the contacts by Surname-First name or First name-Surname.
						Update the contacts from the telephone.
			Search	OK		Search for a contact in the directory.
			Create	12	Telephone	Create a new contact in the system.
				13	Address	
				14	Email	
				OK		
3	Telephone → Bluetooth → Calls	8	All			View calls according to choice of presentation. Select a contact to start the call.
		9	Incoming			
		10	Outgoing			
		11	Missed			
		?				View details for the contact.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 1 	Telephone → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection	15	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		16	Connected	Display all connected telephones.
			Search	Start the search for a device to connect.
 1 	Telephone → OPTIONS → Messages	17	All	Display messages according to the choice made.
		18	Received	
		19	Sent	
 1 	Telephone → OPTIONS → Email	20	Received	Display emails according to the choice made.
		21	Sent	
		22	Not read	
		@	Mailbox	

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Settings	23	Security	Make driving safe.
		24	Voicemail	Enter and save the number for the telephone voicemail.
		25	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		26	Statistics	Display data for the telephone connected.
		OK		Save the options.
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Quick messages	27	Delayed	Select a quick message from the categories, as required.
		28	My arrival	
		29	Not available	
		30	Other	

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with theBluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **Telephone** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **Streaming** (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- **Mobile internet data**.

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, having first activated sharing of the connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.


Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.


Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.


Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts / entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

2 Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

12 In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

13 In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

14 In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! The access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the email chosen in the list.



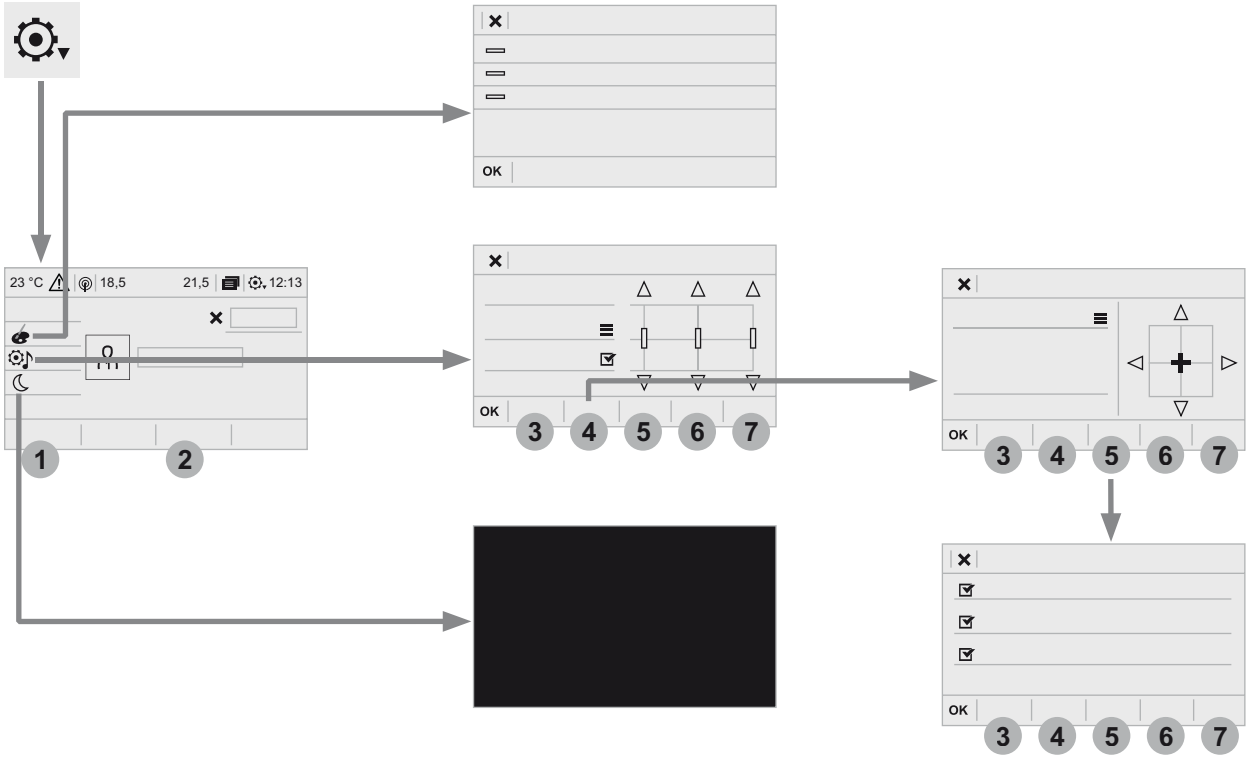
Press "**Play**" to start playing the email.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

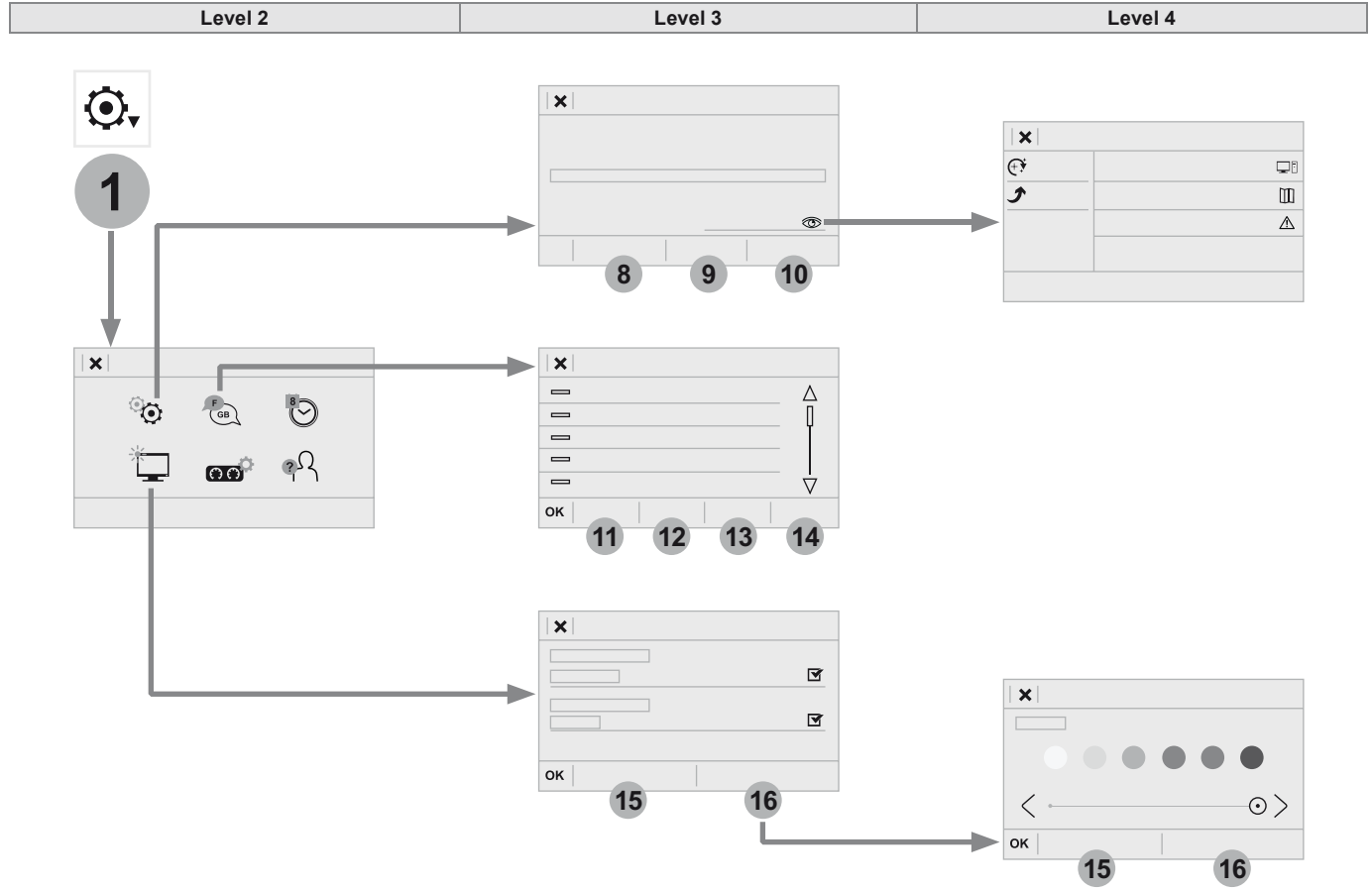
Settings

According to version

Level 1	Level 2

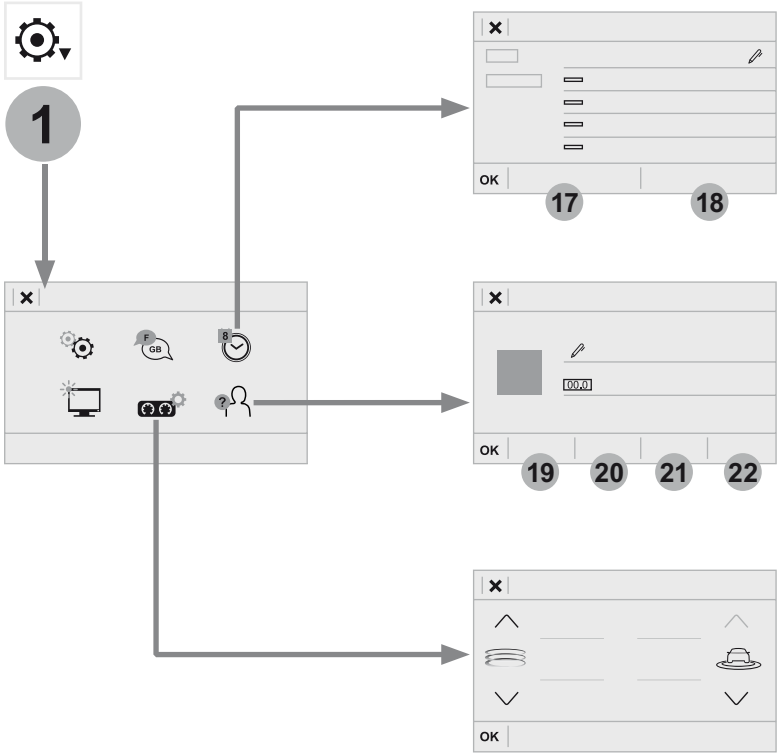


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Color schemes		Color schemes: 1,2,3, ...	Having chosen the color scheme, save the setting.
		OK		
	Settings → Audio settings	3	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		4	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys© system.
		5	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate linked to speed.
		6	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		7	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save the settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen			Function allowing the display to be switched off. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
2	Settings → Profile (1, 2, 3)			Activate the profile selected.


Level 2
Level 3
Level 4
1
8
9
10
OK
11
12
13
14
OK
15
16
OK
15
16

Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Settings → OPTIONS → System settings	8	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Set the units used for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
					Temperature	
		9	Factory settings	00,0	Reinitialize	Restore the factory settings.
		10	System info		View	View the versions of the different modules (system, mapping, risk areas) installed in the system as well as the updates available.
		OK				Save the settings.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Languages	11	All			Select the language then confirm.
		12	Europe			
		13	Asia			
		14	America			
		OK				Having selected the language, save the setting.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Screen configuration	15	Animation			Activate or deactivate settings.
		16	Brightness			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
		OK				Save the settings.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting the time-date	17	Date		Date	Enter the date and select the date format.
					Date format:	
		18	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Define the time zone.
					Time format:	Select the time format: 12h / 24h.
					Synchronisation with GPS (UTC):	Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites.
		OK				Save the settings.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting of the profiles	19	Profile 1			Enter settings for the profiles.
		20	Profile 2			
		21	Profile 3			
		22	Common profile			
		OK				Save the settings.
1	Settings → OPTIONS → Driver screen configuration		Personalisation of the dashboard			Choose and select the display information required on the dashboard.
		OK				Confirm the selections.

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**"

Or

4

"**Position**"

Or

5

"**Sound**"

Or

6

"**Voice**"

Or

7

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio **Ambience** settings (6 ambiences available) as well as the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** settings are different and independent for each sound source.
Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".

The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

19

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system deforms the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

2

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

4

"**Distribution**".

Or

5

"**Sound**".

Or

6

"**Voice**".

Or

7

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

15

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate "**Automatic scrolling**".

16

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

8

Select "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

9

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

10

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites (UTC).

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Color schemes

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a color scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the color scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings (without the possibility of adjusting the volume) in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player does not recognise.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...).	
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble, Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	98
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	100
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	101
Menus	102
Applications	104
Radio Media	112
Telephone	124
Settings	138
Frequently asked questions	149

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the Energy Economy Mode message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

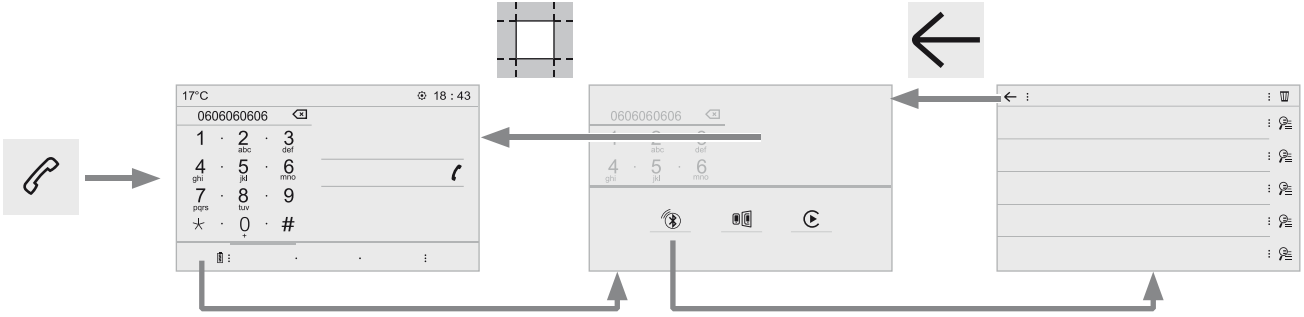
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



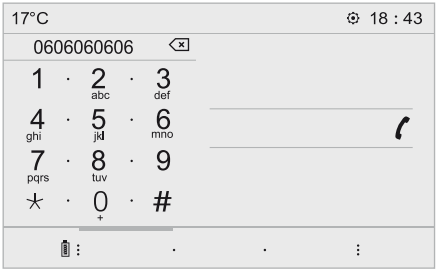
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

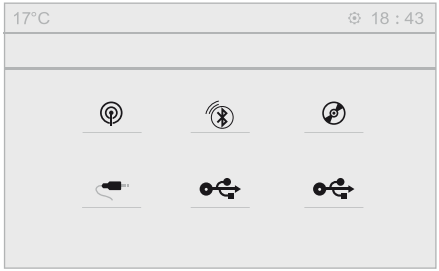
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* stations.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- CD player.
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming)



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/ Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.
Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.

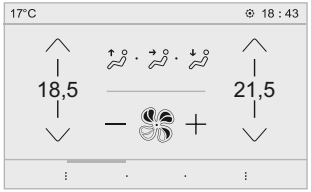
Radio (rotate): previous / next preset.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

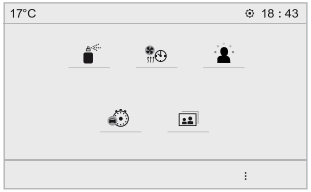
According to version.

Air conditioning



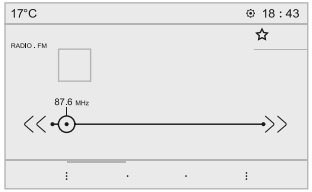
Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.

Applications



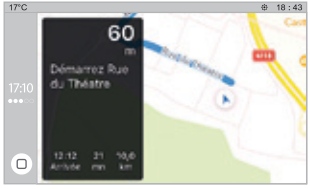
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



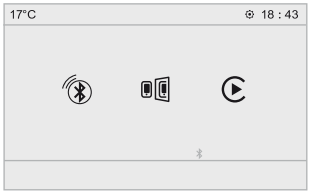
Select an audio source or radio station.

Navigation



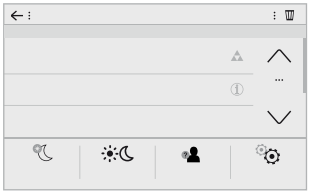
Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Driving



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Applications

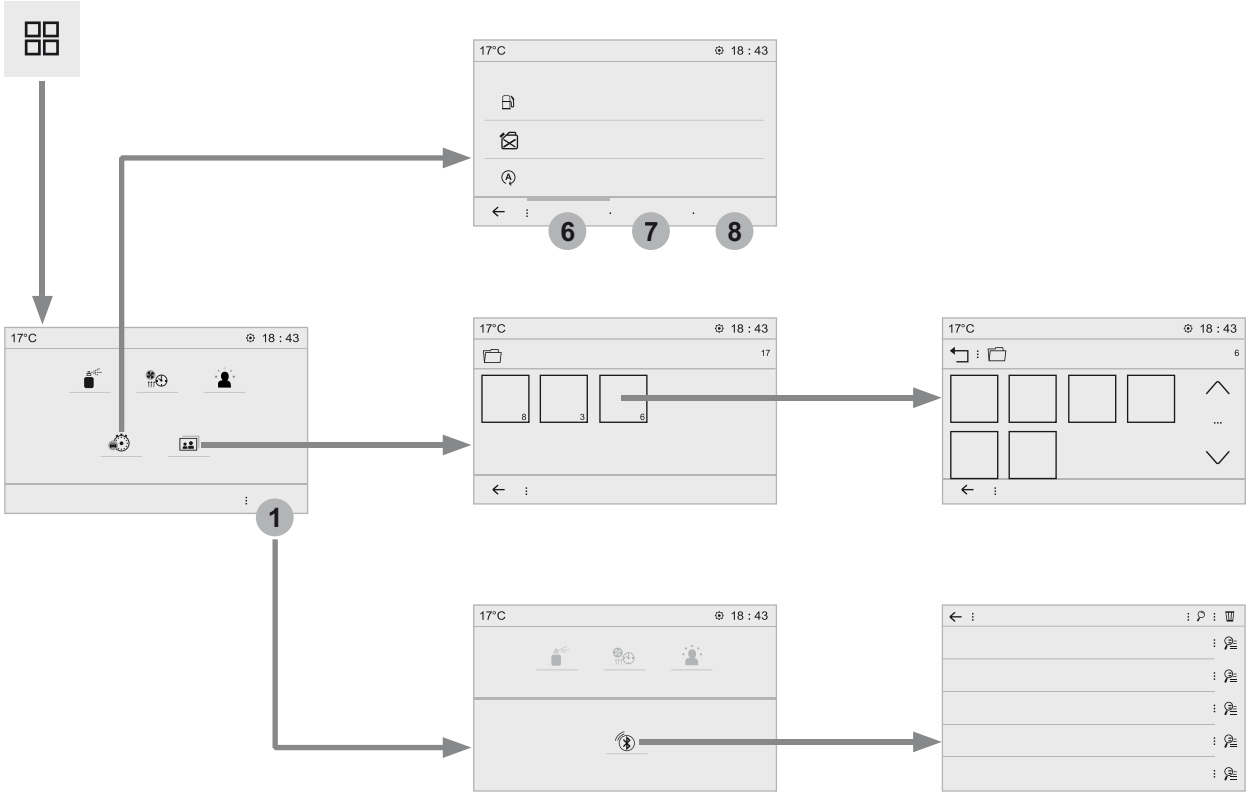
According to version / according to equipment.

Level 1	Level 2



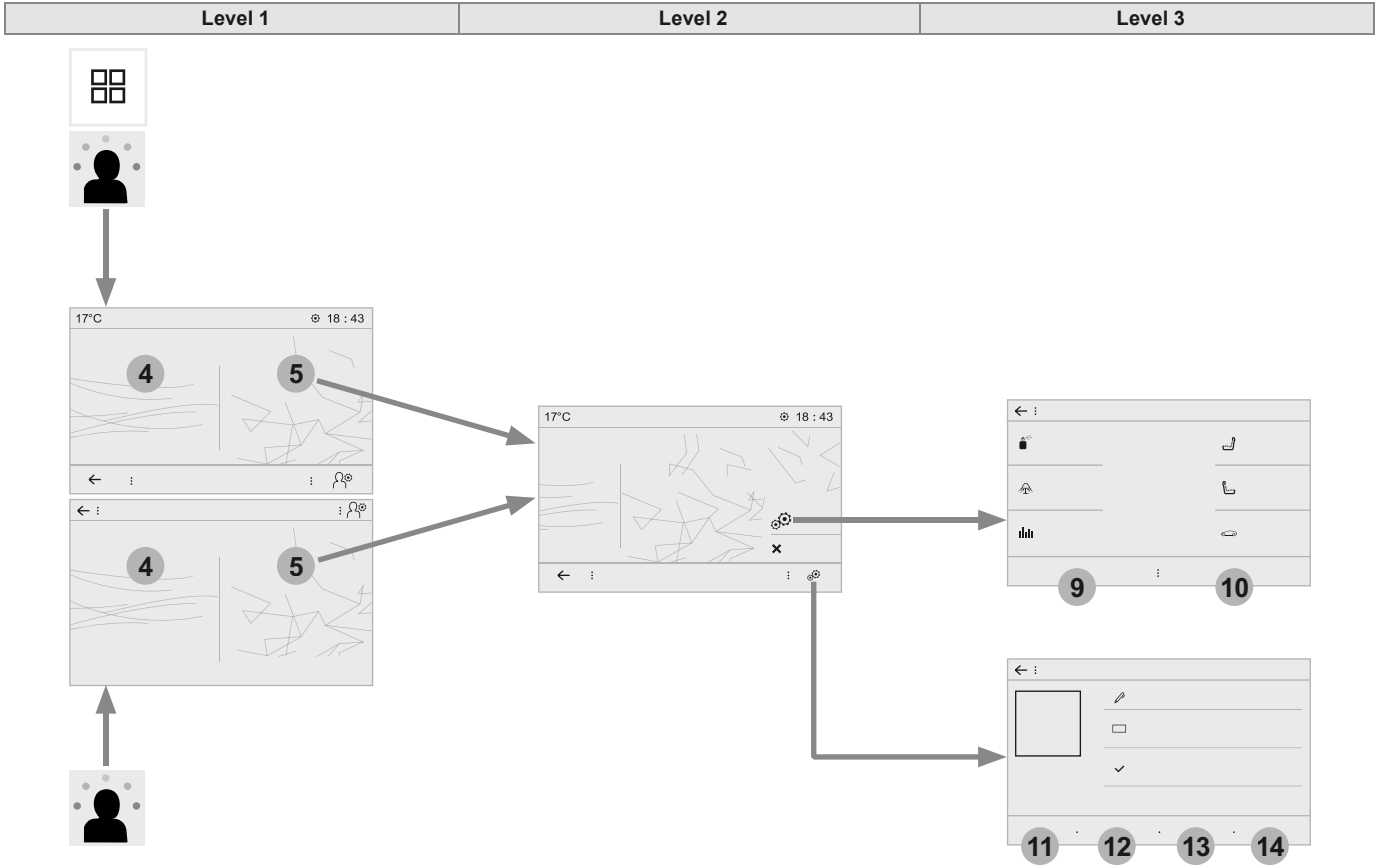
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Applications ↓ Scented air freshener			Select the fragrance.
			OFF	Deactivate the scented air freshener.
			Low	Adjust the intensity of diffusion of the fragrance.
			Medium	
			High	
		←		Confirm the selection and the settings.
	Applications ↓ Temperature conditioning	2	State	Activate/deactivate the temperature conditioning.
		3	Settings	Configure the pre-conditioning
				Save the parameters.
		←		Confirm the settings.
	Applications ↓ i-Cockpit Amplify	4	Relax	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment pre-sets and/or save it in a user profile.
		5	Boost	
			Profile management	
	i-Cockpit Amplify	4	Relax	Select an ambience combining each of the equipment pre-sets and/or save it in a user profile.
		5	Boost	
			Profile management	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

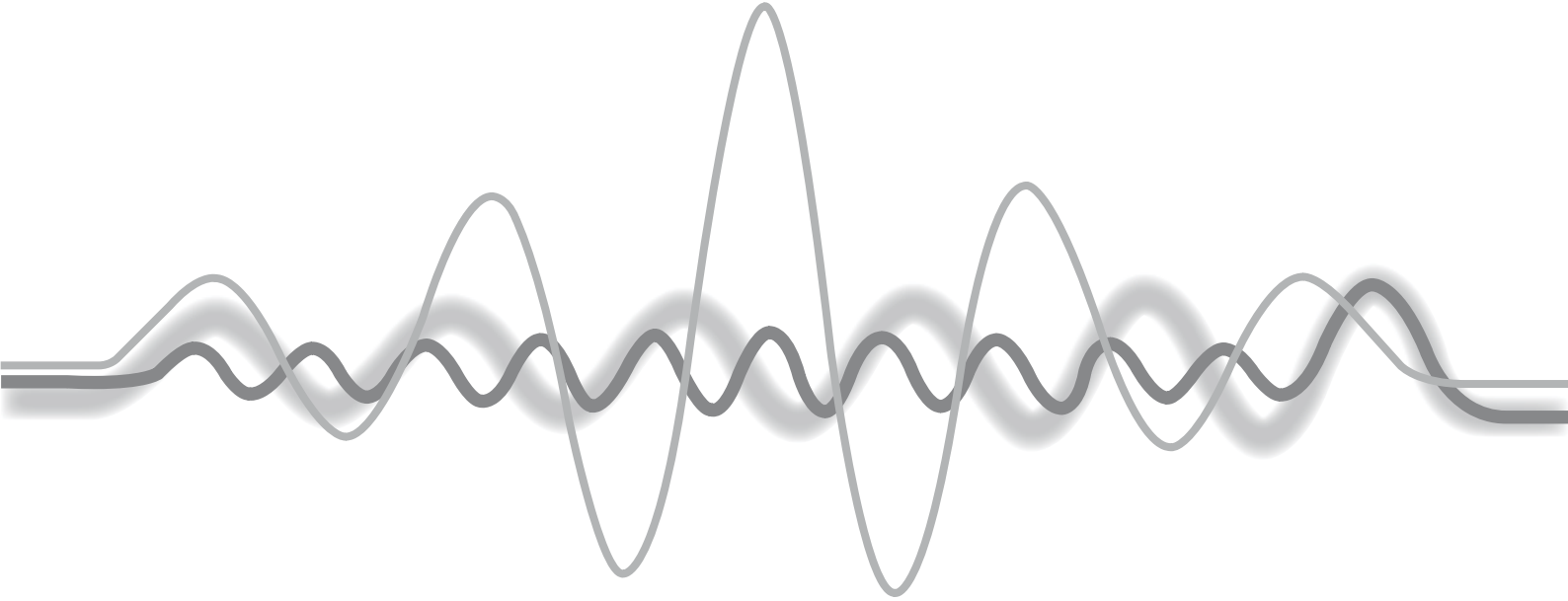


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications → Trip computer	6	Instant			System providing information about the current journey (range, consumption…).
		7	Trip 1			
		8	Trip 2			
		←				Go to the Applications page.
	Applications → Photos		Photo gallery		Photos	Go to the photo gallery.
				↰		Go back a level.
1	Applications → OPTIONS		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
					Delete	Delete one or more devices.

According to equipment



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications i-Cockpit Amplify 4 Relax 5 Boost OR i-Cockpit Amplify 4 Relax 5 Boost		Settings		Fragrance	Select a fragrance.
					Lighting	Adjust the intensity of the ambience lighting.
					Ambience	Adjust the sound ambience.
					Driver massage	Select and configure the driver massage.
					Passenger Massage	Select and configure the passenger massage.
					Dynamic	Set the driving mode.
				9	Save settings	Save the settings.
				10	Reset the mode	Reset the ambience parameters.
				←		Confirm the selections and settings.
		×	Deactivate			Deactivate the "i-Cockpit Amplify function.
			Profile management	11	Profile 1	Configure the profiles.
				12	Profile 2	
				13	Profile 3	
				14	Common profile	
				←		Save the settings.
		←				Confirm the selections and settings.



Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.

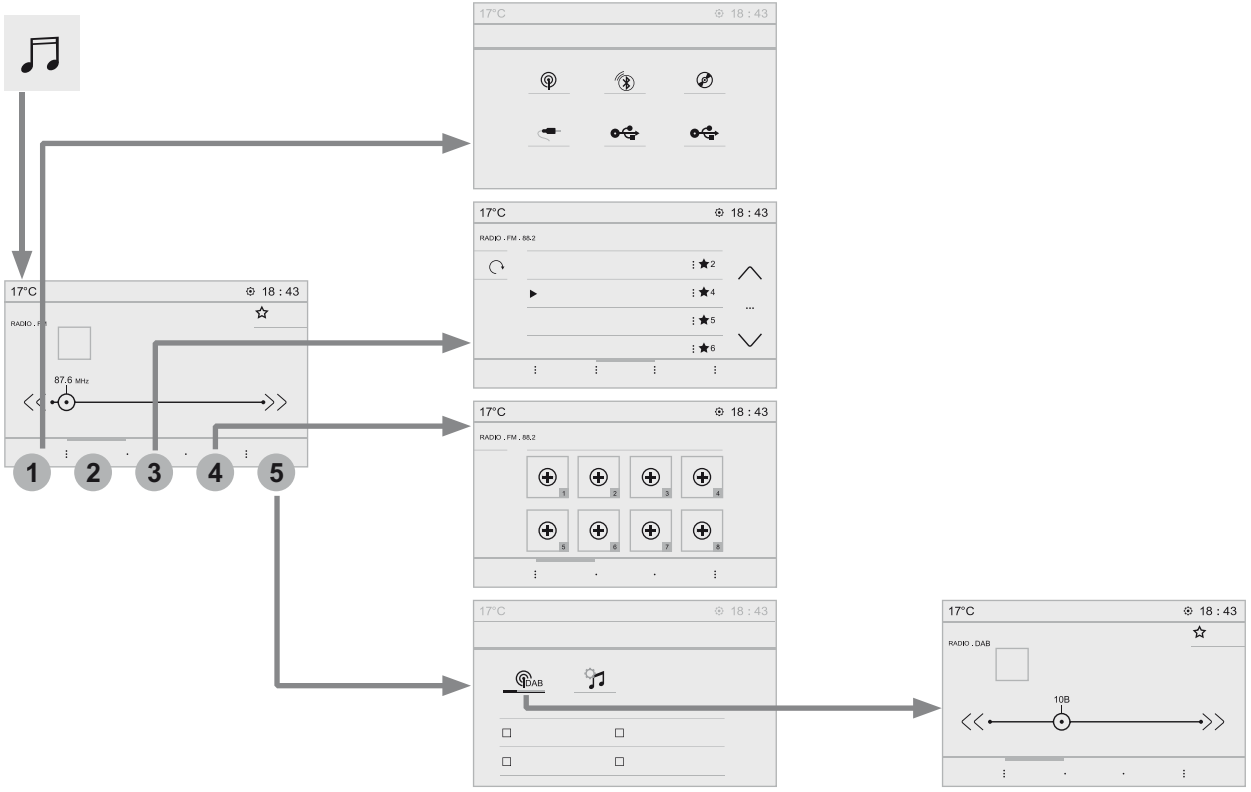


Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Radio Media

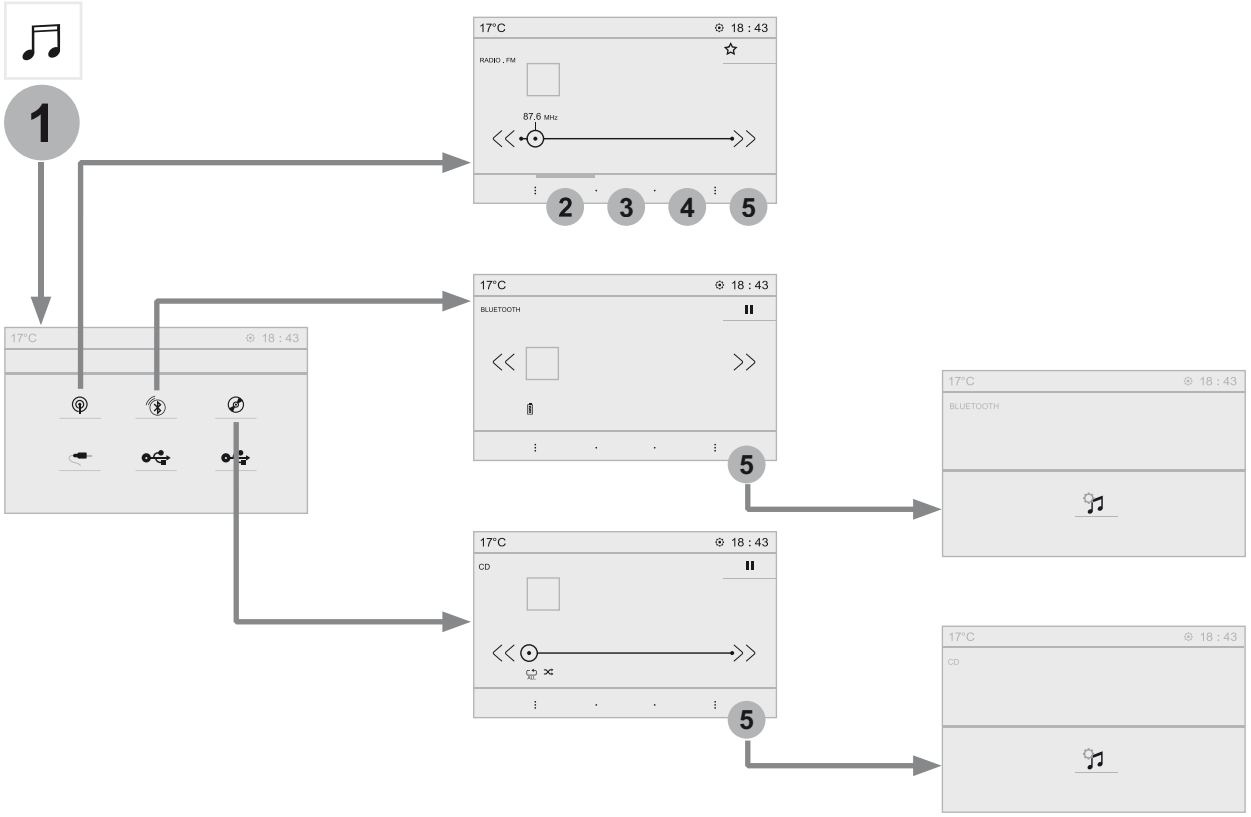
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



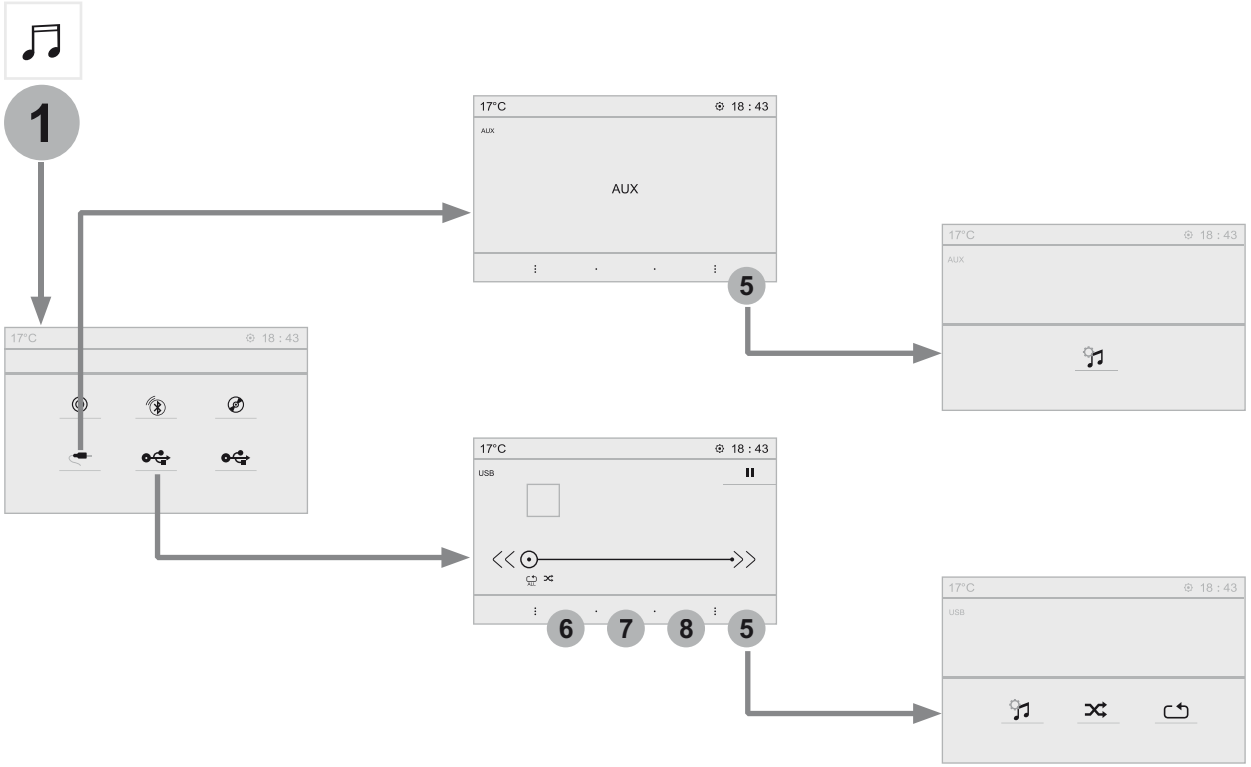
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
1	Radio Media → SOURCES		Radio	Select change of source.
			Bluetooth	
			CD	
			AUX	
			USB	
			iPod	
2	Radio Media → Frequency		FM / DAB / AM	Display the current radio station.
3	Radio Media → List			Update the list according to the stations received.
			Preset	Make a short press to preset the station.
4	Radio Media → Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
5	Radio Media → OPTIONS		AM band / DAB band / FM band	Press the Band button to change waveband.
			Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
			News	Activate or deactivate the options.
			TA	
			RDS	
			FM-DAB Follow-up	
MHz KHz	Radio Media → 87.5 MHz			Enter a frequency of the FM and AM bands on the virtual keypad.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Radio	2	Frequency			Display the current radio station.
		3	List			Display the list of stations received.
		4	Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
		5	OPTIONS	FM	FM band / DAB band / AM band	Press the band button to change band.
					Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
				☑	News	Activate or deactivate the options.
				☑	TA	
				☑	RDS	
				☑	FM-DAB Follow-up	
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Bluetooth	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → CD					Display the details of the music being played.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → AUX	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → USB	6	Player			Display the details of the music being played.
		7	Tracks list			Display the current selection.
		8	Library			Display the music library.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

> **!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.



Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**News**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TAalert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

5

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

On the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.

On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".



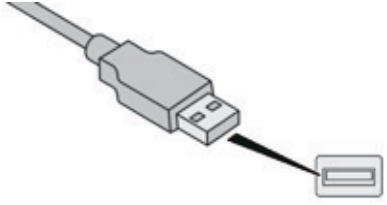
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth Streaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav, .wma, .aac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).

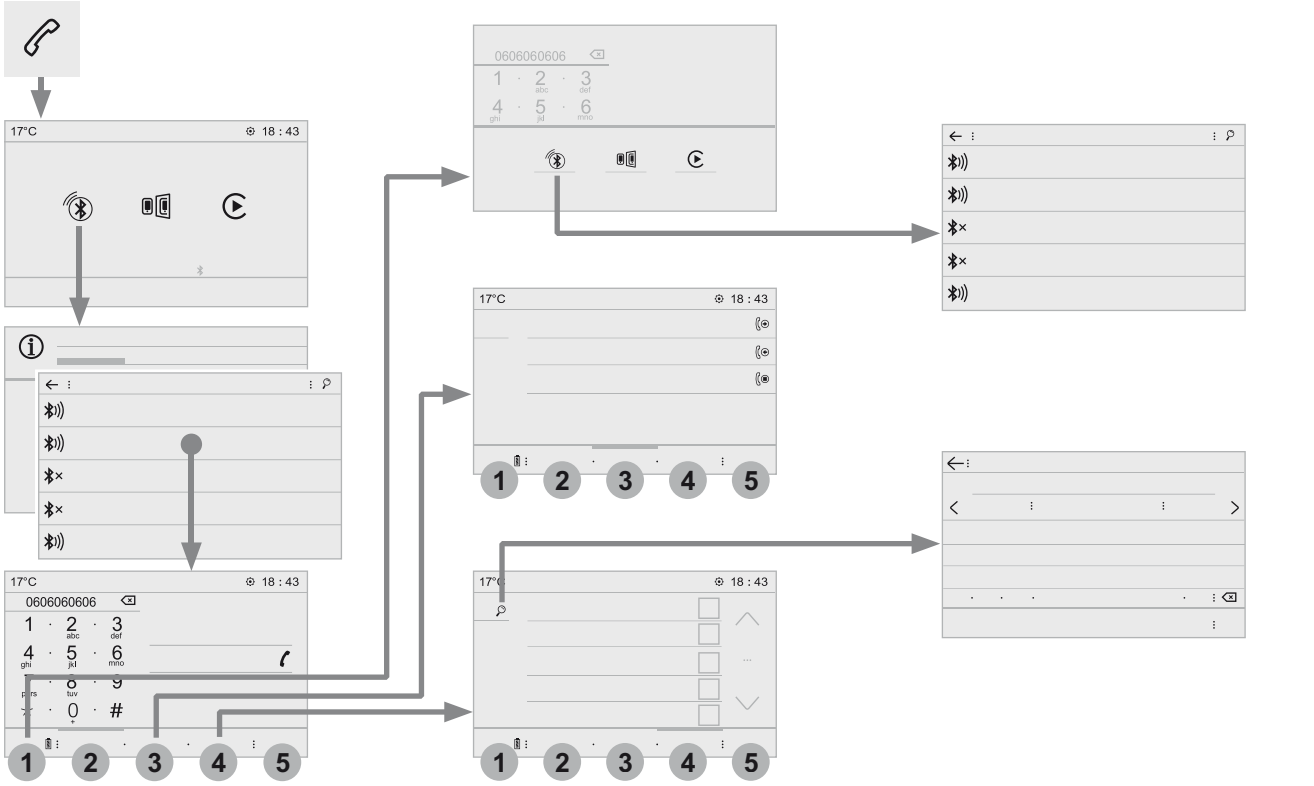
It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

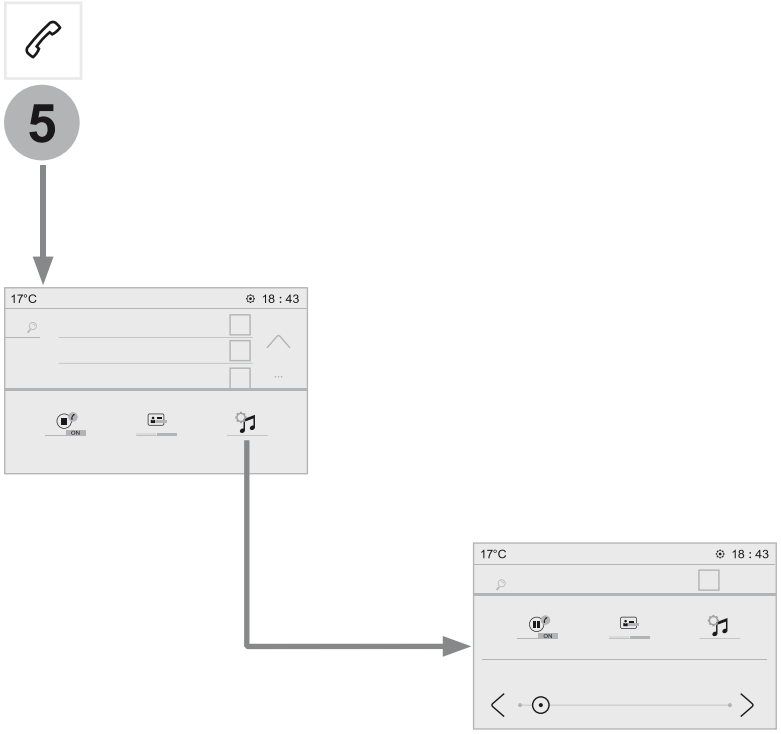
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



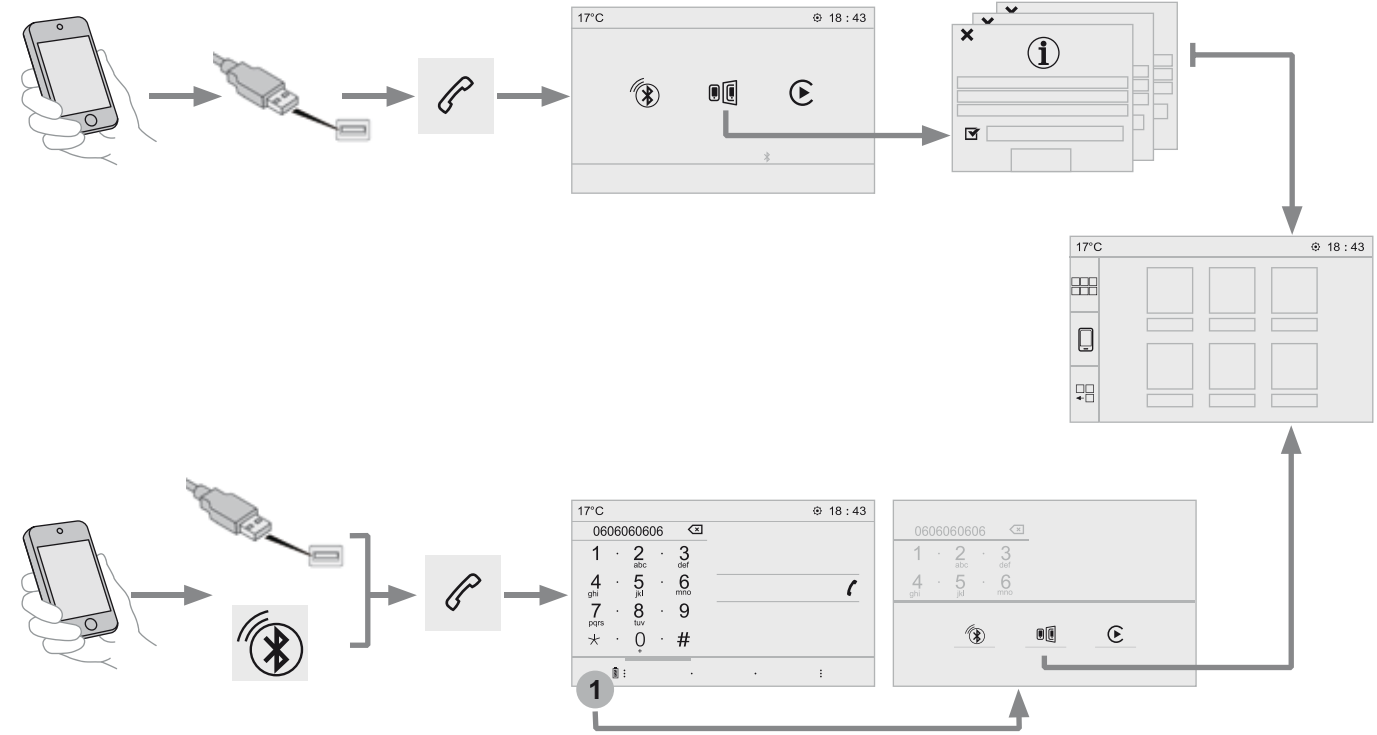
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
1	Telephone → Bluetooth search → PHONE		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
					Delete	Delete one or more devices.
			MirrorLink			Open the MirrorLink function.
			CarPlay			Open the CarPlay function.
2	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Keypad					Enter a telephone number.
3	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Recent calls		All			View the calls according to the presentation selected. Select a contact to make the call.
			Outgoing			
			Missed			
			Incoming			
4	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Contacts		Search		Confirm	Search for a contact in the contacts directory.
			Telephone			Go to the details of the contact sheet.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ On hold (auto)		ON - OFF	Activate or deactivate the automatic placing on hold of the current conversation.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Sort contacts by name Sort contacts by first name			Sort the contacts by Surname-first name or First name-surname.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Ring volume			Adjust the volume of the ringtone.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that "Bluetooth®" be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



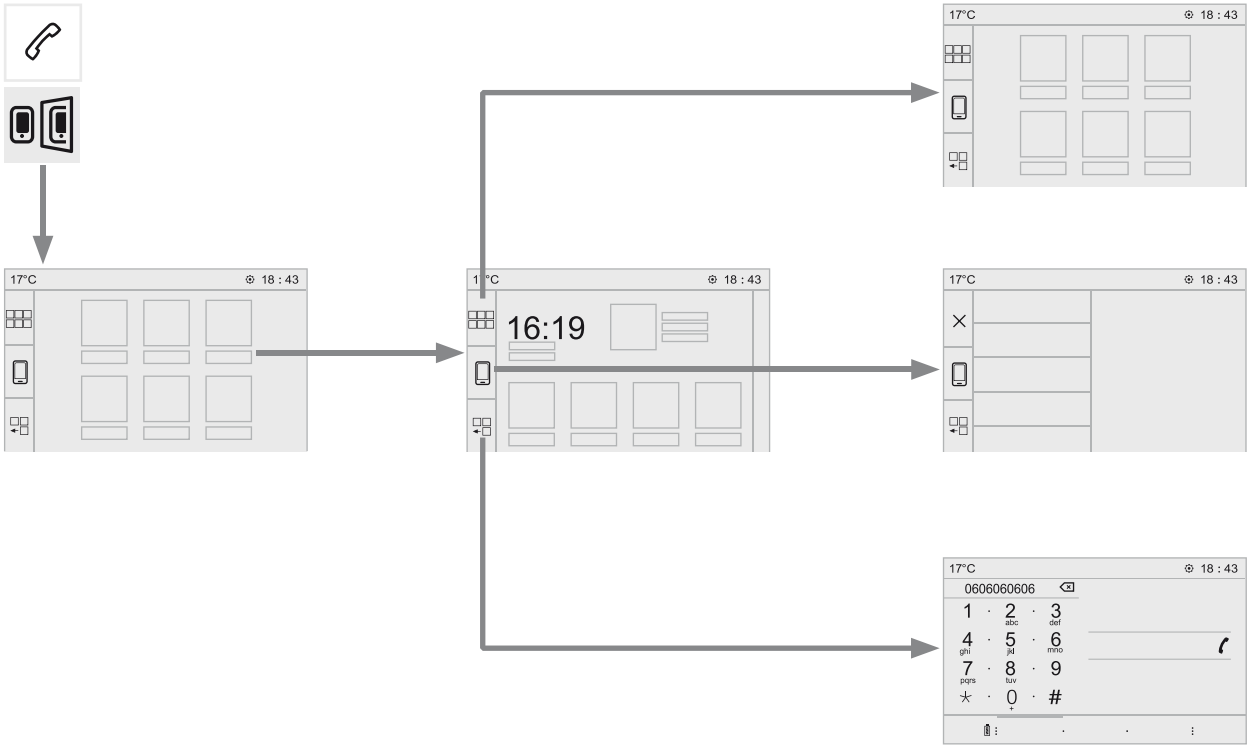
Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

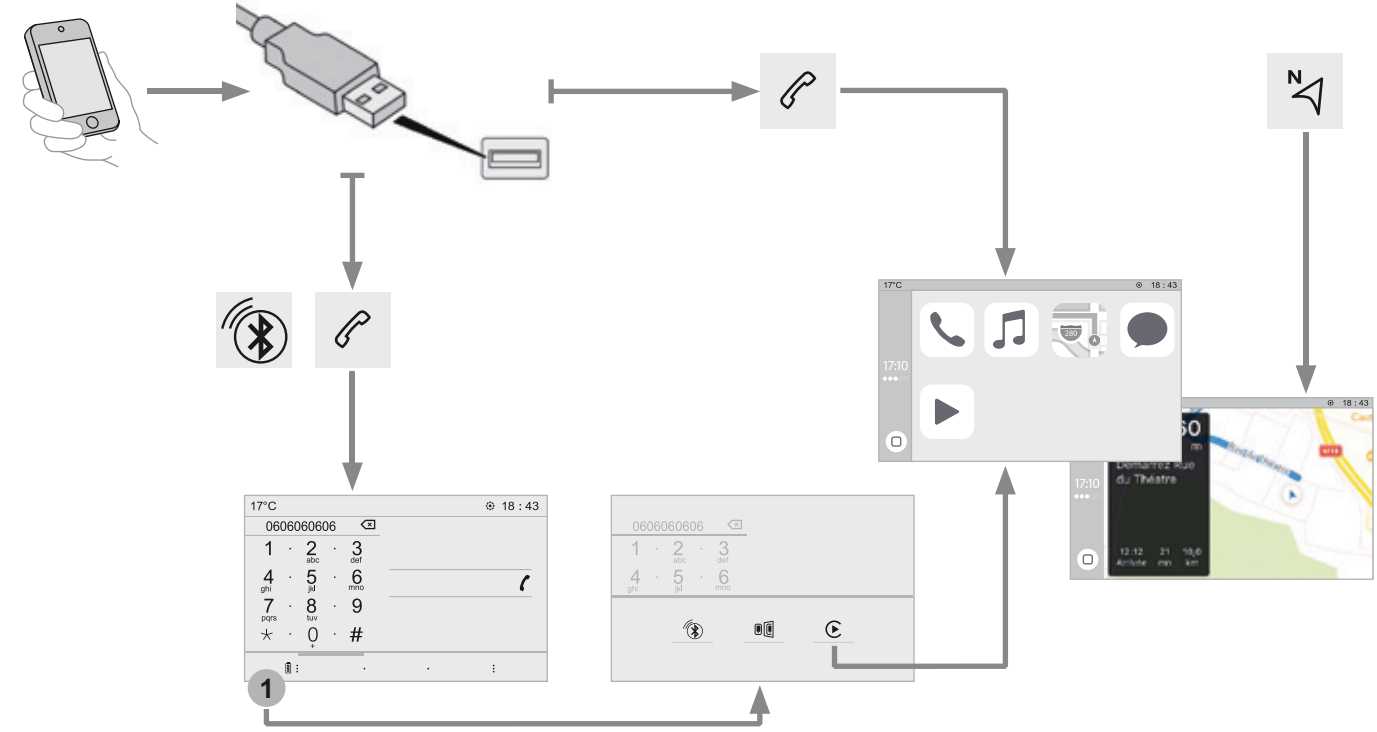
i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
					Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Telephone** ↓ **MirrorLink™**				Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
					Go to the primary page of the "Telephone" menu.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:


Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.


Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.


Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.


Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".


Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.



Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

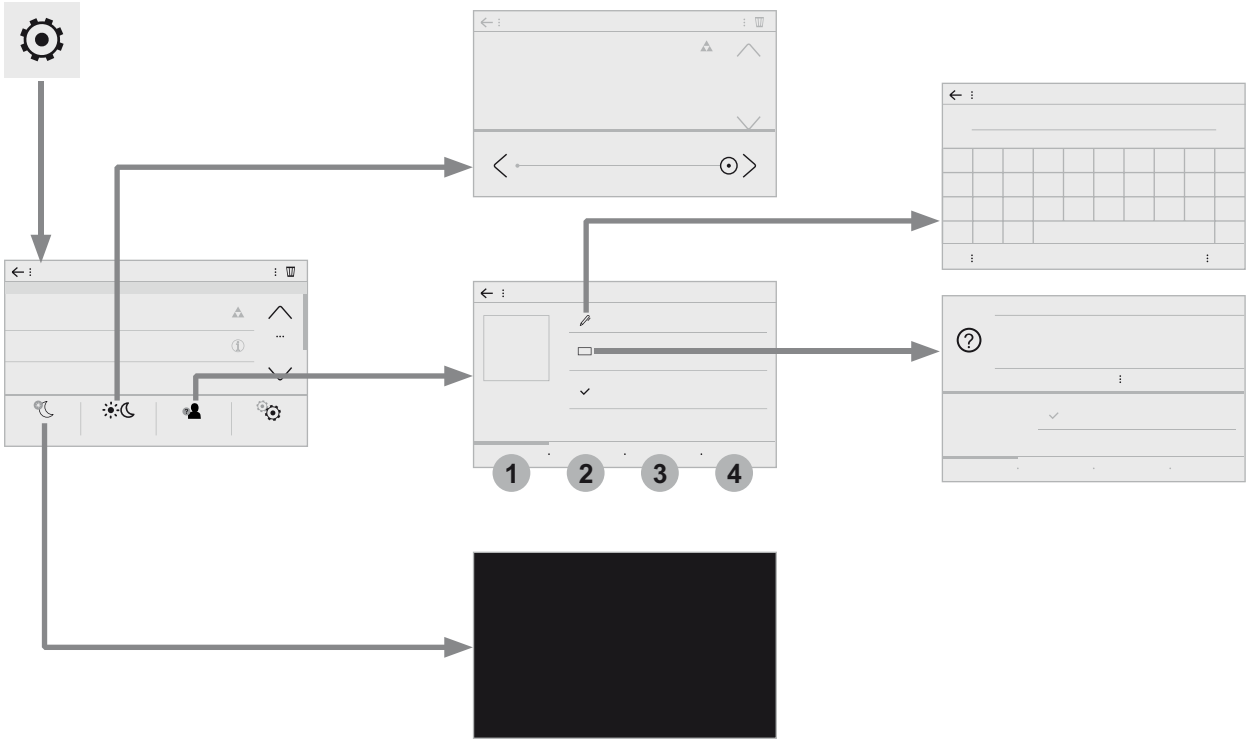


Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

According to version / according to equipment

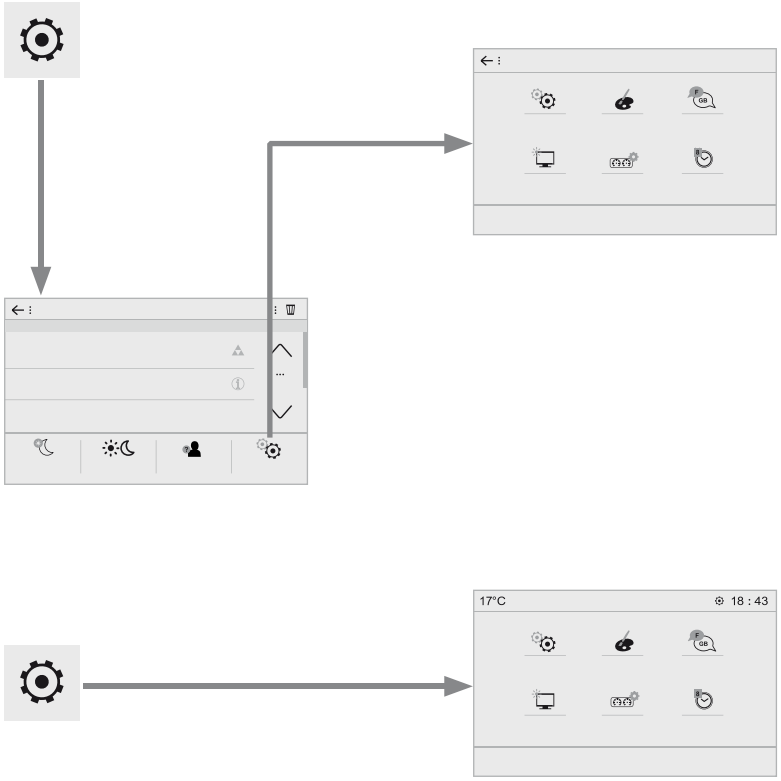
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings ↓ Brightness		Ambience			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
	Settings ↓ Profiles	1	Profile 1			Select a profile.
		2	Profile 2			
		3	Profile 3			
		4	Common profile			
			Name:		Profile name modification	Configure the profiles.
			Reset the profile		Yes / No	
		✔	Profile activated			Activate/deactivate the profile selected.
						Save the settings.
	Settings ↓ Dark					Function which switches off the lit display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.

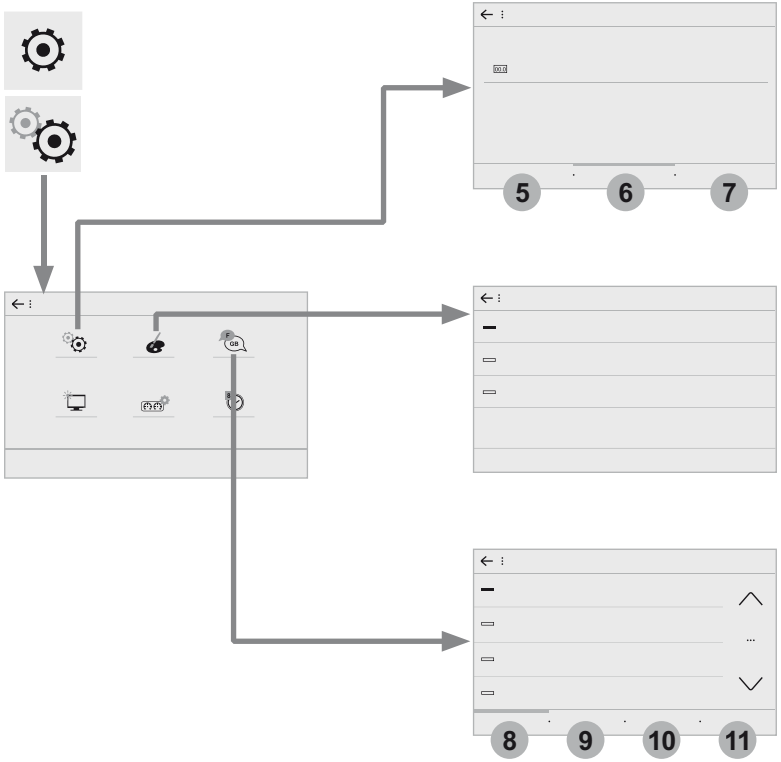
According to equipment

Level 1	Level 2

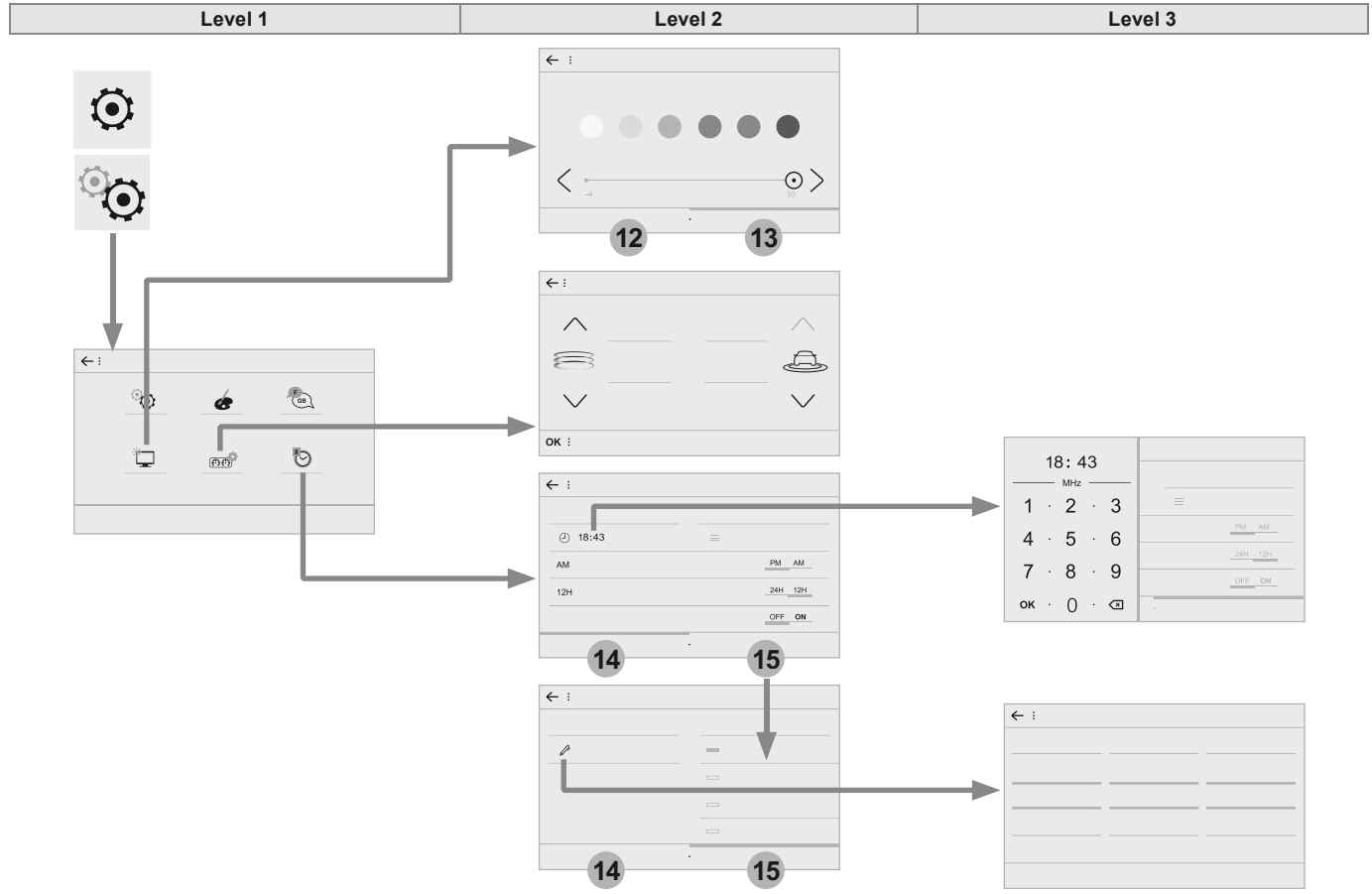


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ Configuration		**System configuration**	Configure certain system parameters.
			Ambience	Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
			Language	Select the display language for the the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Screen configuration	Set the configuration of the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Customization	Configure the instrument panel for a personalised display.
			Date and time	Set the date and time and select the display format.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → System configuration	5	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Configure the display units for the distance, consumption and temperature.
					Temperatures	
		6	Factory settings		Reset	Restore the original settings.
		7	System info		View	Consult the version of the different modules installed in the system.
						Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Ambience					Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
						
						
						Confirm the selection and start the change of ambience.
	Settings → Configuration → Language	8	All			Select the display language for the screen and/or the instrument panel.
		9	Europe			
		10	Asia			
		11	America			
						Save the parameter.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
12
13
OK
18:43
AM
12H
PM AM
24H 12H
OFF ON
14
15
18: 43
MHz
1 · 2 · 3
4 · 5 · 6
7 · 8 · 9
OK · 0 ·
14
15

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → Screen configuration	12	Brightness			Select the display brightness level.
		13	Animation	☑	Automatic scrolling	Activate or deactivate the parameters.
				☑	Animated transitions	
		←				Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Temperature conditioning		Customization			Choose and select the display information required.
		OK	Confirm			Confirm the selections.
	Settings → Configuration → Date and time	14	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Set the time zone.
				—	AM	Select the display format.
				—	12h	
				—	GPS Synchronisation	Activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the satellites.
				←		Save the settings.
		15	Date		Date	Set the date and select the display format.
					Setting the date	
				←		Save the settings.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".



Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust the brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

5 Press "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

6 Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

7 Press "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

12 Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to set the brightness of the screen and/or instrument panel (according to version).

13 Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with satellites (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

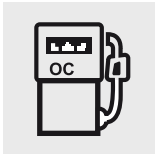
Česky [Czech]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbHerklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH seadme "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaruoja, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jiddikjara li dan "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-ħtigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott,Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozom, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadcza, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH yfir því að "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

ECE type-approval certificate No. is 057902 (concerning the type-approval of an electric/electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)	
emitted frequency range and power: Frequency band Radiated Power [EIRP] Hints / Restriction 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz WiFi < 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth < 2,6 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 & A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.	
Brazil	 "Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."
Canada	***This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:*** ***(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and*** ***(2) this device must accept any interference received,*** ***including interference that may cause undesired operation.***
Japan	R= Radio Type Approval Number: BBBBBBBBBB T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: X JJ-5NNN AAA
Mexico	**NOM-121-SCT1-2009** **La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:** **(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y** **(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.**
South Korea	해당 무선 설비는 운용 중 전파혼신 가능성이 있음.
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 1. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。
USA / Canada	This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by (Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH) may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.

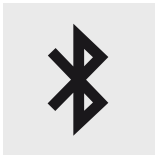
Bluetooth® audio system

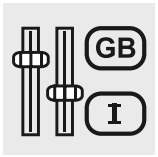












Contents

First steps	154
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	155
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	156
Menus	157
Radio	158
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	160
Media	162
Telephone	167
Frequently asked questions	172

The different functions and adjustments described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On / Off
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC

Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation / Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

1

Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a station.



Radio:
Automatic step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.



Radio:
Manual step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Select previous / next MP3 track.
Media:
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU

Access to main menu.

TA

Activate / Deactivate TA (traffic announcements)
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND

Select waveband: FM / DAB / AM.

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone calls:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

MENU

Access to the main menu.

Increase volume.

Mute / Restore sound.

Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.



"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, End call.



"**Trip computer**".



"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, ...



"Connections": Manage connections, search for devices.



"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle settings, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search for radio stations.

▲ ▼ Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**RDS**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message.
When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA — Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA traffic announcements. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

TA — Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ — Select or deselect categories.

OK — Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

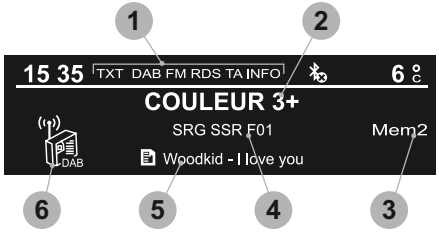
OK — With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ — Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

According to version

> If the current "DAB" radio station is not available on "FM", "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Display options:
if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display the name of the current radio station.

3 Preset radio station, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

4 Display the name of the multiplex service being used.

5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

> When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

> Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
> The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, ...)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex service".

TA Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

DAB / FM tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if there is one).
When "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.


Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.


Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

Media

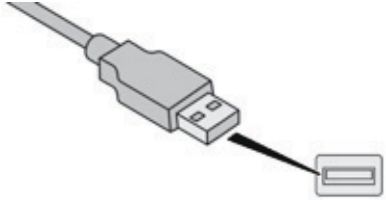
USB port

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on version.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes on the first connection. Reducing the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.



Insert a USB memory stick into the USB port or connect a USB peripheral device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

i While connected by USB, the portable device may be charged automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ Press this button to select the play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Choose by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"*.

OK

Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK

Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Press one of these buttons to go to the next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Jack auxiliary (AUX) socket



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, …) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or fast back.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC /

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).

SRC /

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE** * button.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls**. Contextual information may be displayed in the screen.

* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
** If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with .mp3, .wma, .wav and .aac file extensions, with a bit rate of of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
Other file types (mp4, ...) may be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended when recording.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3, .wma, .wav, .cbr, .vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (.mp4, ...) can be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

File names should have less than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g.: " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your a Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the v**ehicle stationary** and the ignition on

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Refer to the instructions for your telephone and to your service provider for the services available to you.

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.



Select the "**Connections**" menu.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Search for a Bluetooth device**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), check that the code displayed in the system and the telephone is the same and confirm.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**"*, "**Calls list**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

i Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands-free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Indicates that a device is connected.

A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates the audio streaming profile.

Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Then select and confirm:
- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.



During a call, press one of the buttons for more than 2 seconds.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth, you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

Hang up



In the contextual menu, select "**End call**" to end the call.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone mode



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Dual call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Directory

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.

Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

Confirm with **OK**.

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault in the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is broken.	The state of charge of the device may be too low.	Charge the battery of the portable device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The sound from the CD is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert a good quality CD and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (base, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call your voicemail box, via the telephone menu, using the number supplied by your service provider.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system **and** of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

Optional Digital tuner (DAB) (RU-9472 variant has DAB / RU9475 does not have DAB)



ADDENDUM TO USER GUIDE



PEUGEOT 3008

PEUGEOT



On-line user guide

Select one of the following means of access to view your user guide online...

Find your user guide on the Peugeot website, under "MyPeugeot".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Visiting the user guide online also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



Scan this QR code to access your user guide directly.

If the "MyPeugeot" section is not available on the Peugeot website for your country, you can find your user guide at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the publication period of your user guide corresponding to the date your vehicle went into circulation.

Interior

front seats 90-97
Multipoint massages 98
Seatbelts 168-171

Glove box 120
Front passenger airbag disabling 174, 178-181

Rear seats 130-132
Rear equipment 133-134
- 12 V point
- 230 V / 50 Hz point
- Rear armrest
- Ski door

Front equipment 119-127
- USB point
- 12 V point
- Front armrest
- Floor mat

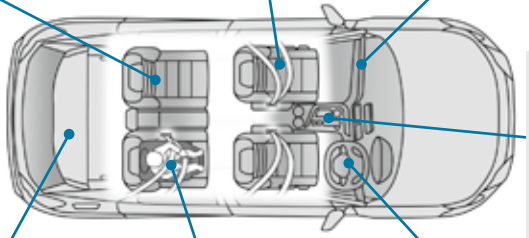
Wireless charger 122-123
Fragrance diffuser 125-126

Boot fittings 135-140
- Luggage space
- 12 V point
- Boot lighting
- Mobile boot floor
- Tie-down rings
- Retaining net for high loads

Warning triangle 307
Tool kit 309-311
Temporary tyre repair kit 312-316
Spare wheel 317-322

Airbags 172-176

Child seats 177-192
ISOFIX fastenings 186-189
i-Size child seats 190-191



Driver's cab

Privacy drape / Sunroof 84-87
Ceiling lights 128
Ambient lighting 129
Emergency or assistance call 158-159
Belt indicator display / front passenger airbag 169-170, 174
Inside mirror 101

Touch screen 48-53
Function i-Cockpit Amplify 102-103
Distress signal 157

Changing / Replacing a fuse 331
Opening the bonnet 294

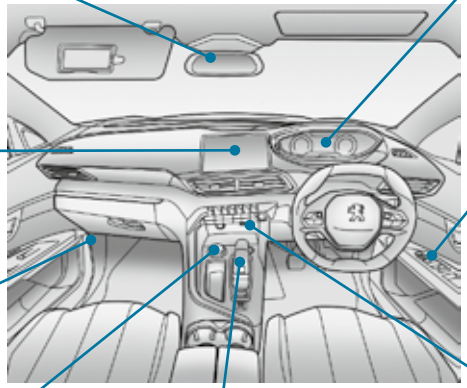
Intruder detection alarm/ Starting with knob START/STOP 200-202
Advanced Grip Control 164-165
Hill Assist Descent Control 166-167

Manual gearbox 210
Automatic gearbox 211-215
Electric parking brake 203-209

Digital instrument panel 12-15
Warning lamps 16-31
Indicators 32-40
Control knobs 40-42
- Daily odometer/CHECK
- Dimmer control/ambient lighting

Outside mirrors 99-100
Window winder 82-83

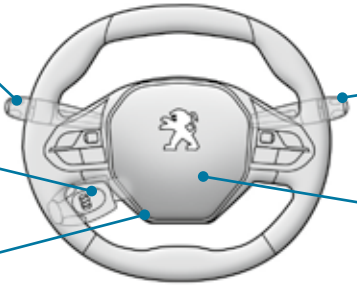
Heating / Ventilation 104-105
Monozone semi-automatic air conditioning 108-110
Bizone automatic air conditioning 111-115
Front demisting/defrosting 116
Rear demisting/defrosting 118
Heated seats 97



Driver's cab

Embedded command steering wheel

Lighting controls	141-144, 146-150
Speed memorisation	226
Speed limit recognition	227-230
Speed limiting device	231-233
Speed regulator	234-237
Dynamic cruise control with Stop function	238-246
Steering wheel adjustment	99



Wiper controls	152-155
Trip computer	43-44
Dynamic pack	217
Horn	157

Lateral control bar

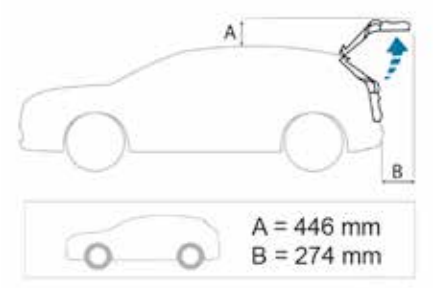


Unlocking system - Opening/closing of the hands free hatchback	76-81
Programmable heating	Addition
Headlamp main beam setting	145
Interior monitoring alarm	70-73
Childproof locks	194

Hands-free tailgate

General points

Activation and deactivation of the motorised tailgate function is done in the vehicle settings menu.
Movement requests of the tailgate should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.



! Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



! Do not insert your finger in the motorised tailgate locking system - Risk of serious injury!

Safety anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees to allow the obstacle to be cleared.
Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:
- ensure that there is no person close to the rear of the vehicle,
- watch the activity of your passengers, particularly any children.

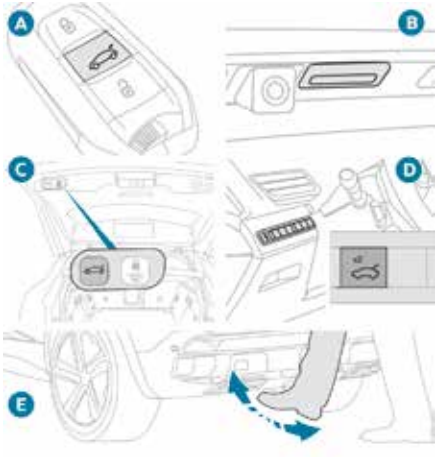
Bicycle carrier / Towbar

The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.
When installing a bicycle carrier on a towbar with connection of a cable to the towbar socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.
If using a towbar or bicycle carrier not recommended by PEUGEOT, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Motorised operation

Activation / deactivation of the motorised operation of the tailgate is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.



There are several ways of operating the motorised tailgate:

A. using the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system,
B. using the exterior control on the tailgate,
C. using the interior tailgate control,
D. using the control on the dashboard,
E. using the "hands-free access" procedure below the rear bumper.

Opening / Closing

☞ Press and hold the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

☞ Press the exterior control **B** of the tailgate with the electronic key on your person.

or

☞ Press the interior tailgate control **C** (closing only).

or

☞ Press control **D** on the dashboard twice repeatedly.

or

☞ With the electronic key on you, use the "hands-free" access **E** by performing a "kicking" movement below the rear bumper.

The command is confirmed by an audible signal.

The tailgate opens, either completely by

default, or to the position memorised beforehand.
If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate.
The request to open the tailgate with one of the controls **A**, **B** or **E** enables you to unlock the vehicle or the tailgate alone beforehand, if selective unlocking of the boot is activated.
Closing the tailgate with the "hands-free" access function enables you to lock the vehicle.

At any point, It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate.
Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement in progress.
Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again resumes the movement.

Hands-Free Access

Activation and deactivation of the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" system is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.

Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the quick foot movement.
Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot - Risk of burns!

Automatic locking using "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function



To activate automatic locking of the vehicle when closing the tailgate using the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function:



☞ Press this button. The indicator lamp will light up.
Pressing this button again deactivates the function. The indicator lamp turns off.

Memorising an opening position

To limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:

- ☞ open the tailgate to the desired position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Memorisation of the maximum opening position of the tailgate is confirmed by an audible signal.

To cancel the memorised position:

- ☞ stop the tailgate in an intermediate position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Cancellation of the memorised position is confirmed by an audible signal.

Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.
The tailgate must be immobile.
When opening and closing a motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

Repeatedly opening and closing of the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.
Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Reinitialising the motorised tailgate

This operation is necessary where there is no movement - after detection of an obstacle, connecting or recharging the battery, etc.

- ☞ Open the tailgate manually, if necessary.
- ☞ Fully close the tailgate manually.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Precautions in use

In wintry conditions
In the event of an accumulation of snow on the tailgate, clear the snow before commanding a motorised opening of the tailgate.
The formation of ice can block the tailgate and prevent its opening: wait until the ice melts with the heating of the passenger compartment.

When washing
When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

Recommendations related to the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function

If several kicking movements to operate the tailgate have no effect, wait a few seconds before trying again.

The function automatically deactivates in heavy rain or following a build-up of snow.

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic pollution (smartphone etc.).

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

The function may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly if:

- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,
- you are washing your vehicle,
- your vehicle is being serviced,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the sensor zone or deactivate the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function.

Programmable heating

The programmable heating operates independently from the engine.
With the engine off, it preheats the coolant circuit to ensure optimal engine operating temperature as soon as it is started up.
The programmable heating is switched on by the long range remote control. It may be immediate or deferred thanks to a programming function.



Always switch off the programmable heating when refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.
The programmable heating is powered by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, ensure that the remaining quantity of fuel is sufficient. If the fuel tank is in its reserve, we strongly recommend you do not programme the heating.
To avoid the risks of intoxication or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which are not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - risk of fire!

The volumetric alarm movement detector may be disrupted by the programmable heating air flows when it is operating.
To avoid any untimely triggering of the alarm when using the programmable heating, it is advisable that the volumetric monitoring is deactivated.

Adapting the programmable heating enables you to use it to preheat the passenger compartment of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Presentation

Remote control



The heating programming remote control has the following buttons and displays:

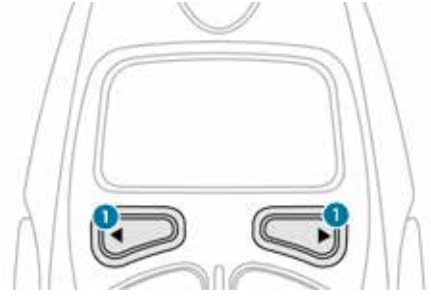
1. Buttons for functions scroll-down menu.
2. Function symbols:
   clock, temperature, operating time, programmed time, heater operation, heating management.
3. Digital displays:
   time, temperature, operating time, programmed time or heating level.
4. Off button.
5. On button.

Operating indicator light



lit up: deferred programmed start-up.
flashing: heating on.
turned off: heating off.

Function display



☞ Press button **1** several times to display the functions.

The first press on the left or right button displays the time.
Then, the left button is used to scroll to the programmed time then the heating level ("**C1**" to "**C5**").
The right button is used to scroll to the passenger compartment temperature then the heater operating time when immediately switched on.

The passenger compartment temperature information is only available when the engine is off.

Setting the time



☞ After having displayed the time, using button **1**, press on buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol will flash.

☞ Set the time with button **1**.
☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save it.



This symbol will be displayed.

Immediate switching on



☞ Press on button **5** until the message "**OK**" appears.
When the signal has been received, the message "**OK**" is displayed along with the operating time.

The heater starts and this symbol is displayed.

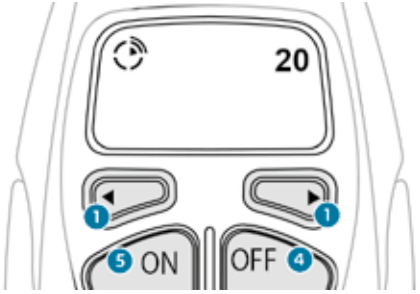
This indicator light flashes during heating.

☞ To deactivate the function, press on button **4** until the message "**OK**" appears.

This symbol and the indicator light will turn off.

i During these operations, if the message "**FAIL**" appears, it means that the signal has not been received. Follow the procedure again after having changed position.

Adjusting the operating time



☞ Press on button **1** to display the operating time

This symbol will be displayed.

☞ After having displayed the operating time, press on buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.

This symbol will flash.

☞ Adjust the time by pressing on the buttons **1**: by 10 min increment and maximum value of 30 mins.

☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save the operating time.



This symbol will be displayed.

The factory value setting is 30 minutes.

Deferred switching on

You must programme your start time for the system to automatically calculate the optimal time to start the heater.



Programming the start time

☞ Press on button **1** to display the programming time.



This symbol will be displayed.

☞ After having displayed the programming time, press on buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol will flash.

☞ Set the time by pressing on button **1**.
☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save it.



This symbol will be displayed.

Activation / Deactivation

☞ After having displayed the programming time using button **1**, press on button **5** until the message "**OK**" appears.



When the signal has been received, the message "**OK**" is displayed along with this symbol.



This indicator lights up until the heater starts.



This symbol is displayed when the heater starts.

HTM: Heat Thermo Management

☞ To deactivate the programming, press on button **4** until the message "**OK**" appears.



This symbol will disappear.

During these operations, if the message "**FAIL**" appears, it means that the signal has not been received. Follow the procedure again after having changed position.

Stopping the heating

☞ Press button **5**.



This symbol will remain displayed.



This indicator light turns off.

Changing the heating level

The system has 5 heating levels: **C1** (lowest level) to **C5** (highest level).

☞ After having displayed the heating level using button **1**, press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5**.
The letter "**C**" will flash.

☞ Adjust the heating level by pressing on button **1**.

☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save the selected level.
The letter "**C**" will be displayed.

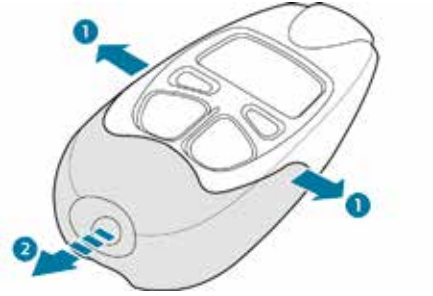
The presets are replaced by the new entries. The programmed times are memorised until the next change.
When the start time is activated, it is not possible to change the heating level. You must first deactivate the start time.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the programmable heating, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing the battery

The remote control is powered by a 6V-28L battery which is provided.
Information on the screen indicates when this battery needs to be changed.



- ☞ Unclip the case.
- ☞ Replace the battery observing the polarities.
- ☞ Reset the remote control.

Do not throw away used batteries, take them to an approved collection point.

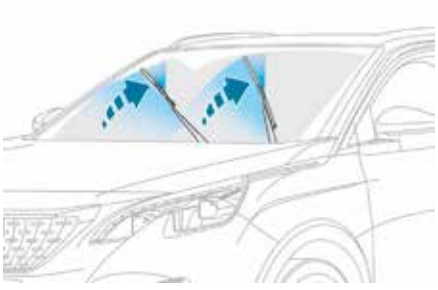
Resetting the remote control

If the battery is disconnected or when changing the battery, the remote control must be reset.

- ☞ After turning on the power, within the next 5 seconds, press button **4** for 1 second.
  If the operation is successful, the message "**OK**" will be displayed on the remote control's screen.
  If there is a fault, the message "**FAIL**" will appear.
- ☞ Start the operation again.

Wiper control stalk

Windscreen wash



☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you. The windscreen wash and then the wiper will operate for a fixed period.

The windscreen wash includes a wiper blade system with integral washer jets. The screenwash fluid is sprayed from along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid. In some cases, depending on the composition or the colour of the liquid and the outside lighting, the liquid spray may be hardly perceptible.

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the windscreen washer if the windscreen washer reservoir is empty. Only operate the windscreen washer if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use windscreen washer fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

Trailer stability assist

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability programme (ESC) must not have any faults.
Between 36 and 100 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detects swaying movements in the trailer, it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of the indicator lamp in the instrument panel and activation of the brake lights.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle.
For advice on driving safely when **Towing a trailer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving conditions, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It must not encourage the driver to take additional risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or drive at too high a speed.
In certain cases, the swaying of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden swaying of the trailer.

Consultez la législation en vigueur dans votre pays, avant d'installer votre enfant à cette place.

“Rearwards-facing”



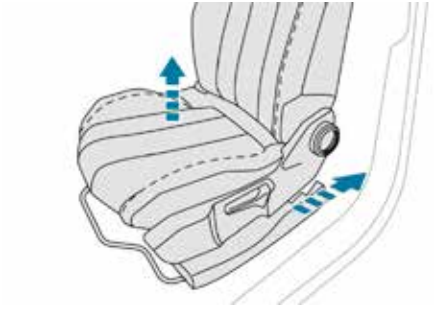
If a “rearwards-facing” child seat is installed in the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat in the maximum rear longitudinal position, which is the highest position, with the back straightened up.
The passenger airbag should be neutralised, otherwise **there is a danger that the child will be seriously injured or killed when the airbag opens**.

“Forward-facing”



If a “forward-facing” child seat is installed in the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat in the maximum rear longitudinal position, which is the highest position, with the back straightened up. Leave the passenger airbag active.

! Ensure that the seatbelt is taut.
For child seats with a stay, ensure that this has stable contact with the ground. If necessary adjust the passenger seat.



Passenger seat adjusted in the highest position and the maximum rear longitudinal position.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

! Never install a “rearwards-facing” child restraining system on a protected seat with an activated front airbag. This can cause death or serious injury to the child.





The warning label, located on each site of the passenger sun visor repeats this order.
In accordance with current regulations, you will find this warning in all the required languages in the following tables.

Passenger airbag OFF





i For more information on the **Airbags**, particularly on neutralising the front passenger airbag, please refer to the corresponding column.

Location of child seats attached with the seat belt

In accordance with European legislation, this table indicates the installation options for child seats fixed with the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** depending on the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat			**Front passenger airbag**	**Weight of the child**/ indicative age			
				Less than 13 kg (Groups 0 **(b)** and 0+ Up to around 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (Group 1) From around 1 to 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (Group 2) From around 3 to 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (Group 3) From around 6 to 10 years
Row 1 **(c)**	Passenger seat With vertical adjustment*		"OFF" deactivated	U	U	U	U
			"ON" activated	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 **(d)**	Rear seat behind the driver			U	U	U	U
	Rear seat behind the passenger			U	U	U	U
	Central rear seat **(e)**			U	U	U	U

* maximum vertical position.

U: Seat adapted to installation of a child seat attached with a seat belt and universal approved “rearward-facing” and/or “forward-facing”.

UF: Seat adapted to installation of a child seat attached with a seat belt and universal approved “rearward-facing”.

X: Seat not adapted to installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles with a seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and “car” beds cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

(c) Check the current legislation in your country before installing your child in this seat.

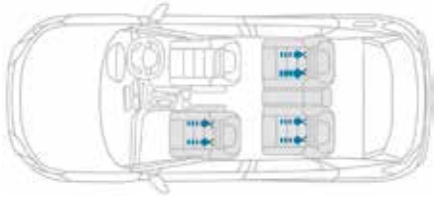
(d) To install a child seat in a rear seat rearward-facing or forward-facing, bring forward the front seat, then raise the back to allow enough space to the child seat and the child's legs.

(e) A child seat with stay should never be installed in this place.

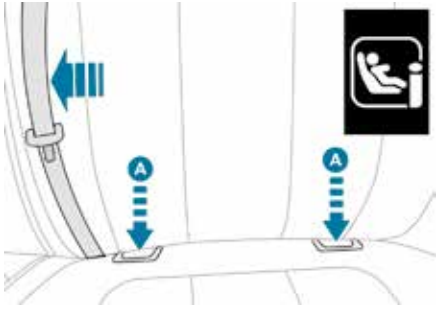
! Remove and arrange the headrest before installing a child seat with back to a passenger seat.
Replace the headrest once the child seat has been removed.

“ISOFIX” fastenings

Your vehicle has been approved according to the **latest** ISOFIX **regulations.**
The seats, shown below are equipped with regulation ISOFIX anchoring:



There are three rings for each seat:



- Two **A** rings located between the back and seat of the vehicle's, marked by a label.



- A B ring, located behind the seat and marked by a label called **Top Tether** to fasten the top strap.**Top Tether**

This ISOFIX fastening provides you with a reliable, solid and rapid assembly of the child seat in your vehicle.
ISOFIX child seats are equipped with two locks anchored to the two **A** rings.
Some seats also have a **top strap** attached to the **B** ring.

To see the ISOFIX seat installation options in your vehicle, check the summary table.

To attach the child seat to the **TOP TETHER:**

- Remove and arrange the head rest before installing the child seat in this place (replace it once the child seat has been removed),
- Pass the strap of the child seat behind the back of the seat by centring it between the gaps of the headrest pins,
- Fix the clip to the high strap of **B** ring
- Tighten the top strap.

When installing an ISOFIX child seat on the rear left of the bench seat, before fixing the seat, remove the central rear seat belt beforehand to the centre of the vehicle, so as not to hinder the operation of the belt.

Incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle will compromise the protection of the child in the event of collision.
Follow the assembly notes shown in the installation instructions delivered with the child seat.

Summary table for the location of i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats are equipped with two locks anchored to the two **A** rings.
These i-Size child seats also have:
- either a top strap attached to the **B** ring
- or a stay resting on the vehicle's floor, which is compatible with the i-Size approved seat

whose role is to prevent the child seat from toppling over in the event of collision.
For more information on **ISOFIX fastening** please refer to the corresponding column.

In accordance with European regulations, this table shows you the installation options for i-Size child seats for seats in the vehicle equipped with i-Size approved ISOFIX fastenings.

Seat			**Front passenger airbag**	**i-Size restraint system**
Row 1 **(a)**	Passenger seat		"OFF" deactivated	i-U
			"ON" activated	i-UF
Row 2	Rear seat behind the driver			i-U
	Rear seat behind the passenger			i-U
	Central rear seat			Non i-Size

i-U: suitable for “universal” category i-Size restraint systems facing forwards and backwards.

i-UF: suitable only for “universal” category i-Size restraint systems facing forwards.

X: seating place not suitable for “universal” category i-Size restraint systems.

(a) Check the current legislation in your country before installing a child in this seat.

! Remove and arrange the head rest before installing a child seat with back in a passenger seat.
Replace the headrest once the child seat has been removed.

Distance alert and Active Safety Brake

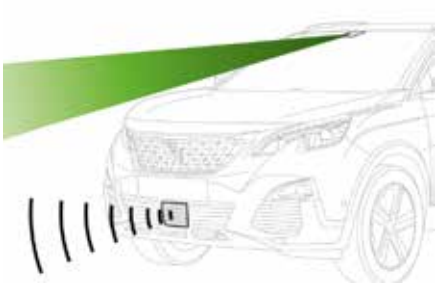


This system includes three functions:
- Distance alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

Distance alert: it warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.
Intelligent emergency braking assistance: it supplements the braking action taken by the driver if this is inadequate.
Active Safety Brake: it intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
If the driver fails to act, it contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.

Activation and operating conditions

The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen, and depending on the version, a radar located in the front bumpers.



The system is activated from about 4 mph (7 km/h) and is deactivated below about 3 mph (5 km/h).
It takes account of:
- registered vehicles running in the same direction or stationary,
- pedestrians in the traffic lane (bicycles, motorcycles, animals and objects on the road are not necessarily detected).

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.
This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Operating limits

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended:

- when towing a trailer,
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version),
- following impact damage to the windscreen close to the detection camera,
- if the front bumper has been damaged,
- if the brake lamps are not working.

! Because of limits in the operation of the system, it is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
Consequently, the driver must always remain attentive and able to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Distance alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.



Level 1: visual alert only, signalling that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operating conditions of the vehicle (on a curve, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the relevant moment.

Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: alert level 1 is never displayed when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.
The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu.
You can select one of three thresholds:

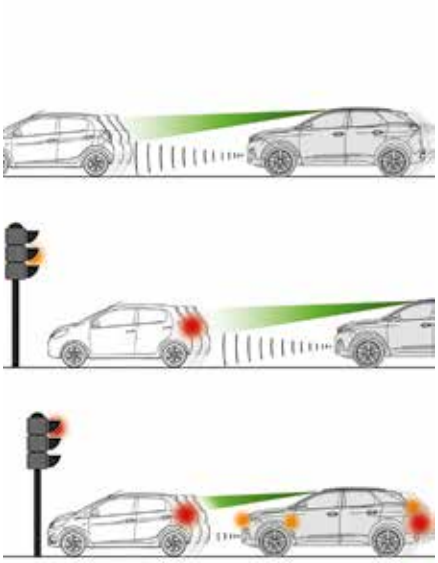
- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision with your vehicle where the driver fails to react.
Using a radar and a camera, depending on the version, this function acts on the vehicle's braking system.



If the camera and/or radar have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.



Important: if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you must take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to supplement or finish the automatic braking action.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

The point at which braking is triggered may be adjusted according to the reaction from the driver, such as movement of the steering wheel or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

With a manual gear box, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.
With an automatic gear box, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, maintain the brake pedal down to stop the vehicle from starting off again.

Specific conditions for operation

The vehicle's speed must be between 3 mph and 53 mph (5km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.
The vehicle's speed must not exceed 50 mph (80km/h) when a stopped vehicle is detected.
The vehicle's speed must not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
The ESC system must not be defective.
The CDS must not be deactivated.
All passengers seatbelts must be fastened.
Driving at steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Deactivation / Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start-up.
The system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the tell-tale lighting up, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Check that the sensors (camera and radar) are not covered by dirt, mud, frost, snow, etc.
If the fault persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The camera my be disrupted or not work in the following situations:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- obstruction of the camera or radar (mud, frost, snow, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.
Clean the front bumper, removing mud, snow, etc.

If the front bumper is to be repainted or retouched, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

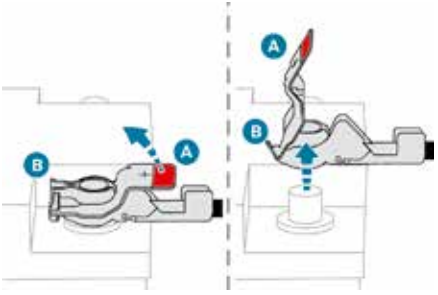
Before disconnecting the battery:

- close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, sunroof),
- switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

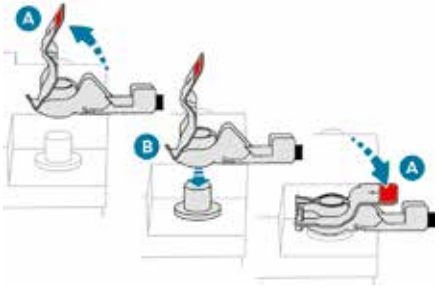
Rapid lock lug

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise palette **A** as much as possible to unlock clamp **B**.
- Remove clamp **B** by raising it.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise palette **A** as much as possible.
- Replace clamp **B** open on the **(+)** terminal
- Press clamp **B** up to the stop.
- Lower palette **A** to lock clamp **B**.

! Do not press too hard on the palette because if the clamp is badly positioned it will then be impossible to lock; restart the procedure.

After re-connection

After reconnecting the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to allow the electronic systems to initialise.

i For versions with right-hand drive, when the odometer reaches 100 km (65 miles), you should wait 15 minutes before starting the engine.

However, if slight perturbations persist after this, check with your PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When referring to the corresponding column, your should reinitialise some equipment such as:

- The remote control key or electronic key (depending on the version)
- The sunroof and its electric privacy drape
- The electric window winder
- The date and time
- The memorised radio stations

i During the trip following the initial starting of the engine, the Stop & Start may not be operational.
In this case, the function will only be available after the vehicle has been continuously immobile, the duration of which will depend on the ambient temperature and the battery charge state (up to around 8 hours)

Characteristics of engines and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are detailed on the vehicle's registration certificate, and in the sales documentation.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, according to the conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are stated in the registration certificate, and in the sales documentation.

These values are also shown on the manufacturer's nameplate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude. The recommended nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towbar (dismantlable with or without a tool).

GTW: Gross train weight

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. If the ambient temperature is above 37°C, limit the towed load.

Towing with a towing vehicle which is only slightly laden may negatively affect its handling.
Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.
With a towing vehicle, never exceed the speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

When the ambient temperature is high, leaving the engine running for 1 to 2 minutes after stopping the vehicle to allow it to cool is recommended.

Petrol engines and towed loads

Engines	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.6 litre THP 150	1.6 litre THP 160	1.6 litre THP 165 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)
Codes	EB2DTS MCM STT	EB2DTS AT6III STT	EP6FDTM AT6III	EP6FDTMD AT6III	EP6FDT AT6III STT
Model codes MR... M4...	HNYH/C1B HNYH/C1F - HNYH/C1K	HNYW/C1B HNYW/C1F	5GYW/C1A	5GXV/C1A	5GZW/C1B 5GZW/C1F
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,199	1,199	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max power: EU standard (kW)	96	96	110	120	121.4
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400 - 1,300	1,200	600	600	1,550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	660	670	600	600	685
Recommended nose weight (kg)	80	80	70	70	80

Diesel engines and towed loads

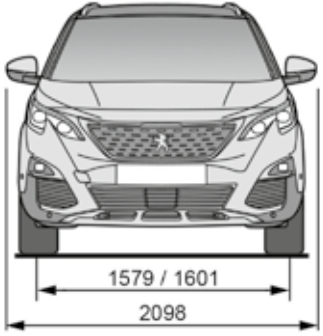
Engines	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)
Codes	DV6FD BE4 STT	DV6FC ML6C STT	DV6FC AT6III STT	DV6FC ML6C STT	DV6FC AT6III STT
Model codes MC...	BHYB/C2B BHYB/C2F	BHXH/C2B BHXH/C2F	BHXW/C2B BHXW/C2F	BHZH/C2B BHZH/C2F - BHZH/C2K	BHZW/C2B BHZW/C2F
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max power: EU standard (kW)	73	85	85	88	88
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300	1,500	1,300	1,500 - 1,400	1,300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	680	685	695	685	695
Recommended nose weight (kg)	80	80	80	80	80

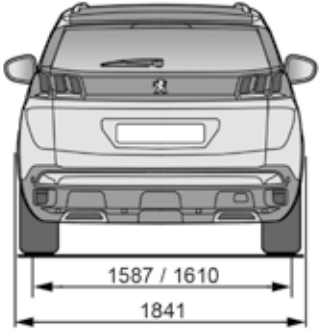
Diesel engines and towed loads

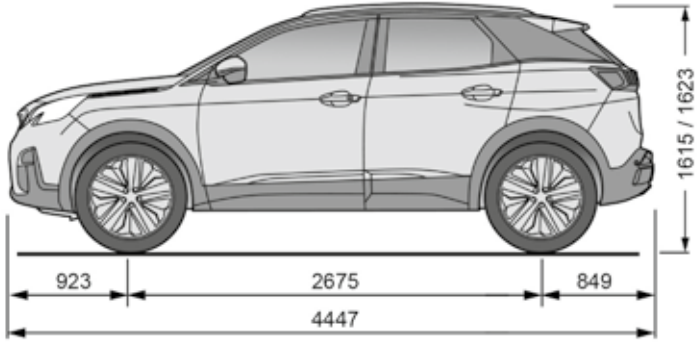
Engines	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S	2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto. 6-speed)
Codes	DW10FD ML6C	DW10FD AM6III	DW10FD ML6C STT	DW10FC AM6III STT
Model codes MR... M9...	AHXG/C2A	AHXV/C2A	AHRH/C2B AHRH/C2F AHSH/C2B AHSH/C2F AHXH/C2B AHXH/C2F	AHWW/C2B AHWW/C2F
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,997	1,997	1,997	1,997
Max power: EU standard (kW)	110	110	110	133
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600	2,000	1,700
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600	745	750
Recommended nose weight (kg)	70	70	80	80

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

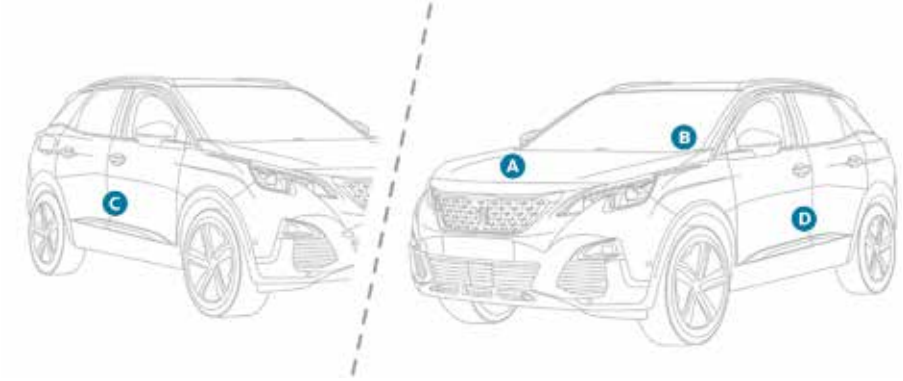






Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.
The number is engraved on the body structure.

B. Vehicle identification number (VIN), on the dashboard.
The number is recorded on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
This self-destructing label is affixed near to the right-hand door.
It bears the following information:
- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised train weight (GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres / paint code label.
This label is affixed near to the driver's door.
It bears the following information about the tyres:
- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Checking tyre pressures
The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.
The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm. In this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

PEUGEOT Cars certifies, by application of the provisions of European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to off-road vehicles, that it has satisfied the targets set by the EU and that recycled materials are used in manufacturing the products it markets.

Even partial copies and translations of this document are forbidden without the written consent of PEUGEOT Cars.

Printed in the EU.
Anglais DAD

07-16

PEUGEOT

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax : +33 (0)1 40 66 54 14 - Télex : 645 700 F
http://www.peugeot.com
Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S. : 552 144 503 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 552 144 503 00018 - APE : 2910Z

www.peugeot.com

Anglais DAD
16P84.A030